3GPP - TSG SA #5 **Tdoc SP-99398**
11-13 October, 1999
Kyongju, Korea

List of CRs on 23.060 v.3.0.0

1. CRs approved by SA2 and presented to SA#5 for approval

TDoc #	Source	CR #	Title	cat
C-99-548	QoS ad-hoc	A085r8	Involvement of BSS in QoS provisioning	
C-99-551	Editor	A164r1	Parallel handling of multiple user application flows	
S2-99746	NTT DoCoMo	006r1	Addition of APN parameter in Network-requested PDP context activation procedures	B
S2-99752	TSG CN1 and SMG6 GPRS	002	Ga interface to the GPRS Logical Architecture diagram etc.	F
S2-99754	Motorola	009	MS and GSN Initiated PDP Context Modification	B
S2-99755	Ericsson, Rapporteur	010	Introduction of EGPRS	B
S2-99771	Nokia	004r1	MM states in UMTS	B
S2-99773	Nokia	007r1	Introduction of Service Request procedure	B
S2-99872	Nokia	005r2	Introduction of Iu Release procedure	B
S2-99884	Ericsson	025	Extension of PDP type IP to support e.g. End-to-End DHCP or Mobile IP	C
S2-99951	Nokia	014r2	Mobile terminated packet transfer to UE in PMM-Idle state	B
S2-99991	NTT COMWARE	028	Modification of the definition and the usage of network operation mode	B
S2-99A01	NTT	027r1	Addition of Paging Co-ordination for UMTS	

The following CR is missing and is proposed for e-mail approval by SA (to be sent on Friday, 16th of October, and to be approved by Tuesday, 20th of October, except if some opposing views are raised between these two dates).

TDoc #	Source	CR #	Title	cat
S2-99794	Nokia	008r2	Introduction of LOCATION REPORTING	

2. CRs approved by SA2 UMTS 23.060 Drafting Meeting Helsinki, Finland, 5-7 October 1999, presented to SA#5 for information.

Due to technical problems, these CRs have not been agreed yet by SA2, as they should have been.

It is planned to have them approved by SA2 by correspondence by Friday, 16th of October, noon (CET), and to send them to SA plenary list by Friday 1 p.m. (CET).

It is then proposed to SA#5 to approve them by correspondence by Tuesday, 20th of October, so they can be implemented before next SA2 meeting (starting Monday, 26th of October).

TDoc #	Source	CR #	Title
S2G99009	Alcatel	016	PDP Context Deactivation during an activation
S2G99010	Rapporteur	001	APN and GGSN selection SDL diagrams
S2G99011	Rapporteur	003	Modification information is not piggybacked
S2G99012	Rapporteur	015r2	Clarification on multiplexing of several NSAPIS onto one LLC SAPI
S2G99016	Siemens	032	CR for ch 11
S2G99024	Nokia	040	Handling of lost of coverage for UMTS
S2G99028	NTC, NTT Docomo	019r1	CR for ch 2 and 3
S2G99030	NTT Software, NTT Docomo	020r1	CR for ch 5
S2G99034	23.060 drafting meeting	037r1	Interactions between 3G-SGSN and MSC/VLR for UMTS
S2G99038	Nokia	036r1	CR to chapters 6.6
S2G99040	Nokia	031r1	Introduction of UMTS security
S2G99041	Ericsson	030r1	Authentication and security keys agreement for support of GSM-UMTS Interoperability
S2G99044	NEC	022r1	CR for ch 7 and 8
S2G99046	Siemens	033r1	CR for ch 12
S2G99047	Ericsson	045r1	GTP sequence number
S2G99048	NTT Docomo	018r2	CR for ch 1 and 4
S2G99049	Nokia	041r2	Mobility Management states and state transitions for UMTS
S2G99050	Nokia	038r3	Location Management and attach procedure for UMTS
S2G99052	Ericsson	044r2	UMTS/GPRS handover

The following CRs are missing and will be proposed for e-mail approval by SA (to be sent on Friday, 16th of October on the SA list, and to be approved by Tuesday, 20th of October, except if some opposing views are raised between these two dates).

TDoc #	Source	CR #	Title
S2G99031	23.060 drafting meeting	042r1	Introduction of UMTS MS classes

S2G99045	Fujitsu	021r1	CR for ch 9
S2G99051	NTT Commware	023r1	CR for ch 13
S2G99053	Nokia	034r1	Procedures for volume-based charging
S2G99054	NTT Commware	024r1	CR for ch 14

No conclusion so far on the following CRs (they might be proposed for e-mail approval next week).

TDoc #	Source	CR #	Title
S2G99023	Nokia	039	Introduction of LOCATION REPORTING procedure
S2G99019	Nokia	035	Classmark handling
S2G99033	Nokia	043	UMTS-related QoS Updates
S2G99055	NTT Commware	046r1	Addition of the section of NSAPI, SI, RB identity, RAB ID for UMTS and TEID

Annex: list of some CRs which are not presented for approval (particular status: see the 'comment' column)

TDoc #	Source	CR #	Title	Comment
S2-99859	Fujitsu Ltd.	011	SGSN Controlled PMM State	not discussed
S2-99860	Fujitsu Ltd.	012	Adding Follow-on Function in Attach and Routing Area Update procedures Procedures	not discussed
S2-99718	Nokia	008	Introduction of LOCATION REPORTING procedure	The proposal is revised in S2-99744.
S2-99864	Ericsson	013	Traffic Flow Templates (TFT) for packet filtering	withdrawn.
N1-99A72	N1 - Nortel	017	Removal of BB Protocol	Rejected by N1
S2-99890	NTT DoCoMo	026	Procedures for volume based charging	Revised in S2-99956.
S2-99956	drafting group (NTT)	026r1	Procedures for volume based charging	Postponed to e-mail discussions.
S2-99705	Ericsson	A160	Introduction of the PDP-type IP-ext	withdrawn
		A106 r1	MS and GSN-initiated PDP context modification	

		A103 r1	Introduction of EGPRS	
C-99-549	UWCC	A116r 4	support of TOM	Already approved at SMG#29, and implemented in 23.060 v.3.0.0.

3GPP TSG SA WG2 / ETSI SMG12
Hazlet, NJ, USA
26-30 July, 1999

Tdoc C-99-548

CHANGE REQUEST No :	**A085r8**		*Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.*		
Technical Specification GSM / UMTS:	03.60	Version	7.1.0		
Submitted to SMG *list plenary meeting or STC here* ↑	#30	for approval	X	without presentation ("non-strategic")	
		for information		with presentation ("strategic")	

PT SMG CR cover form. Filename: crf26_3.doc

Proposed change affects: SIM [ ] ME [X] Network [X]
(at least one should be marked with an X)

Work item: Enhanced QoS support in GPRS

Source: Motorola

Date: 9 July, 1999

Subject: Involvement of BSS in QoS provisioning

Category: *(one category and one release only shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction		
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release		
B	Addition of feature		
C	Functional modification of feature	X	
D	Editorial modification		

Release:

Phase 2	
Release 96	
Release 97	
Release 98	
Release 99	X
UMTS	

Reason for change:

In a wireless network, the radio resources are the most critical ones and therefore most likely to be congested. GPRS, as is currently defined, does not inform the BSS of the QoS profile associated with various PDP contexts. This restricts the ability of the BSS to perform traffic policing and resource allocation based on the QoS profiles.

Specifically, in GPRS phase 1, the BSS is informed by the SGSN via BSSGP on the downlink of a subset of the QoS associated with downlink packets. This QoS information embedded in the BSSGP messages is used in allocating downlink radio and other resources in the BSS. Nonetheless, since QoS information is conveyed to the BSS on a per packet basis (rather than on a per PDP context basis) the BSS cannot use the information present at the SGSN for purposes of resource allocation and any required admission control.

For the uplink direction, the BSS is unaware of the QoS associated with packets since neither the MS nor the SGSN provides the relevant QoS information to the BSS. This prevents the BSS from providing resource (radio, buffer capacity in the BSS, and other) scheduling mechanisms based on the QoS. This restricts the ability of the network to:

- Provide admission control based on uplink and downlink traffic characteristics at the BSS. For instance, since the BSS is not notified of the activation, deletion, and modification of PDP contexts, admission control cannot take into account the availability of radio and other resources allocated by the BSS.
- Provide QoS-based resource allocation and scheduling for uplink traffic.
- Ability of the network to provide strict end-to-end performance guarantees.

This CR addresses these needs by incorporating the BSS as part of a GPRS network's overall process of QoS management. It is proposed that:

- The SGSN determine using the QoS Profile Negotiated of a PDP context the QoS that must be provided by the BSS.
- PDP Contexts that share the same (or similar) BSS QoS Profile share the same packet flow. A packet flow is identified by a Packet Flow Id. An Aggregate BSS QoS Profile is assigned

to each packet flow.

- The aggregate BSS QoS profile is downloaded to the BSS from the SGSN when there is a packet flow (either uplink or downlink) associated with the packet flow. This approach is similar to that used in the Internet where the presence of flows is detected by intermediate routers and then resources are allocated to various flows. The BSS can trigger the download of the aggregate BSS QoS profile. The aggregate BSS QoS profile is deleted after a time interval of no activity on the packet flow.

- It is possible to modify an aggregate BSS QoS profile in the BSS.

Clauses affected: .

Other specs affected:

Other releases of same spec		→ List of CRs:	
Other core specifications		→ List of CRs:	04.08, 04.60, and 08.18.
MS test specifications / TBRs		→ List of CRs:	
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:	

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

9.2.2.1 PDP Context Activation Procedure

The PDP Context Activation procedure is illustrated in

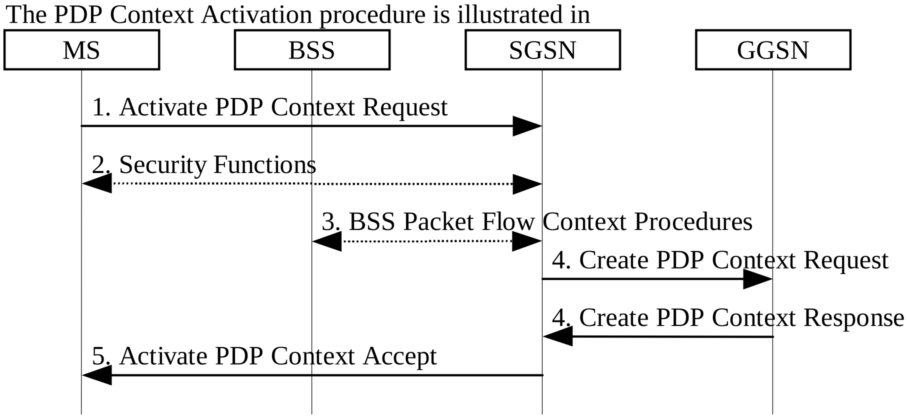
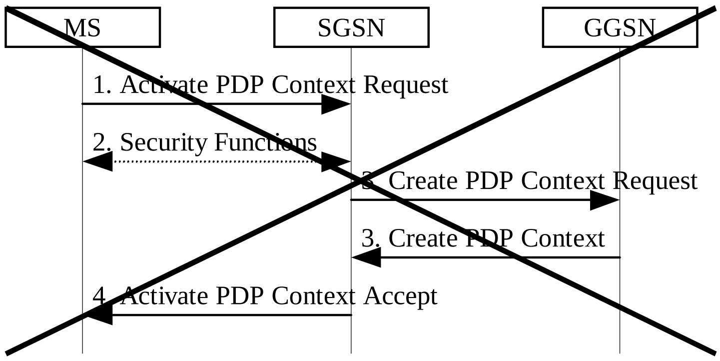


Figure 1. Each step is explained in the following list.



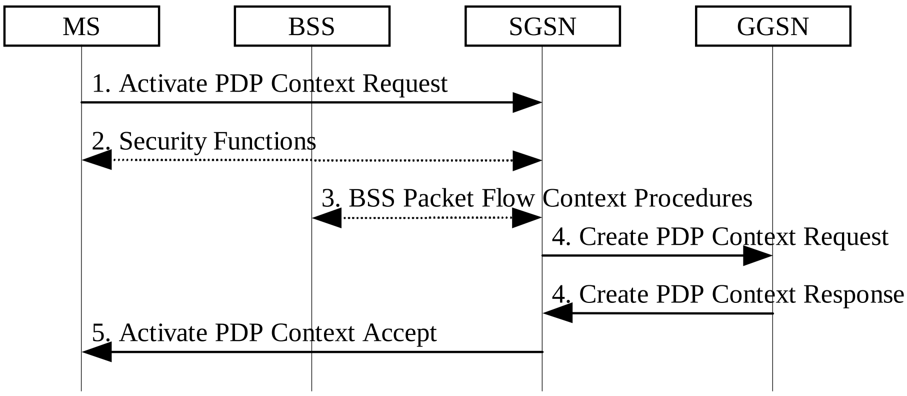


Figure 1: PDP Context Activation Procedure

1) The MS sends an Activate PDP Context Request (NSAPI, TI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Requested, PDP Configuration Options) message to the SGSN. The MS shall use PDP Address to indicate whether it requires the use of a static PDP address or whether it requires the use of a dynamic PDP address. The MS shall leave PDP Address empty to request a dynamic PDP address. The MS may use Access Point Name to select a reference point to a certain external network. Access Point Name is a logical name referring to the external packet data network that the subscriber wishes to connect to. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. PDP Configuration Options may be used to request optional PDP parameters from the GGSN (see GSM 09.60). PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN.

2) Security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

2) BSS packet flow context procedures may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "BSS Context".

4~~3~~) The SGSN validates the Activate PDP Context Request using PDP Type (optional), PDP Address (optional), and Access Point Name (optional) provided by the MS and the PDP context subscription records. The validation criteria, the APN selection criteria, and the mapping from APN to a GGSN are described in annex A.

If no GGSN address can be derived or if the SGSN has determined that the Activate PDP Context Request is not valid according to the rules described in annex A, then the SGSN rejects the PDP context activation request.

If a GGSN address can be derived, the SGSN creates a TID for the requested PDP context by combining the IMSI stored in the MM context with the NSAPI received from the MS. If the MS requests a dynamic address, then the SGSN lets a GGSN allocate the dynamic address. The SGSN may restrict the requested QoS attributes given its capabilities, the current load, and the subscribed QoS profile. The SGSN sends a Create PDP Context Request (PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Negotiated, TID, MSISDN, Selection Mode, PDP Configuration Options) message to the affected GGSN. Access Point Name shall be the APN Network Identifier of the APN selected according to the procedure described in annex A. PDP Address shall be empty if a dynamic address is requested. The GGSN may use Access Point Name to find an external network. Selection Mode indicates whether a subscribed APN was selected, or whether a non-subscribed APN sent by MS or a non-subscribed APN chosen by SGSN was selected. Selection Mode is set according to annex A. The GGSN may use Selection Mode when deciding whether to accept or reject the PDP context activation. For example, if an APN requires subscription, then the GGSN is configured to accept only the PDP context activation that requests a subscribed APN as indicated by the SGSN with Selection Mode. The GGSN creates a new entry in its PDP context table and generates a Charging Id. The new entry allows the GGSN to route PDP PDUs between the SGSN and the external PDP network, and to start charging. The GGSN may further restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN then returns a Create PDP Context Response (TID, PDP Address, BB Protocol, Reordering Required, PDP Configuration Options, QoS Negotiated, Charging Id, Cause) message to the SGSN. PDP Address is included if the GGSN allocated a PDP address. BB Protocol indicates whether TCP or UDP shall be used to transport user data on the backbone network between the SGSN and GGSN. Reordering Required indicates whether the SGSN shall reorder N-PDUs before delivering the N-PDUs to the MS. PDP Configuration Options contain optional PDP parameters that the GGSN may transfer to the MS. These optional PDP parameters may be requested by the MS in the Activate PDP Context Request message, or may be sent unsolicited by the GGSN. PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN. The Create PDP Context messages are sent over the GPRS backbone network.

If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being activated (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type), then the GGSN rejects the Create PDP Context Request message. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.

5~~4~~) The SGSN inserts the NSAPI along with the GGSN address in its PDP context. If the MS has requested a dynamic address, the PDP address received from the GGSN is inserted in the PDP context. The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and returns an Activate PDP Context Accept (PDP Type, PDP Address, TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id, PDP Configuration Options) message to the MS. The SGSN is now able to route PDP PDUs between the GGSN and the MS, and to start charging.

For each PDP Address a different quality of service (QoS) profile may be requested. For example, some PDP addresses may be associated with E-mail that can tolerate lengthy response times. Other applications cannot tolerate delay and demand a very high level of throughput, interactive applications being one example. These different requirements are reflected in the QoS profile. The QoS profile is defined in subclause "Quality of Service Profile". If a QoS requirement is beyond the capabilities of a PLMN, the PLMN negotiates the QoS profile as close as possible to the requested QoS profile. The MS either accepts the negotiated QoS profile, or deactivates the PDP context.

After an SGSN has successfully updated the GGSN, the PDP contexts associated with an MS is distributed as shown in clause "Information Storage".

If the PDP Context Activation Procedure fails or if the SGSN returns an Activate PDP Context Reject (Cause, PDP Configuration Options) message, then the MS may attempt another activation to the same APN up to a maximum number of attempts.

9.2.2.3 Anonymous Access PDP Context Activation Procedure

The MS can anonymously initiate PDP Context Activation in IDLE, STANDBY, and READY states. An existing MM context in the SGSN is neither required nor used in this case. Only dynamic PDP addressing is applicable.

The Anonymous Access PDP Context Activation procedure is illustrated in

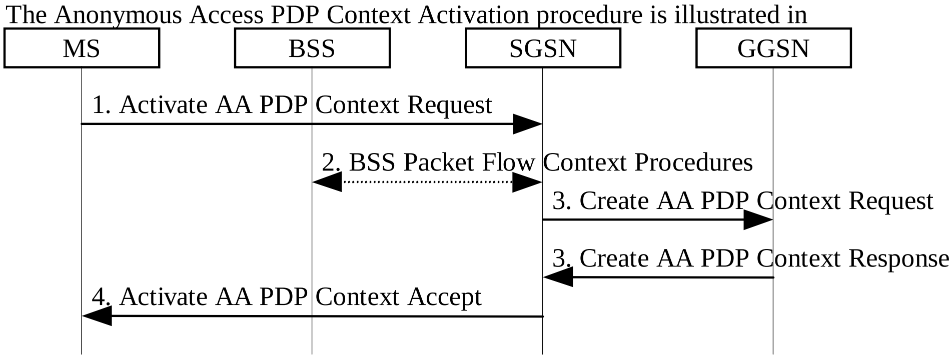
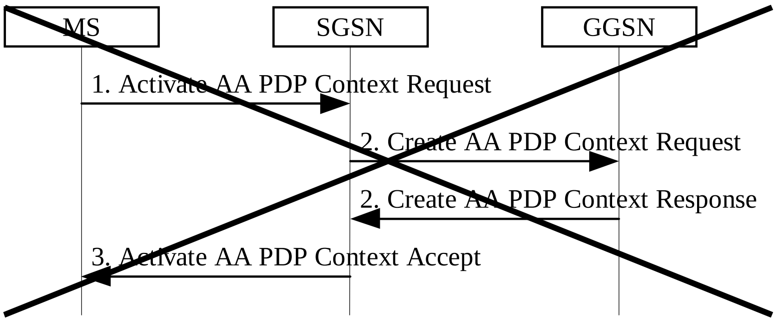


Figure 2. Each step is explained in the following list.



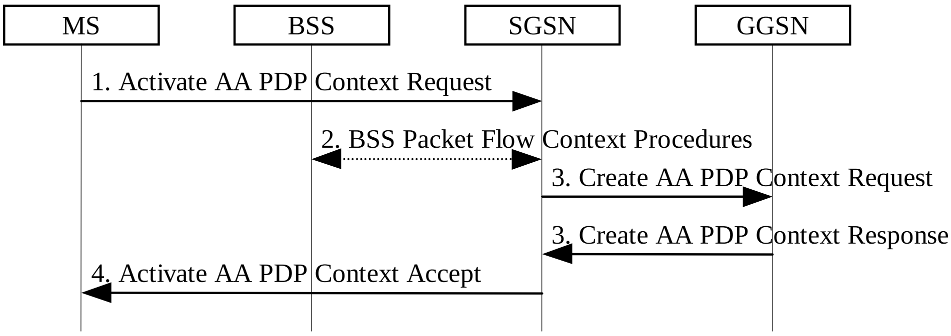


Figure 2: Anonymous Access PDP Context Activation Procedure

1) The MS sends an Activate AA PDP Context Request (NSAPI, TI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Requested, PDP Configuration Options) message to the SGSN. The MS shall use a Random TLLI at the RLC/MAC layer for identification purposes. The MS shall use PDP Address to indicate that it requires the use of a dynamic PDP address. The MS shall use Access Point Name to select a reference point to a certain external network that provides anonymous services. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. PDP Configuration Options may be used to request optional PDP parameters from the GGSN (see GSM 09.60). PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN.

2) BSS packet flow context procedures may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "BSS Context".

3~~2~~) The SGSN may restrict the requested QoS value given its capabilities and the current load. The SGSN assigns an Auxiliary TLLI and creates an AA-TID for the PDP-Context. The SGSN sends a Create AA PDP Context Request (PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Negotiated, AA-TID, Selection Mode, PDP Configuration Options) message to the GGSN indicated by Access Point Name in the Activate AA PDP Context Request message. Selection Mode indicates how the APN was selected. The GGSN creates a new entry in its PDP context table and generates a Charging Id. The new entry allows the GGSN to route PDP PDUs between the SGSN and the server(s) that provide services for anonymous MSs, and to start charging. The GGSN may use Access Point Name to find an external network that provides anonymous services. The GGSN may further restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN then allocates a dynamic PDP Address and returns a Create AA PDP Context Response (AA-TID, PDP Address, BB Protocol, Reordering Required, PDP Configuration Options, QoS Negotiated, Charging Id, Cause) message to the SGSN. BB Protocol indicates whether TCP or UDP shall be used to transport user data on the backbone network between the SGSN and GGSN. Reordering Required indicates whether the SGSN shall reorder N-PDUs before delivering the N-PDUs to the MS. PDP Configuration Options contain optional PDP parameters that the GGSN may transfer to the MS. These optional PDP parameters may be requested by the MS in the Activate PDP Context Request, or may be sent unsolicited by the GGSN. PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN. The GGSN shall check the source and destination address in all subsequent anonymous MO PDP PDUs received from the SGSN. If the GGSN detects a not allowed address in an MO PDP PDU, then the PDP PDU shall be discarded and the MM and PDP contexts shall be deleted in the GGSN, SGSN, and MS, as defined in subclause "Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure".

If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being activated (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type), then the GGSN rejects the Create AA PDP Context Request message. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.

4~~3~~) The SGSN inserts the NSAPI along with the PDP address received from the GGSN in its PDP context. The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated and returns an Activate AA PDP Context Accept (A-TLLI, PDP Type, PDP Address, TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id, PDP Configuration Options) message to the MS. The SGSN is now able to route anonymous PDP PDUs between the GGSN and the MS and to start charging.

After an SGSN has successfully updated the GGSN, the MM and PDP contexts associated with an MS is distributed as shown in clause "Information Storage".

If the AA PDP Context Activation procedure fails or if the SGSN returns an Activate AA PDP Context Reject (Cause, PDP Configuration Options) message, then the MS may attempt another activation to the same GGSN up to a maximum number of attempts.

9.2.3 Modification Procedures

An SGSN can decide, possibly triggered by the HLR as explained in subclause "Insert Subscriber Data Procedure", to modify parameters that were negotiated during an activation procedure for one or several PDP contexts. The following parameters can be modified:

- QoS Negotiated;~~ and~~
- Radio Priority; and~~.~~
- Packet Flow Id.

The SGSN has several means to inform the MS of such a modification:

- send a separate Modify PDP Context Request message to the MS; or
- piggyback the modification information on a mobility management signalling exchange, e.g., routeing area update.

9.2.3.1 PDP Context Modification Procedure

The PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 3. Each step is explained in the following list.

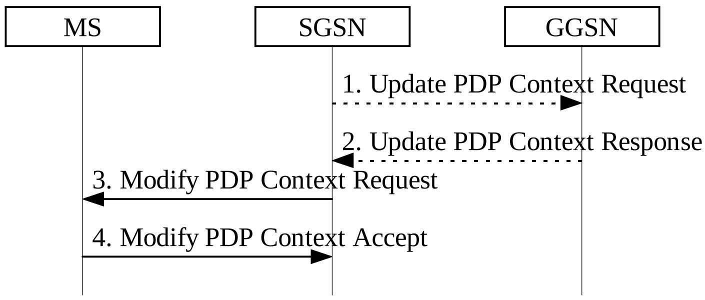


Figure 3: PDP Context Modification Procedure

1) The SGSN may send an Update PDP Context Request (TID, QoS Negotiated) message to the GGSN. If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being modified (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type), then the GGSN rejects the Update PDP Context Request. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.

2) The GGSN may restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN stores QoS Negotiated and returns an Update PDP Context Response (TID, QoS Negotiated) message.

3) The SGSN sends a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS.

4) The MS acknowledges by returning a Modify PDP Context Accept message. If the MS does not accept the new QoS Negotiated it shall de-activate the PDP context with the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.

12.4.3.5 BSS Context

The SGSN can provide a BSS with information related to ongoing user data transmission. The information related to one MS is stored in a BSS context. The BSS may contain BSS contexts for several MSs. A BSS context contains a number of BSS packet flow contexts. Each BSS packet flow context is identified by a packet flow identifier assigned by the SGSN. A BSS packet flow context is shared by one or more activated PDP contexts with identical or similar negotiated QoS profiles. The data transmission related to PDP contexts that share the same BSS packet flow context constitute one packet flow.

Two packet flows are pre-defined, and identified by two reserved packet flow identifier values. The BSS shall not negotiate BSS packet flow contexts for these pre-defined packet flows with the SGSN. One pre-defined packet flow is used for best-effort service, and one is used for SMS. The SGSN can assign the SMS packet flow identifier to any PDP context, and the BSS shall in this case handle the packet flow for this PDP context with the same QoS that it handles SMS with.

The combined BSS QoS profile for the PDP contexts that share the same packet flow is called the aggregate BSS QoS profile. The aggregate BSS QoS profile is considered to be a single parameter with multiple data transfer attributes as defined in subclause "Quality of Service Profile". It defines the QoS that must be provided by the BSS for a given packet flow between the MS and the SGSN, i.e., for the Um and Gb interfaces combined. The aggregate BSS QoS profile is negotiated between the SGSN and the BSS.

A BSS packet flow timer indicates the maximum time that the BSS may store the BSS packet flow context. The BSS packet flow timer shall not exceed the value of the READY timer for this MS. The BSS packet flow timer is started when the BSS packet flow context is stored in the BSS and when an LLC frame is received from the MS. When the BSS packet flow timer expires the BSS shall delete the BSS packet flow context.

When a PDP context is activated, modified, or deactivated, the SGSN may create, modify, or delete BSS packet flow contexts.

12.4.3.5.1 BSS Packet Flow Context Creation Procedure

On receiving a request to transmit an uplink or downlink LLC PDU for which no BSS packet flow context exists in the BSS, the BSS may request the download of the BSS packet flow context from the SGSN.

The SGSN may at any time request the creation of a BSS packet flow context, e.g., due to the activation of a PDP context.

The BSS Packet Flow Context Creation procedure is illustrated in Figure 4. Each step is explained in the following list.

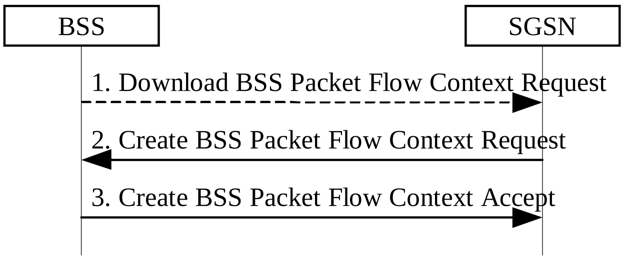


Figure 4: BSS Packet Flow Context Creation Procedure

1) The BSS receives a request to transfer an uplink or downlink user data LLC PDU for which it currently does not have a BSS packet flow context. In the uplink case, TLLI, Radio Priority, and Packet Flow Id are received from the MS as defined in GSM 04.60. In the downlink case, TLLI and Packet Flow Id are received from the SGSN as defined in GSM 08.18. If Packet Flow Id does not indicate best-effort service nor SMS, then the BSS sends a Download BSS Packet Flow Context Request (RAI, TLLI, Packet Flow Id) message to the SGSN. Until the BSS receives the BSS packet flow context, the BSS shall handle uplink and downlink transfers according to a default aggregate BSS QoS profile. For uplink transfers, the default profile is specific to the radio priority level.

2) The SGSN sends a Create BSS Packet Flow Context Request (IMSI, TLLI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Requested, BSS Packet Flow Timer) message to the associated BSS.

3) The BSS may restrict the requested aggregate BSS QoS profile given its capabilities and the current load. The BSS creates a BSS packet flow context and inserts the parameters in its BSS context. The BSS returns a Create BSS Packet Flow Context Accept (IMSI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated) message to the SGSN. The BSS uses the negotiated aggregate BSS QoS profile when allocating radio resources and other resources such as buffer capacity.

12.4.3.5.2 SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification Procedure

The SGSN may at any time request the modification of the contents of an existing BSS packet flow context, e.g., due to the activation, modification, or deactivation of a PDP context.

The SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 5. Each step is explained in the following list.

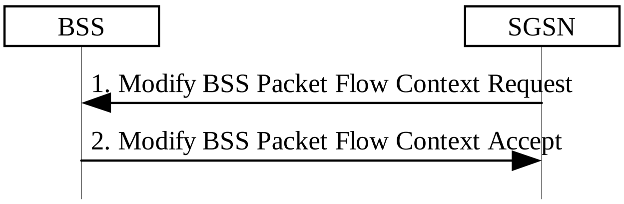


Figure 5: SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification Procedure

1) The SGSN sends a Modify BSS Packet Flow Context Request (IMSI, TLLI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Requested, BSS Packet Flow Timer) message to the BSS.

2) The BSS may restrict the requested aggregate BSS QoS profile given its capabilities and the current load. The BSS inserts the modified parameters in its BSS context. The BSS returns a Modify BSS Packet Flow Context Accept (IMSI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated) message to the SGSN.

12.4.3.5.3 BSS-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification Procedure

The BSS can at any time request modification of the contents of an existing BSS packet flow context, e.g., due to a change in the resource availability at the BSS.

The BSS-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 6. Each step is explained in the following list.

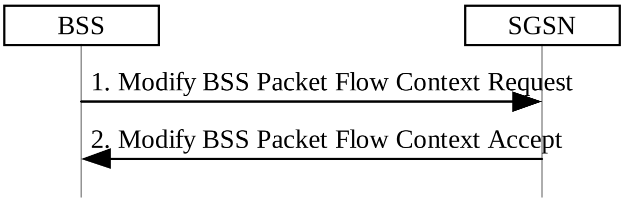


Figure 6: BSS-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification Procedure

1) The BSS sends a Modify BSS Packet Flow Context Request (IMSI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Requested) message to the SGSN.

2) The SGSN may restrict the requested aggregate BSS QoS profile given its capabilities and the current load. The SGSN returns a Modify BSS Packet Flow Context Accept (IMSI, TLLI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated, BSS Packet Flow Timer) message to the BSS. The BSS inserts the modified parameters in its BSS context.

12.4.3.5.4 BSS Packet Flow Context Deletion Procedures

The BSS can, due to e.g., memory restrictions, at any time delete a BSS packet flow context without notifying the SGSN.

The SGSN may request the deletion of a BSS packet flow context with the SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Deletion procedure, as illustrated in Figure 7. Each step is explained in the following list.

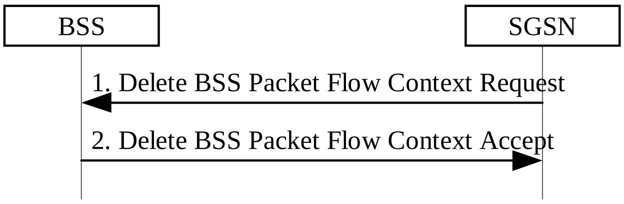


Figure 7: SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Deletion Procedure

1) The SGSN sends a Delete BSS Packet Flow Context Request (IMSI, Packet Flow Id) message to the BSS. The BSS deletes the corresponding BSS packet flow context from its BSS context.

2) The BSS returns a Delete BSS Packet Flow Context Accept (TLLI, Packet Flow Id) message to the SGSN.

13.2 SGSN

SGSN maintains MM context and PDP context information for MSs in STANDBY and READY states. Table 1 shows the context fields for one MS.

Table 1: SGSN MM and PDP Contexts

Field	Description
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.
MM State	Mobility management state, IDLE, STANDBY, or READY.
P-TMSI	Packet Temporary Mobile Subscriber Identity.
P-TMSI Signature	A signature used for identification checking purposes.
IMEI	International Mobile Equipment Identity
MSISDN	The basic MSISDN of the MS.
Routeing Area	Current routeing area.
Cell Identity	Current cell in READY state, last known cell in STANDBY or IDLE state.
Cell Identity Age	Time elapsed since the last LLC PDU was received from the MS at the SGSN.
VLR Number	The VLR number of the MSC/VLR currently serving this MS.
New SGSN Address	The IP address of the new SGSN where buffered and not sent N-PDUs should be forwarded to.
Authentication Triplets	Authentication and ciphering parameters.
Kc	Currently used ciphering key.
CKSN	Ciphering key sequence number of Kc.
Ciphering algorithm	Selected ciphering algorithm.
Radio Access Classmark	MS radio access capabilities.
SGSN Classmark	MS network capabilities.
DRX Parameters	Discontinuous reception parameters.
MNRG	Indicates whether activity from the MS shall be reported to the HLR.
NGAF	Indicates whether activity from the MS shall be reported to the MSC/VLR.
PPF	Indicates whether paging for GPRS and non-GPRS services can be initiated.
SMS Parameters	SMS-related parameters, e.g., operator-determined barring.
Recovery	Indicates if HLR or VLR is performing database recovery.
Radio Priority SMS	The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink SMS transmission.
Each MM context contains zero or more of the following PDP contexts:	
PDP Context Identifier	Index of the PDP context.
PDP State	Packet data protocol state, INACTIVE or ACTIVE.
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.
APN Subscribed	The APN received from the HLR.
APN in Use	The APN currently used.
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.
TI	Transaction Identifier.
GGSN Address in Use	The IP address of the GGSN currently used.
VPLMN Address Allowed	Specifies whether the MS is allowed to use the APN in the domain of the HPLMN only, or additionally the APN in the domain of the VPLMN.
QoS Profile Subscribed	The quality of service profile subscribed.
QoS Profile Requested	The quality of service profile requested.
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.
Radio Priority	The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission.
Packet Flow Id	Packet Flow Identifier.
Send N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.
Receive N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU expected from the MS.
SND	GTP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.
SNU	GTP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the GGSN.
Charging Id	Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN.
Reordering Required	Specifies whether the SGSN shall reorder N-PDUs before delivering the N-PDUs to the MS.

In case of anonymous access the SGSN maintains the MM context and PDP context information for MSs in READY state. Table 2 shows the context fields for one MS.

Table 2: SGSN MM and PDP Contexts for Anonymous Access

Field	Description
A-TLLI	Auxiliary Temporary Logical Link Identity.
AA-TID	Anonymous Access Tunnel Identifier.
Routeing Area	Current routeing area.
Cell Identity	Current cell.
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.
APN in Use	The APN currently used.
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.
TI	Transaction Identifier.
GGSN Address in Use	The IP address of the GGSN currently used.
QoS Profile Requested	The quality of service profile requested.
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.
Radio Priority	The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission.
Packet Flow Id	Packet Flow Identifier.
Send N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.
Receive N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU expected from the MS.
SND	GTP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.
SNU	GTP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the GGSN.
Charging Id	Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN.
Reordering Required	Specifies whether the SGSN shall reorder N-PDUs before delivering the N-PDUs to the MS.

13.4 MS

Each GPRS MS maintains MM and PDP context information in IDLE, STANDBY and READY states. The information may be contained in the MS and the TE. Table 3 shows the MS context fields.

Table 3: MS MM and PDP Contexts

Field	SIM	Description
IMSI	X	International Mobile Subscriber Identity.
MM State		Mobility management state, IDLE, STANDBY, or READY.
P-TMSI	X	Packet Temporary Mobile Subscriber Identity.
P-TMSI Signature	X	A signature used for identification checking purposes.
Routeing Area	X	Current routeing area.
Cell Identity		Current cell.
Kc	X	Currently used ciphering key.
CKSN	X	Ciphering key sequence number of Kc.
Ciphering algorithm		Selected ciphering algorithm.
Classmark		MS classmark.
DRX Parameters		Discontinuous reception parameters.
Radio Priority SMS		The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink SMS transmission.
Each MM context contains zero or more of the following PDP contexts:		
PDP Type		PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.
PDP Address		PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.
PDP State		Packet data protocol state, INACTIVE or ACTIVE.
Dynamic Address Allowed		Specifies whether the MS is allowed to use a dynamic address.
APN Requested		The APN requested.
NSAPI		Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.
TI		Transaction Identifier.
QoS Profile Requested		The quality of service profile requested.
QoS Profile Negotiated		The quality of service profile negotiated.
Radio Priority		The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission.
Packet Flow Id		Packet Flow Identifier.
Send N-PDU Number		SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the SGSN.
Receive N-PDU Number		SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU expected from the SGSN.

The information marked with an "X" in Table 3:

- shall be stored in the SIM if the connected SIM is GPRS-aware; and

- may be stored in the ME after GPRS detach if the connected SIM is not GPRS-aware.

If the SIM is GPRS-aware, then the IMSI, P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Routeing Area, Kc, and CKSN stored in the SIM shall be used when accessing the GPRS services.

If the SIM is not GPRS-aware, then the P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Routeing Area, Kc, and CKSN stored in the ME shall be used if and only if the IMSI stored in the SIM is identical to the IMSI image maintained in the ME. If the IMSI stored in the SIM is different from the IMSI image in the ME, then the IMSI image in the ME shall not be used, and the MS shall identify itself with the IMSI stored in the SIM when performing a GPRS attach. IMSI, P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Routeing Area, Kc, and CKSN may be stored in the ME after the GPRS attach has been successfully performed.

For anonymous access each GPRS MS maintains MM and PDP context information in READY state. The information may be contained in the ME and the TE. Table 4 shows the MS context fields.

Table 4: MS MM and PDP Contexts for Anonymous Access

Field	Description
A-TLLI	Auxiliary Temporary Logical Link Identity.
Routeing Area	Current routeing area.
Cell Identity	Current cell.
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.
TI	Transaction Identifier.
APN Requested	The APN requested.
QoS Profile Requested	The quality of service profile requested.
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.
Radio Priority	The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission.
Packet Flow Id	Packet Flow Identifier.
Send N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the SGSN.
Receive N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU expected from the SGSN.

13.6 BSS

Table 5 shows the BSS context fields for one MS.

Table 5: BSS Context

Field	Description
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.
TLLI	Temporary Logical Link Identity.
Each BSS context contains one or more BSS Packet Flow contexts:	
Packet Flow Id	Packet Flow Identifier.
Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated	The aggregate BSS quality of service profile negotiated for this packet flow.
BSS Packet Flow Timer	BSS packet flow context inactivity timer.

The BSS may store BSS contexts also in the anonymous access case. Table 6 shows the BSS context fields for one MS.

Table 6: BSS Context for Anonymous Access

Field	Description
A-TLLI	Auxiliary Temporary Logical Link Identity.
Packet Flow Id	Packet Flow Identifier.
Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated	The aggregate BSS quality of service profile negotiated for this packet flow.
BSS Packet Flow Timer	BSS packet flow context inactivity timer.

13.7~~6~~ Recovery and Restoration Procedures

The recovery and restoration procedures are intended to maintain service if inconsistencies in databases occur and at lost or invalid database information. "Invalid" in this context means that the database entry cannot be regarded as reliable.

13.7.5 BSS Failure

When a BSS fails, all its BSS contexts affected by the failure become invalid and shall be deleted. BSS storage of data is volatile.

3GPP TSG-SA WG2 *Document* ***S2-99746***
Sophia Antipolis, France, 24-26 August 1999

3G CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	**CR**	**Prov3r1**	Current Version:
3G specification number ↑		↑ *CR number as allocated by 3G support team*	

For submision to TSG	SA#5	for approval	X	*(only one box should*
list TSG meeting no. here ↑		For information		*be marked with an X)*

Form: 3G CR cover sheet, version 1.0 *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/3GCRF-xx.rtf*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	USIM		ME	X	UTRAN	Core Network	X

Source: NTT DoCoMo **Date:** 24/08/1999

Subject: Addition of APN parameter in Network-requested PDP context activation procedures

3G Work item:

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	
A	Corresponds to a correction in a 2G specification	
B	Addition of feature	X
C	Functional modification of feature	
D	Editorial modification	

Reason for change:

The PDP addresses for a mobile subscriber are allocated independently by different IP networks. If IP v4 addresses are used as the PDP addresses, each PDP address is generally a private address. As a result, there may be the case where different IP networks may accidentally allocate the same number as a PDP address to a mobile subscriber. In case of network-requested PDP context procedure, MS cannot identify the APN to be set in Activate PDP context request message if same PDP address is allocated by different data networks.

In GPRS R98, the above problem can be solved by operators' agreement. However, if the IP data service is considered to be emerging in the near future, the above problem shall be solved without such a manual agreement.

The above problem is due to that a mobile subscriber is not globally addressable with using only an IP v4 private address. If a private address and an APN are used together, the address can be global.

Therefore, the APN parameter shall be added to the following two message in case of network-requested PDP context activation procedure: PDU Notification Request (GGSN->SGSN) & Request PDP Context Activation (SGSN->MS). The GGSN can identify the APN of the IP network, from which a PDP PDU came, and set the APN in PDU Notification Request message.

Clauses affected: 9.2.2.2.1

Other specs Affected:				
	Other 3G core specifications	X	→ List of CRs:	29.061 subclause 11.3, 29.060, 24.008
	Other 2G core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
	MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
	BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
	O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:	

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

9.2.2.2.1 Successful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure

The Successful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure is illustrated in Figure 35. Each step is explained in the following list.

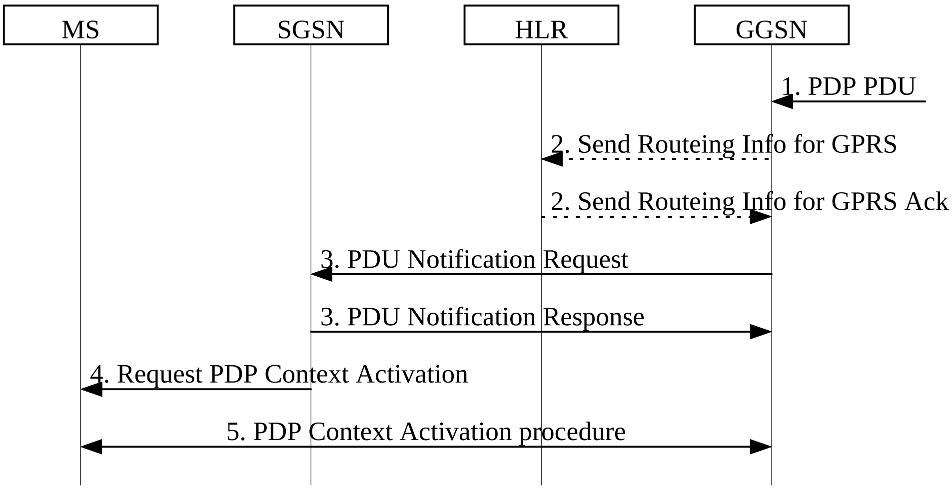


Figure 35: Successful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure

1) When receiving a PDP PDU the GGSN determines if the Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure has to be initiated. The GGSN may store subsequent PDUs received for the same PDP address.

2) The GGSN may send a Send Routeing Information for GPRS (IMSI) message to the HLR. If the HLR determines that the request can be served, it returns a Send Routeing Information for GPRS Ack (IMSI, SGSN Address, Mobile Station Not Reachable Reason) message to the GGSN. The Mobile Station Not Reachable Reason parameter is included if the MNRG flag is set in the HLR. The Mobile Station Not Reachable Reason parameter indicates the reason for the setting of the MNRG flag as stored in the MNRR record (see GSM 03.40). If the MNRR record indicates a reason other than 'No Paging Response', the HLR shall include the GGSN number in the GGSN-list of the subscriber.

   If the HLR determines that the request cannot be served (e.g., IMSI unknown in HLR), the HLR shall send a Send Routeing Information for GPRS Ack (IMSI, MAP Error Cause) message. Map Error Cause indicates the reason for the negative response.

3) If the SGSN address is present and either Mobile Station Not Reachable Reason is not present or Mobile Station Not Reachable Reason indicates 'No Paging Response', the GGSN shall send a PDU Notification Request (IMSI, PDP Type, PDP Address, APN) message to the SGSN indicated by the HLR. Otherwise, the GGSN shall set the MNRG flag for that MS. The SGSN returns a PDU Notification Response (Cause) message to the GGSN in order to acknowledge that it shall request the MS to activate the PDP context indicated with PDP Address.

4) The SGSN sends a Request PDP Context Activation (TI, PDP Type, PDP Address, APN) message to request the MS to activate the indicated PDP context.

5) The PDP context is activated with the PDP Context Activation procedure (see subclause "PDP Context Activation Procedure").

3GPP TSG SA2 *Document* ***S2-99752***

Sophia Antipolis, France, 24-27 August 1999

3G CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	**CR**	**002**	Current Version:	3.0.0
3G specification number ↑		*↑ CR number as allocated by 3G support team*		

For submision to TSG	SA#	for approval	X	*(only one box should*
list TSG meeting no. here ↑		for information		*be marked with an X)*

Form: 3G CR cover sheet, version 1.0 The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/3GCRF-xx.rtf

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	USIM		ME	X	UTRAN		Core Network X

Source: TSG CN1 and SMG6 GPRS **Date:** 22 August, 1999

Subject: Ga interface to the GPRS Logical Architecture diagram etc.

3G Work item: GPRS

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	X
A	Corresponds to a correction in a 2G specification	
B	Addition of feature	
C	Functional modification of feature	
D	Editorial modification	

Reason for change: SMG#26 approved the GSM 12.15 (“GPRS Charging”) specification already in June 1998, it should be added to the reference list of the GSM 03.60. SMG#28 approved the GPRS accounting interface name Ga (that interface is used for GPRS charging data collection) in February 1999, that abbreviation is useful to be mentioned in GSM 03.60 too. The charging is an essential function in GPRS. The purpose of this update is to inform the GSM 03.60 specification readers better about the relationship of the GPRS charging function and the other GPRS architecture.

Clauses affected:

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
Other 2G core specifications		→ List of CRs:	03.60 A168
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:	

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

2 References

The following documents contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of the present document.

- References are either specific (identified by date of publication, edition number, version number, etc.) or non-specific.
- For a specific reference, subsequent revisions do not apply.
- For a non-specific reference, the latest version applies.
- A non-specific reference to an ETS shall also be taken to refer to later versions published as an EN with the same number.

Text not changed.

[28] GSM 11.11: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Specification of the Subscriber Identity Module - Mobile Equipment (SIM - ME) interface".

[29] GSM 12.15: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); GPRS Charging".

[30~~29~~] CCITT Recommendations I.130: "General modelling methods – Method for the characterisation of telecommunication services supported by an ISDN and network capabilities of an ISDN".

Text not changed except renumbering of the remaining references.

3.2 Abbreviations

For the purposes of the present document the following abbreviations apply. Additional applicable abbreviations can be found in GSM 01.04 [1].

AA	Anonymous Access
APN	Access Point Name
ATM	Asynchronous Transfer Mode
BG	Border Gateway
BSSAP+	Base Station System Application Part +
BSSGP	Base Station System GPRS Protocol
BVCI	BSSGP Virtual Connection Identifier
CCU	Channel Codec Unit
CDR	Call Detail Record
CGF	Charging Gateway Functionality
CGI	Cell Global Identification
CS	Circuit Switched
DNS	Domain Name System
GGSN	Gateway GPRS Support Node
GMM/SM	GPRS Mobility Management and Session Management
GSN	GPRS Support Node
GTP	GPRS Tunnelling Protocol
ICMP	Internet Control Message Protocol
IETF	Internet Engineering Task Force
IHOSS	Internet-Hosted Octet Stream Service
IP	Internet Protocol
IPv4	Internet Protocol version 4
IPv6	Internet Protocol version 6
IPX	Internet Packet eXchange
ISP	Internet Service Provider
L2TP	Layer-2 Tunnelling Protocol
LL-PDU	LLC PDU
LLC	Logical Link Control

MAC	Medium Access Control
MNRF	Mobile station Not Reachable Flag
MNRG	Mobile station Not Reachable for GPRS flag
MNRR	Mobile station Not Reachable Reason
MTP2	Message Transfer Part layer 2
MTP3	Message Transfer Part layer 3
NGAF	Non-GPRS Alert Flag
NS	Network Service
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier
NSS	Network SubSystem
OSP	Octet Stream Protocol
P-TMSI	Packet TMSI
PCU	Packet Control Unit
PDCH	Packet Data CHannel
PDN	Packet Data Network
PDP	Packet Data Protocol, e.g., IP or X.25 [34]
PDU	Protocol Data Unit
PPF	Paging Proceed Flag
PPP	Point-to-Point Protocol
PTM	Point To Multipoint
PTP	Point To Point
PVC	Permanent Virtual Circuit
RA	Routeing Area
RAC	Routeing Area Code
RAI	Routeing Area Identity
RLC	Radio Link Control
SGSN	Serving GPRS Support Node
SM	Short Message
SM-SC	Short Message service Service Centre
SMS-GMSC	Short Message Service Gateway MSC
SMS-IWMSC	Short Message Service Interworking MSC
SN-PDU	SNDCP PDU
SNDC	SubNetwork Dependent Convergence
SNDCP	SubNetwork Dependent Convergence Protocol
TCAP	Transaction Capabilities Application Part
TCP	Transmission Control Protocol
TID	Tunnel Identifier
TLLI	Temporary Logical Link Identity
TOM	Tunnelling Of Messages
TRAU	Transcoder and Rate Adaptor Unit
UDP	User Datagram Protocol

3.3 Symbols

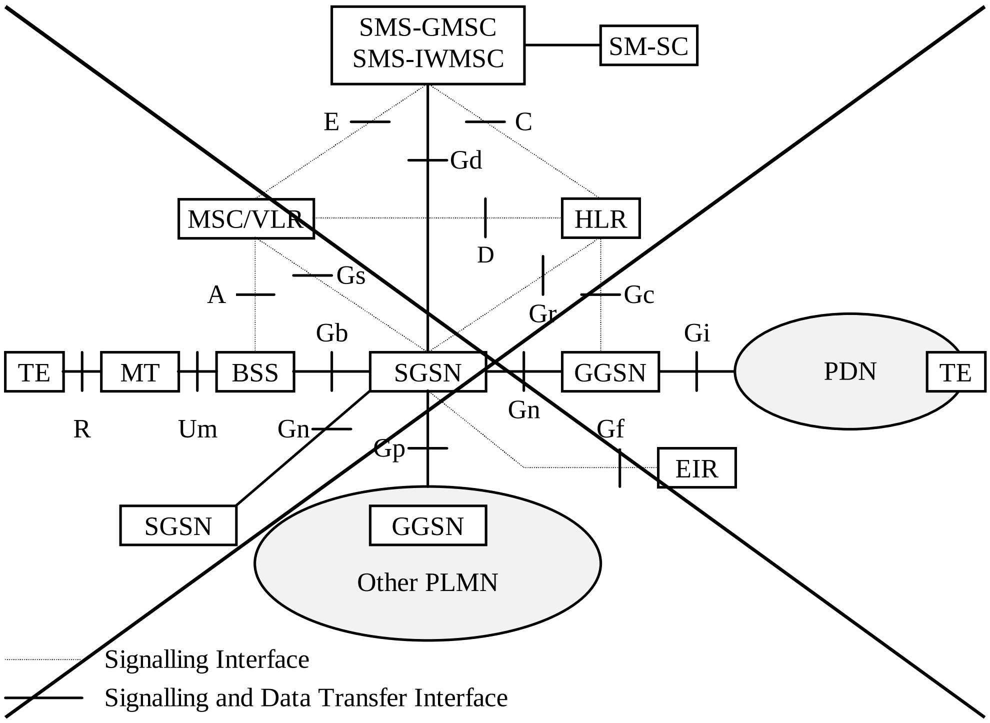
For the purposes of the present document the following symbols apply:

Ga	Charging data collection interface between a CDR transmitting unit (e.g., an SGSN or a GGSN) and a CDR receiving functionality (a CGF).
Gb	Interface between an SGSN and a BSS.
Gc	Interface between a GGSN and an HLR.
Gd	Interface between a SMS-GMSC and an SGSN, and between a SMS-IWMSC and an SGSN.
Gf	Interface between an SGSN and an EIR.
Gi	Reference point between GPRS and an external packet data network.
Gn	Interface between two GSNs within the same PLMN.
Gp	Interface between two GSNs in different PLMNs. The Gp interface allows support of GPRS network services across areas served by the co-operating GPRS PLMNs.

Gr	Interface between an SGSN and an HLR.
Gs	Interface between an SGSN and an MSC/VLR.
kbit/s	Kilobits per second.
R	Reference point between a non-ISDN compatible TE and MT. Typically this reference point supports a standard serial interface.
Um	Interface between the mobile station (MS) and the GPRS fixed network part. The Um interface is the GPRS network interface for providing packet data services over the radio to the MS. The MT part of the MS is used to access the GPRS services through this interface.

5.4 Logical Architecture

GPRS is logically implemented on the GSM structure through the addition of two network nodes, the Serving GPRS Support Node and the Gateway GPRS Support Node. It is necessary to name a number of new interfaces. No inference should be drawn about the physical configuration on an interface from Figure 1.



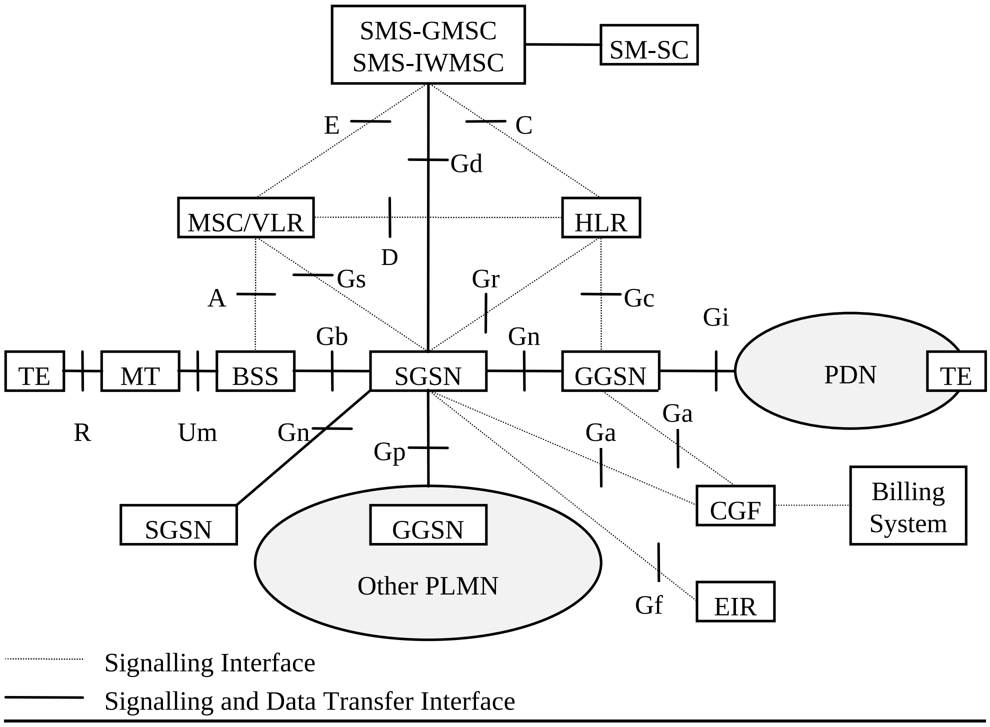


Figure 1: Overview of the GPRS Logical Architecture

5.4.6 Charging Gateway Functionality

The Charging Gateway Functionality (CGF) is described in GSM 12.15 [29].

3GPP TSG SA2 *Document* ***S2-99754***

Sophia Antipolis, France, 16-20 August 1999

3G CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060 CR 0xx Current Version: 3.0.0

3G specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by 3G support team*

For submision to TSG SA# for approval X for information

list TSG meeting no. here ↑ *(only one box should be marked with an X)*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	USIM		ME	X	UTRAN		Core Network	X

Source: Rapporteur **Date:** 22 August, 1999

Subject: MS and GSN Initiated PDP Context Modification

3G Work item: Enhanced QoS Support in GPRS

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	
A	Corresponds to a correction in a 2G specification	
B	Addition of feature	X
C	Functional modification of feature	
D	Editorial modification	

Reason for change:

During a GPRS session, the QoS profile, e.g. the bandwidth reservation, for a data flow related to an activated PDP context may dynamically change in the PDN. This change may require a re-negotiation of the QoS profile for this PDP context in the GPRS network. Thus, a mechanism is required that allow the GGSN first to map the QoS-parameters of the PDP to the parameters used in the GPRS network and then to initiate a modification of the QoS for the PDP context.

Further, in order to adapt to the changing radio environment, network congestion, and changing application requirements an MS may need to modify the QoS profile associated with a PDP context.

However, in the current version of GSM 03.60 only an SGSN initiated PDP context modification is supported. Consequently, this CR proposes to enhance the QoS concept in GPRS to enable a GGSN and an MS initiated re-negotiation of QoS profiles by introduction of a GGSN and MS initiated PDP context modification procedures.

It should be noted that further details like error handling and procedure collision handling are not described in 03.60 and have to be covered by the corresponding stage 3 specifications.

Clauses affected: 9.2.3, 9.2.3.1, new 9.2.3.2, and new 9.2.3.3.

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
Other 2G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:

Other comments: This CR is a merge of the 03.60 CRs A084 r4 and A099 r2, which was first presented as A106. A106r1 was later converted to this 23.060 CR.

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

9.2.3 Modification Procedures

An MS or GGSN can request, or an SGSN can decide, possibly triggered by the HLR as explained in subclause "Insert Subscriber Data Procedure", to modify parameters that were negotiated during an activation procedure for one or several PDP contexts. The following parameters can be modified:

- QoS Negotiated; and
- Radio Priority.

The SGSN has several means to inform the MS of such a modification:

- send a separate Modify PDP Context Request message to the MS; or
- piggyback the modification information on a mobility management signalling exchange, e.g., routeing area update.

A GGSN can request the modification of parameters by sending an Update PDP Context Request message to the SGSN.

An MS can request the modification of parameters by sending a Modify PDP Context Request message to the SGSN.

9.2.3.1 SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

The SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 1. Each step is explained in the following list.

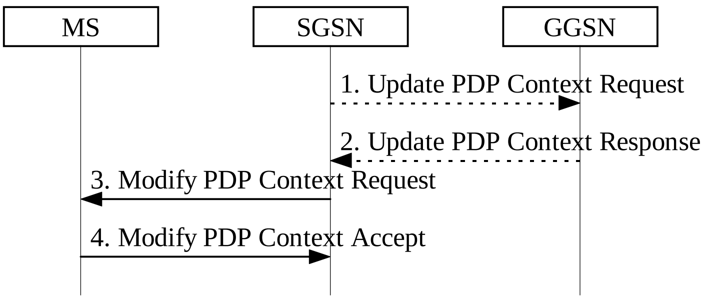


Figure 1: SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

1) The SGSN may send an Update PDP Context Request (TID, QoS Negotiated) message to the GGSN. If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being modified (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type), then the GGSN rejects the Update PDP Context Request. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.

2) The GGSN may restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN stores QoS Negotiated and returns an Update PDP Context Response (TID, QoS Negotiated) message.

3) The SGSN selects a Radio Priority based on QoS Negotiated, and sends a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority) message to the MS.

4) The MS acknowledges by returning a Modify PDP Context Accept message. If the MS does not accept the new QoS Negotiated it shall instead de-activate the PDP context with the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.

9.2.3.2 GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

The GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure X. Each step is explained in the following list.

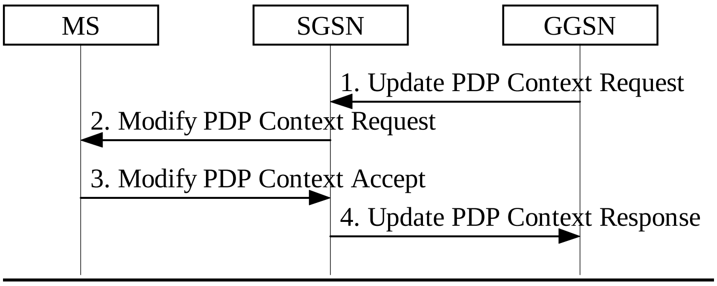


Figure X: GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

1) The GGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (TID, QoS Requested) message to the SGSN. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile.

2) The SGSN may restrict the desired QoS profile given its capabilities, the current load, the current QoS profile, and the subscribed QoS profile. The SGSN selects a Radio Priority based on QoS Negotiated, and sends a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority) message to the MS.

3) The MS acknowledges by returning a Modify PDP Context Accept message. If the MS does not accept the new QoS Negotiated it shall instead de-activate the PDP context with the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.

4) Upon receipt of the Modify PDP Context Accept message the SGSN returns an Update PDP Context Response (TID, QoS Negotiated) message to the GGSN. If the SGSN receives a Deactivate PDP Context Request message, it shall instead follow the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.

9.2.3.3 MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

The MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure Y. Each step is explained in the following list.

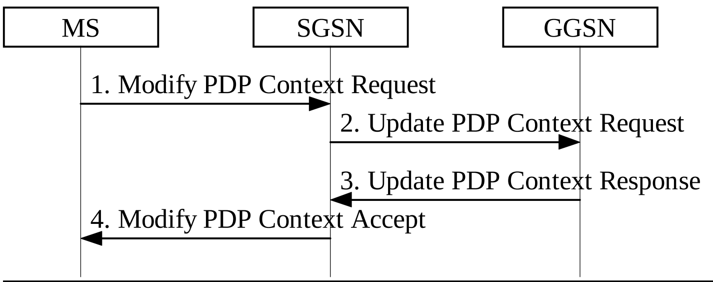


Figure Y: MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

1) The MS sends a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, QoS Requested) message to the SGSN. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile.

2) The SGSN may restrict the desired QoS profile given its capabilities, the current load, and the subscribed QoS profile. The SGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (TID, QoS Negotiated) message to the GGSN. If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being modified (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type), then the GGSN rejects the Update PDP Context Request. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.

3) The GGSN may further restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN stores QoS Negotiated and returns an Update PDP Context Response (TID, QoS Negotiated) message.

4) The SGSN selects a Radio Priority based on QoS Negotiated, and returns a Modify PDP Context Accept (TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority) message to the MS.

NOTE: If the SGSN does not accept QoS Requested, then steps 2 and 3 of this procedure are skipped, and the existing QoS Negotiated is returned to the MS in step 4.

3G CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	**CR**	**0yy**	Current Version:	3.0.0
3G specification number ↑		*↑ CR number as allocated by 3G support team*		

For submision to TSG SA# — for approval [X] / for information [ ] *(only one box should be marked with an X)*
list TSG meeting no. here ↑

Form: 3G CR cover sheet, version 1.0 The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/3GCRF-xx.rtf

Proposed change affects: USIM [ ] ME [X] UTRAN [ ] Core Network [X]
(at least one should be marked with an X)

Source: Ericsson, Rapporteur **Date:** 22 August, 1999

Subject: Introduction of EGPRS

3G Work item: EDGE

Category:
(only one category shall be marked with an X)

F	Correction	
A	Corresponds to a correction in a 2G specification	
B	Addition of feature	X
C	Functional modification of feature	
D	Editorial modification	

Reason for change:

The introduction of EDGE will enable approximately three times higher radio interface rates than standard GPRS. This will lead to higher throughput and lower delays. The delay classes are defined in GSM 02.60, they are only to a limited extent depending on radio interface rate, but also on set-up times and network transit times, which are not affected by EDGE. The delay classes can therefore be reused for EGPRS.

On the other hand, the throughput depends more on the radio interface rate, and since EGPRS will benefit of higher data transfer rates on the air interface this should be reflected by the throughput classes. While the peak throughput classes are sufficient (up to 2Mbit/s) to cover the higher data rates provided by EGPRS, the number of mean throughput classes has to be increased. Two new mean throughput classes will be introduced. The actual coding (defined in 04.08[4]) of the QoS information allows the definition of up to 32 different mean throughput classes, so still 11 classes are available for later use.

As a consequence of the fact that EGPRS will support a combined link adaptation and incremental redundancy mode, the Channel Codec Unit functionality has to be extended.

Clauses affected: 3.2, 3.3, 4, 12.7, and 15.2.4.2.

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
Other 2G core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:

Other comments: This CR is equivalent to and replaces 03.60 CR A103r1.

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

3.2 Abbreviations

For the purposes of the present document the following abbreviations apply. Additional applicable abbreviations can be found in GSM 01.04 [1].

EGPRS	Enhanced GPRS

3.3 Symbols

For the purposes of the present document the following symbols apply:

Gb	Interface between an SGSN and a BSS.
Gc	Interface between a GGSN and an HLR.
Gd	Interface between a SMS-GMSC and an SGSN, and between a SMS-IWMSC and an SGSN.
Gf	Interface between an SGSN and an EIR.
Gi	Reference point between GPRS and an external packet data network.
Gn	Interface between two GSNs within the same PLMN.
Gp	Interface between two GSNs in different PLMNs. The Gp interface allows support of GPRS network services across areas served by the co-operating GPRS PLMNs.
Gr	Interface between an SGSN and an HLR.
Gs	Interface between an SGSN and an MSC/VLR.
kbit/s	Kilobits per second.
Mbit/s	Megabits per second. 1 Mbit/s = 1 million bits per second.
R	Reference point between a non-ISDN compatible TE and MT. Typically this reference point supports a standard serial interface.
Um	Interface between the mobile station (MS) and the GPRS fixed network part. The Um interface is the GPRS network interface for providing packet data services over the radio to the MS. The MT part of the MS is used to access the GPRS services through this interface.

4 Main Concepts

GPRS uses a packet-mode technique to transfer high-speed and low-speed data and signalling in an efficient manner. GPRS optimises the use of network and radio resources. Strict separation between the radio subsystem and network subsystem is maintained, allowing the network subsystem to be reused with other radio access technologies. GPRS does not mandate changes to an installed MSC base.

New GPRS radio channels are defined, and the allocation of these channels is flexible: from 1 to 8 radio interface timeslots can be allocated per TDMA frame, timeslots are shared by the active users, and up and downlink are allocated separately. The radio interface resources can be shared dynamically between speech and data services as a function of service load and operator preference. Various radio channel coding schemes are specified to allow bitrates from 9 to more than 150 kbit/s per user. EGPRS is an enhancement of GPRS allowing higher bitrates on the radio interface. The higher bitrates are achieved by using a new modulation and new coding schemes in the MS and the BSS.

Applications based on standard data protocols are supported, and interworking is defined with IP networks and X.25 networks. Specific point-to-point and point-to-multipoint services are supported for applications such as traffic telematics and UIC train control. GPRS allows SMS transfer over GPRS radio channels.

GPRS is designed to support from intermittent and bursty data transfers through to occasional transmission of large volumes of data. Several quality of service profiles are supported. GPRS is designed for fast reservation to begin transmission of packets, typically 0,5 to 1 second. Charging should typically be based on the amount of data transferred.

Three GPRS MS modes of operation are supported: An MS in class-A mode of operation operates GPRS and other GSM services simultaneously. An MS in class-B mode of operation monitors control channels for GPRS and other GSM services simultaneously, but can only operate one set of services at one time. An MS in class-C mode of operation exclusively operates GPRS services.

GPRS introduces two new network nodes in the GSM PLMN: The Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN), which is at the same hierarchical level as the MSC, keeps track of the individual MSs' location and performs security functions and access control. The SGSN is connected to the base station system with Frame Relay. The Gateway GSN (GGSN) provides interworking with external packet-switched networks, and is connected with SGSNs via an IP-based GPRS backbone network. The HLR is enhanced with GPRS subscriber information, and the SMS-GMSCs and SMS-IWMSCs are upgraded to support SMS transmission via the SGSN. Optionally, the MSC/VLR can be enhanced for more-efficient co-ordination of GPRS and non-GPRS services and functionality: e.g., paging for circuit-switched calls that can be performed more efficiently via the SGSN, and combined GPRS and non-GPRS location updates.

GPRS security functionality is equivalent to the existing GSM security. The SGSN performs authentication and cipher setting procedures based on the same algorithms, keys, and criteria as in existing GSM. GPRS uses a ciphering algorithm optimised for packet data transmission. A GPRS ME can access the GPRS services with SIMs that are not GPRS-aware, and with GPRS-aware SIMs.

Cell selection may be performed autonomously by an MS, or the base station system instructs the MS to select a certain cell. The MS informs the network when it re-selects another cell or group of cells known as a routeing area.

In order to access the GPRS services, an MS shall first make its presence known to the network by performing a GPRS attach. This operation establishes a logical link between the MS and the SGSN, and makes the MS available for SMS over GPRS, paging via SGSN, and notification of incoming GPRS data.

In order to send and receive GPRS data, the MS shall activate the packet data address that it wants to use. This operation makes the MS known in the corresponding GGSN, and interworking with external data networks can commence.

User data is transferred transparently between the MS and the external data networks with a method known as encapsulation and tunnelling: data packets are equipped with GPRS-specific protocol information and transferred between the MS and GGSN. This transparent transfer method lessens the requirement for the GPRS PLMN to interpret external data protocols, and it enables easy introduction of additional interworking protocols in the future. User data can be compressed and protected with retransmission protocols for efficiency and reliability.

12.7 Abis Interface

When the GPRS MAC and RLC layer functions are positioned remote to the BTS the information between the Channel Codec Unit (CCU) and the remote GPRS Packet Control Unit (PCU) is transferred in frames with a fixed length of 320 bits (20 ms). In the present document these frames are denoted "PCU Frames" and are an extension to the "TRAU frames" defined in GSM 08.60 [22]. Within these frames both GPRS data and the GPRS RLC/MAC associated control signals are transferred.

The Abis interface should be the same if the PCU is positioned at the BSC site (option B in Figure 1) or at the SGSN site (option C in Figure 1). In option B, the PCU could be implemented as an adjunct unit to the BSC. In option C, the BSC should be considered as transparent for 16 kbit/s channels. In configurations B and C the PCU is referred to as being a remote PCU.

The remote PCU is considered a part of the BSC, and the signalling between the BSC and the PCU may be performed by using BSC internal signals. The inband signalling between the CCU and the PCU functions, using PCU frames is required when the Abis interface is applied (options B and C in Figure 1).

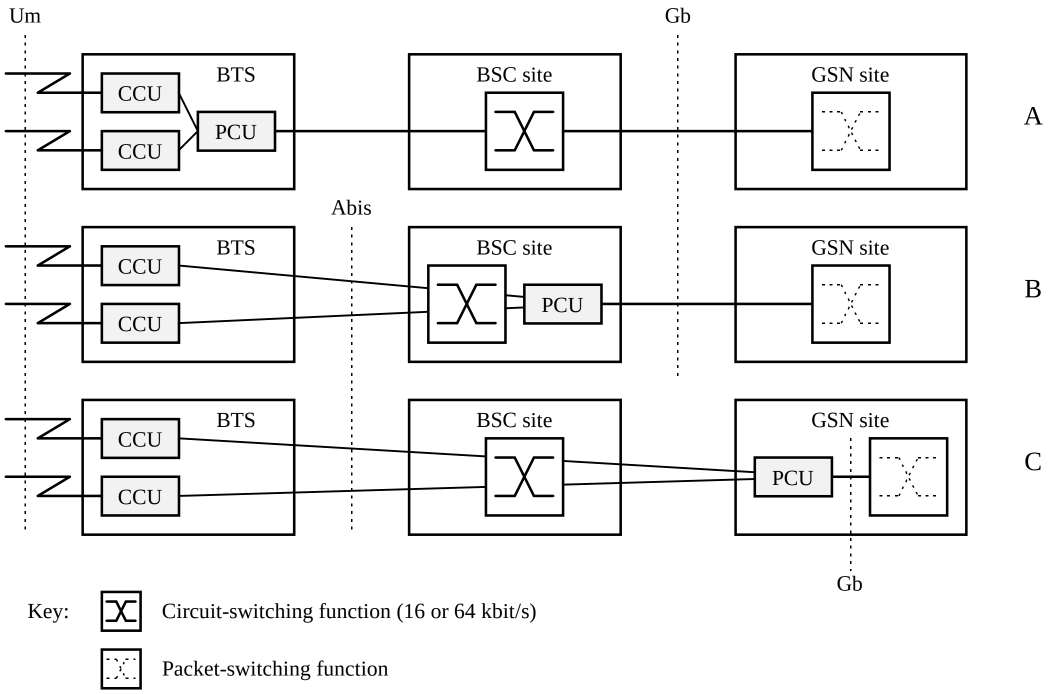


Figure 1: Remote Packet Control Unit (PCU) Positions

The PCU is responsible for the following GPRS MAC and RLC layer functions as defined in GSM 03.64:

- LLC layer PDU segmentation into RLC blocks for downlink transmission;
- LLC layer PDU reassembly from RLC blocks for uplink transmissions;
- PDCH scheduling functions for the uplink and downlink data transfers;
- PDCH uplink ARQ functions, including RLC block ack / nak;
- PDCH downlink ARQ function, including buffering and retransmission of RLC blocks;
- channel access control functions, e.g., access requests and grants; and
- radio channel management functions, e.g., power control, congestion control, broadcast control information, etc.

The functions inside the Channel Codec Unit (CCU) are:

- the channel coding functions, including FEC and interleaving;~~ and~~
- radio channel measurement functions, including received quality level, received signal level and information related to timing advance measurements; and
- for EGPRS, in case of incremental redundancy mode of operation, enhanced channel coding functions.

The BSS is responsible for allocation and de-allocation of radio resources. A PCU frame shall be transferred between the PCU and the CCU every 20 ms.

12.7.1 Remote Packet Control Unit

When the Packet Control Unit (PCU) is remote to the BTS, the Channel Codec Unit (CCU) in the BTS may control some of the functions in the remote PCU in the BSC. As well, the PCU may control some of the functions of the CCU. This remote control is performed by inband signalling carried by the control bits (C-bits) in each PCU frame.

15.2.4 Throughput Classes

User data throughput is specified in terms of a set of throughput classes that characterise the expected bandwidth required for a PDP context. The throughput is defined by both peak and mean classes.

15.2.4.1 Peak Throughput Class

The peak throughput is measured at the Gi and R reference points in units of octets per second. It specifies the maximum rate at which data is expected to be transferred across the network for an individual PDP context. There is no guarantee that this peak rate can be achieved or sustained for any time period, this depends upon the MS capability and available radio resources. The network may limit the subscriber to the negotiated peak data rate, even if additional transmission capacity is available. The peak throughput is independent of the delay class, that determines the per-packet GPRS network transit delay. The peak throughput classes are defined in Table 1.

Table 1: Peak Throughput Classes

Peak Throughput Class	Peak Throughput in octets per second
1	Up to 1 000 (8 kbit/s).
2	Up to 2 000 (16 kbit/s).
3	Up to 4 000 (32 kbit/s).
4	Up to 8 000 (64 kbit/s).
5	Up to 16 000 (128 kbit/s).
6	Up to 32 000 (256 kbit/s).
7	Up to 64 000 (512 kbit/s).
8	Up to 128 000 (1 024 kbit/s).
9	Up to 256 000 (2 048 kbit/s).

15.2.4.2 Mean Throughput Class

The mean throughput is measured at the Gi and R reference points in units of octets per hour. It specifies the average rate at which data is expected to be transferred across the GPRS network during the remaining lifetime of an activated PDP context. The network may limit the subscriber to the negotiated mean data rate (e.g., for flat-rate charging), even if additional transmission capacity is available. A "best effort" mean throughput class may be negotiated, and means that throughput shall be made available to the MS on a per need and availability basis.

The mean throughput classes are defined in Table 2.

Table 2: Mean Throughput Classes

Mean Throughput Class	Mean Throughput in octets per hour
1	100 (~0.22 bit/s).
2	200 (~0.44 bit/s).
3	500 (~1.11 bit/s).
4	1 000 (~2.2 bit/s).
5	2 000 (~4.4 bit/s).
6	5 000 (~11.1 bit/s).
7	10 000 (~22 bit/s).
8	20 000 (~44 bit/s).
9	50 000 (~111 bit/s).
10	100 000 (~0.22 kbit/s).
11	200 000 (~0.44 kbit/s).
12	500 000 (~1.11 kbit/s).
13	1 000 000 (~2.2 kbit/s).
14	2 000 000 (~4.4 kbit/s).
15	5 000 000 (~11.1 kbit/s).
16	10 000 000 (~22 kbit/s).
17	20 000 000 (~44 kbit/s).
18	50 000 000 (~111 kbit/s).
<u>19</u>	<u>100 000 000 (~0.22 Mbit/s).</u>
<u>20</u>	<u>200 000 000 (~0.44 Mbit/s).</u>
31	Best effort.

3GPP TSG-SA meeting #7 | ***Document*** ***S2-99771***

Sophia Antipolis, 24-27 Aug 1999

3G CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	**CR**	**prov1 r1**	Current Version:
3G specification number ↑		*↑ CR number as allocated by 3G support team*	

For submision to TSG	SA#5	for approval	X	*(only one box should*
list TSG meeting no. here ↑		for information		*be marked with an X)*

Form: 3G CR cover sheet, version 1.0 *The latest version of this form is available from:* ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/3GCRF-xx.rtf

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	USIM		ME	X	UTRAN	X	Core Network	X

Source:	Nokia	**Date:**	20/08/1999
Subject:	MM states in UMTS – Revised version		
3G Work item:			

Category:	F	Correction	
	A	Corresponds to a correction in a 2G specification	
(only one category	B	Addition of feature	X
shall be marked	C	Functional modification of feature	
with an X)	D	Editorial modification	

Reason for change:	The MM states are not yet described in 23.060. This contribution proposes to add them. Note that some points are marked FFS, if they are linked to points under discussion.
Clauses affected:	Text proposed for chapter 6.3 and 6.4

Other specs affected:	Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
	Other 2G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
	MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
	BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
	O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:

Other comments:	

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

6.3.1 PMM-DETACHED

In the PMM-DETACHED state there is no communication going on between the UE and the 3G-SGSN. The UE MM state machine does not react on system information related to the 3G-SGSN. UE is not reachable by 3G-SGSN, as the location of UE is not known.

After a packet data attach, the state changes to PMM-CONNECTED, in the 3G-SGSN when receiving the request, and in the UE when receiving an indication that the request was successfully received by SGSN.

6.3.2 PMM-IDLE

The location of UE is known on accuracy of a routing area (RA). Paging is needed in order to reach UE, e.g. for signaling.

The UE shall perform Routing area update if RA changes. Signaling towards HLR is needed if the 3G-SGSN is not having an MM context for this UE.

The 3G-SGSN shall move to PMM-Connected after receiving an uplink signaling message from the UE.

The UE shall move to PMM-Connected when receiving an indication that a signaling message was successfully received by SGSN.

Note: In practice a response message (or delivery of packet after a paging response) proves that the uplink packet was successful.

Packet data detach changes the state to PMM-DETACHED. The 3G-SGSN may perform an implicit detach any time after the MS reachable timer expiry. The MM context of UE is deleted preferably after a certain (implementation dependent) time. HLR may be informed about the deletion (see Purge procedure).

6.3.3 PMM-CONNECTED

The location of UE is known to 3G-SGSN on accuracy of serving RNC. In PMM-CONNECTED state, the location of the UE is tracked by the Serving RNC. The UE is not anymore performing Routing Area Update procedure (except maybe triggered by RNC in SRNC relocation procedure FFS).

When an MS is PMM-Connected, a signaling connection is established between the MS and the SGSN. This connection is made of two parts, an RRC connection and a Iu connection.

Note: The SGSN does not know the real Routing Area in which the UE is located but only the last Routing Area in which UE is registered. Serving RNC relocation is performed if SRNC changes.

In 3G-SGSN, Iu connection release or failed downlink transfer with cause "IMSI unknown in RNC" changes the state to PMM-IDLE.

The UE shall move to PMM-IDLE when its connection to the 3G-SGSN has been released or broken~~if the radio connection for packet is released (a radio connection for CS transfer may remain)~~. This~~e~~ ~~radio connection~~ release or failure is explicitly indicated by RNS to UE or detected by UE (RRC connection failure). The radio connection shall also be released if a URA update fail because of "RRC connection not established" or if URA update timer expire while the UE is out of coverage.

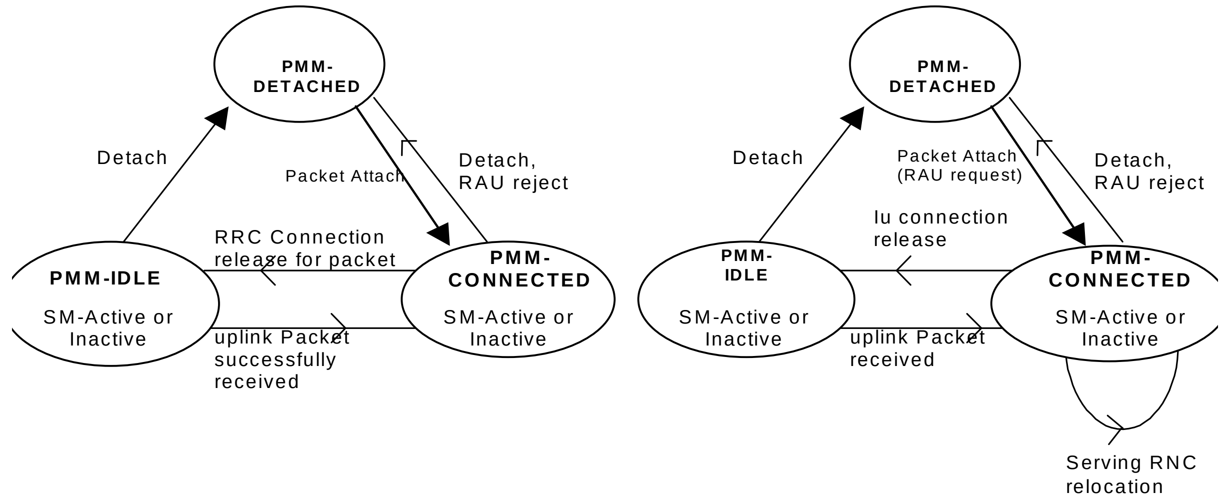
Note: After a signaling procedure (e.g. routing area update), the SGSN may decide to release the Iu connection which moves the state to PMM-Idle (FFS).

Packet data detach changes the state to PMM-DETACHED.

6.4 UMTS MM state functionality

6.4.1 State Transitions and Functions for UMTS

The figure below introduces the states of MM. The states and activations are further described in sub-sections.



MM States in UE MM States in 3G-SGSN

Note~~ (FFS)~~: In both PMM-Idle and PMM-connected, the Session Management may or may not have activated PDP context. The consequence is that in PMM connected ~~mode~~state, only a signaling connection might be established. In PMM-Idle ~~mode~~state, PDP context may be established, but no corresponding connection over Iu and the radio are established.

6.4.2 Error cases

In case of error, the MM state of the UE and the 3G-SGSN might become out of synchronisation. In this case the UE may be in PMM-Idle while the 3G-SGSN is in PMM- connected.

Note: The opposite (UE in PMM-Connected and SGSN in PMM-IDLE) shall never happen because 3G-SGSN might not have the RAI where the UE is really located, so downlink transfer will be impossible until the periodic URA update timer expires.

This situation is recovered by a successful RAU moving the UE to PMM-Connected, or by a failed downlink transfer with cause "IMSI unknown in RNC", triggering a paging procedure from 3G-SGSN.

Note: A RNS shall not release the Iu connection if it could not inform the UE that the radio connection was released.

3GPP TSG-SA meeting #7 | ***Document* S2-99773**

Sophia_Antipolis 24-27 August 1999

3G CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	**CR**	**Prov4 r1**	Current Version:	
3G specification number ↑		*↑ CR number as allocated by 3G support team*		

For submision to TSG	SA#5	for approval	X	*(only one box should*
list TSG meeting no. here ↑		for information		*be marked with an X)*

Form: 3G CR cover sheet, version 1.0 *The latest version of this form is available from:* ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/3GCRF-xx.rtf

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	USIM		ME	X	UTRAN	X	Core Network	X

Source:	Nokia	**Date:**	20/8/99
Subject:	Introduction of Service Request procedure – Revised version		
3G Work item:			

Category:			
	F	Correction	
	A	Corresponds to a correction in a 2G specification	
(only one category	B	Addition of feature	X
shall be marked	C	Functional modification of feature	
with an X)	D	Editorial modification	

Reason for change:

The procedure is used to establish a secure connection between UE and 3G-SGSN. The procedure is used when a MM_Idle UE needs to send uplink ciphered message (e.g. MO SMS). As ciphering is located in UTRAN, SGSN shall first to send security keys to UTRAN to enable the secure uplink transfer.

The same procedure should be used by a UE MM-IDLE and SM Active to re-establish the radio access bearer prior to uplink data transmission.

Clauses affected: A new section is proposed in MM procedure chapter

Other specs affected:			
	Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
	Other 2G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
	MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
	BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
	O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

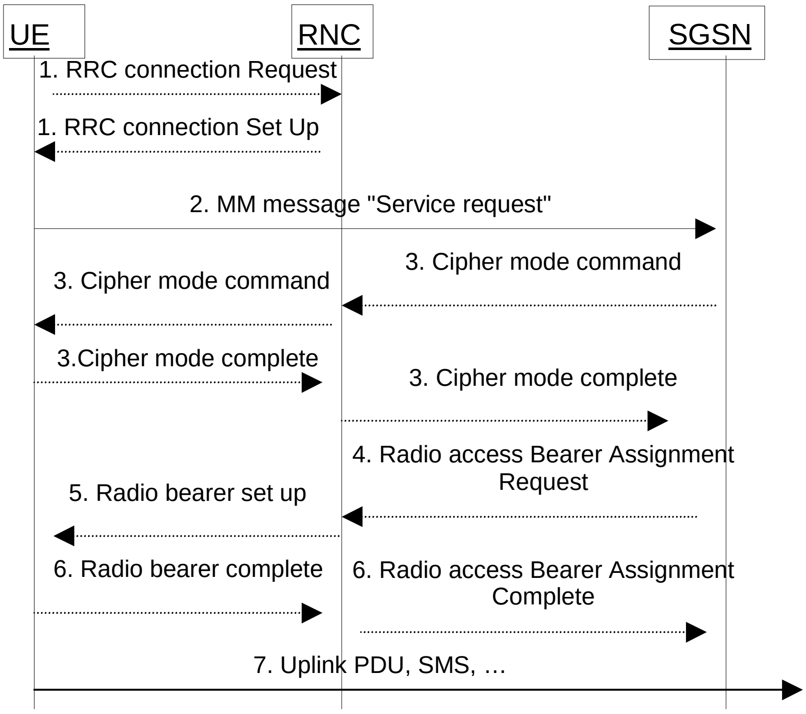
help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

6.4.1 State Transitions and Functions for UMTS

6.4.1.x Service Request procedure

This procedure is used by an PMM-Idle UE to request the establishment of a secure connection to 3G-SGSN. The PMM-Idle UE starts this procedure if it needs to send an uplink message (e.g. ~~modify a~~Activate PDP context; MO SMS; user data ~~(FFS)~~).



[Note, messages 3-6 are dashed]

1. The UE establishes an RRC connection, if none exists for CS traffic.

2. The UE sends an MM message "Service Request" (PTMSI, PTMSI Signature, RAI, CKSN, Service type) which indicates to the SGSN that all radio bearer needs to be set up for this UE, and that cipher command procedure needs to be performed. At this point, SGSN may perform authentication procedure.

3. The SGSN may perform~~s~~ the cipher mode procedure.

4. In case resources for PDP contexts are re-established ~~The~~ the SGSN sends one Radio access Bearer Assignment Request (NSAPI (s), QoS profile(s), SGSN IP address(es)), to re-establish radio access bearer for every PDP context established. (FFS). The inclusion of the RRC_Connection_Release timer value sent from the Core Network to the RNC (within the Radio Access Bearer Assignment Request message or by other message) is FFS.

5. The RNC indicates to the UE the new Bearer ID established and the corresponding NSAPI with RRC radio bearer set up procedure. (FFS)

6. SRNC replies with the RAB assignment response message (NSAPI (s), QoS profile(s), RNC IP address(es))). The GTP tunnel(s) is(are) established on the Iu interface.

7. The UE sends the uplink packet.

Note: the UE knows that Service request was well received when it receive the RRC-Cipher command message.

3GPP TSG-SA meeting #8
Bonn, 13-17 September 1999

Document ***S2-99872***

3G CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	**CR**	**005r2**	Current Version:	

3G specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by 3G support team*

For submision to TSG	SA#5	for approval	X	*(only one box should*
list TSG meeting no. here ↑		for information		*be marked with an X)*

Form: 3G CR cover sheet, version 1.0 *The latest version of this form is available from:* ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/3GCRF-xx.rtf

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*

USIM		ME	X	UTRAN	X	Core Network	X

Source:	Nokia
Date:	10/09/1999
Subject:	Introduction of Iu Release procedure – Revised version
3G Work item:	

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	
A	Corresponds to a correction in a 2G specification	
B	Addition of feature	X
C	Functional modification of feature	
D	Editorial modification	

Reason for change:

The procedure used to release the Iu interface is introduced in 23.060. Note this procedure is already defined in 3GPP25.413 (RANAP). The cause handling and interaction with RRC and MM states is further clarified in this stage 2 description.

This CR is an revised version of the accepted CR. It was asked that more clarification to the figure is needed on conditions that apply for the messages.

Clauses affected: A new section is proposed in Iu interface for UMTS chapter

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
Other 2G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

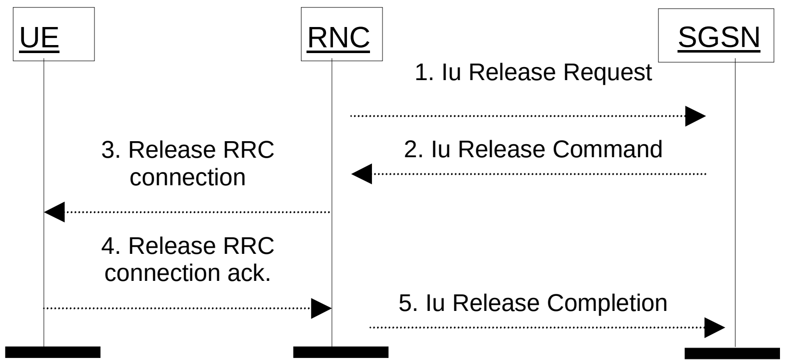
help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

12.6 Iu interface for UMTS

12.6.x Iu release procedure

This procedure is used to release the Iu interface. This procedure also triggers the release of all the Iu connections and change SGSN PMM state to PMM-Idle. Both RNC initiated and SGSN initiated Iu release procedures are showed in the figure below.



Note 1, the message 1 is only sent when RNC initiated Iu release procedure is considered.

Note 2, the message 1 is not sent but the message 2 is sent when SGSN initiated Iu release procedure is considered.

1. The RNC notices that the RRC connection has been released or detects a need to release the radio resources ~~(FFS)~~. It sends an Iu release request to SGSN (Cause). The cause indicates the reason of the release ("O and M intervention", "equipment failure", "implicit release" or "resources optimisation" ~~(FFS)~~). "Implicit release" means that the periodic URA update timer expired. "~~r~~Resource optimisation" means that RNC decided to release a UE with only non-real time bearer established to optimise the radio usage after the RRC_Connection_Release timer has expired ~~(FFS)~~.

2. The SGSN releases the Iu the release by sending the Iu release command (Cause) to the RNC. This message may be~~is~~ triggered either by an Iu Release Request message, or by another SGSN event (e.g., authentication failure or detach). It is optional for the SGSN to launch the Iu release command procedure in case of Iu Release Request received from the RNC with "Resource optimization" cause.

3. If RRC connection is not already released (cause "resources optimisation"), the RNC sends an RRC connection release to the UE. [Cause "Detach" or "Authentication failure are FFS]

4. The UE answers with an RRC connection complete.

5. The RNC confirms the Iu release to SGSN by sending an Iu Release completion message..

If RNC does not receive RRC connection complete and if the Cause is different than "Authentication failure", or "Detach", it should send a failure message to SGSN and SGSN should stay in MM-connected state.

3GPP TSG SA2 *Document* ***S2-99884***

Bonn, Germany, 13-17 September 1999

3G CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	**CR**	**025**	Current Version: 3.0.0
3G specification number ↑		*↑ CR number as allocated by 3G support team*	

For submision to TSG	SA#	for approval	X
list TSG meeting no. here ↑		for information	

(only one box should be marked with an X)

Form: 3G CR cover sheet, version 1.0 The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/3GCRF-xx.rtf

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*

USIM		ME	X	UTRAN		Core Network	X

Source: Ericsson **Date:** Sept 13, 1999

Subject: Extension of PDP type IP to support e.g. End-to-End DHCP or Mobile IP

3G Work item: GPRS, Access to ISPs and Intranets in GPRS Phase 2 – separation of GPRS bearer establishment and ISP Environment setup.

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	
A	Corresponds to a correction in a 2G specification	
B	Addition of feature	
C	Functional modification of feature	X
D	Editorial modification	

Reason for change:

In line with the WI goal, this CR allows the separation of GPRS bearer establishment and ISP Environment setup. The proposed changes support end-to-end DHCP and Mobile IP. Currently, the PDP activation procedure for PDP type IP assigns a PDP address on behalf of the MS without giving the MS the possibility to directly communicate or negotiate with the server assigning the address, e.g. the DHCP server. Therefore, the MS is not able to run challenge response authentication or to retrieve plug-and-play information from the network. In addition, generally, all protocols that use IP broadcast mechanisms cannot be used by the MS, in particular DHCP or Mobile IP. This CR introduces the general possibility to use IP broadcasts (to limited port numbers which are terminated in special GGSN services).

This CR proposes a modified activation procedure in which the MS may receive the PDP address 0.0.0.0 in the Activate PDP Context Accept message indicating that the MS will receive the PDP address in a second phase during a Modify PDP Context Request (this message is extended by this CR to include the PDP address).

Packet forwarding in between the two phases is done via IP broadcasts from the view point of the MS and the PDN host. The correct mapping to GTP tunnels is done by GGSN services which relay the broadcasts and keep track of the tunnel Ids.

Reserved APNs are proposed in this CR which indicate that above mentioned special services are supported by this APN. This helps automatic APN selection. The service offering is not exclusively coupled to the reserved APN: all APNs can support the new services if configured to do so by the operator.

Clauses affected: 2, 3.2, 9.2.1,9.2.2, 9.2.3, 9.2.4, 14.9

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
Other 2G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:

Other comments: This CR is dependent on CR 009 "MS and GSN-initiated PDP context modification" and makes references to the messages introduced in it.

2 References

[47] IETF RFC 2131 (1997): “Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol”.

[48] IETF RFC 1542 (1993): “Clarification and Extensions for the Bootstrap Protocol”.

[49] IETF RFC 2002 (1996): “IPv4 Mobility Support”.

3.2 Abbreviations

DHCP Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
MIP Mobile IP

9.2.1 Static and Dynamic PDP Addresses

PDP addresses can be allocated to an MS in four~~three~~ different ways:

- the HPLMN operator assigns a PDP address permanently to the MS (static PDP address);
- the HPLMN operator assigns a PDP address to the MS when a PDP context is activated (dynamic HPLMN PDP address); or
- the VPLMN operator assigns a PDP address to the MS when a PDP context is activated (dynamic VPLMN PDP address).
- the PDN operator/administrator assigns an IP address to the MS after the PDP context has been activated (External PDN Address Allocation).

It is the HPLMN operator that defines in the subscription whether a dynamic HPLMN or VPLMN PDP address can be used.

For every IMSI, zero, one, or more dynamic PDP address per PDP type can be assigned. For every IMSI, zero, one, or more static PDP addresses per PDP type can be subscribed to.

When dynamic addressing from the HPLMN or the VPLMN is used, it is the responsibility of the GGSN to allocate and release the dynamic PDP address. When External PDN Address Allocation is used, it is the responsibility of the MS and PDN to allocate and release the dynamic PDP address by means of protocols such as DHCP or MIP. In case of DHCP, the GGSN provides the function of a DHCP Relay Agent [47,48]. In case of MIP the GGSN provides the function of a Foreign Agent [49].

Only static PDP addressing is applicable in the network-requested PDP context activation case.

9.2.2 Activation Procedures

9.2.2.1 PDP Context Activation Procedure

The PDP Context Activation procedure is illustrated in xx. Each step is explained in the following list.

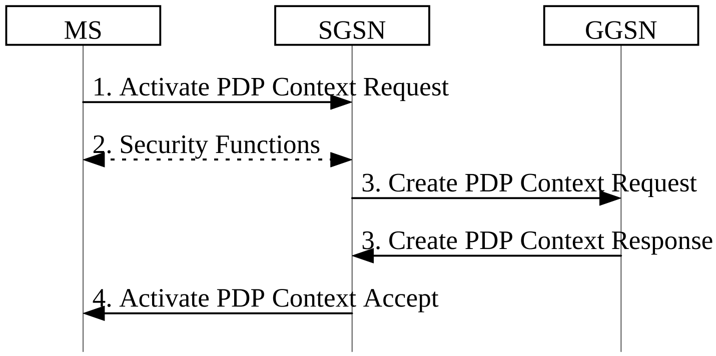


Figure xx: PDP Context Activation Procedure

1) The MS sends an Activate PDP Context Request (NSAPI, TI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Requested, PDP Configuration Options) message to the SGSN. The MS shall use PDP Address to indicate whether it requires the use of a static PDP address or whether it requires the use of a dynamic PDP address. The MS shall leave PDP Address empty to request a dynamic PDP address. The MS may use Access Point Name to select a reference point to a certain external network and/or to select a service. Access Point Name is a logical name referring to the external packet data network and /or to a service that the subscriber wishes to connect to. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. PDP Configuration Options may be used to request optional PDP parameters from the GGSN (see GSM 09.60). PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN.

2) Security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) The SGSN validates the Activate PDP Context Request using PDP Type (optional), PDP Address (optional), and Access Point Name (optional) provided by the MS and the PDP context subscription records. The validation criteria, the APN selection criteria, and the mapping from APN to a GGSN are described in annex A.

   If no GGSN address can be derived or if the SGSN has determined that the Activate PDP Context Request is not valid according to the rules described in annex A, then the SGSN rejects the PDP context activation request.

If a GGSN address can be derived, the SGSN creates a TID for the requested PDP context by combining the IMSI stored in the MM context with the NSAPI received from the MS. If the MS requests a dynamic address, then the SGSN lets a GGSN allocate the dynamic address. The SGSN may restrict the requested QoS attributes given its capabilities, the current load, and the subscribed QoS profile. The SGSN sends a Create PDP Context Request (PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Negotiated, TID, MSISDN, Selection Mode, PDP Configuration Options) message to the affected GGSN. Access Point Name shall be the APN Network Identifier of the APN selected according to the procedure described in annex A. PDP Address shall be empty if a dynamic address is requested. The GGSN may use Access Point Name to find an external network and optionally to activate a service for this APN. Selection Mode indicates whether a subscribed APN was selected, or whether a non-subscribed APN sent by MS or a non-subscribed APN chosen by SGSN was selected. Selection Mode is set according to annex A. The GGSN may use Selection Mode when deciding whether to accept or reject the PDP context activation. For example, if an APN requires subscription, then the GGSN is configured to accept only the PDP context activation that requests a subscribed APN as indicated by the SGSN with Selection Mode. The GGSN creates a new entry in its PDP context table and generates a Charging Id. The new entry allows the GGSN to route PDP PDUs between the SGSN and the external PDP network, and to start charging. The GGSN may further restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN then returns a Create PDP Context Response (TID, PDP Address, BB Protocol, Reordering Required, PDP Configuration Options, QoS Negotiated, Charging Id, Cause) message to the SGSN. PDP Address is included if the GGSN allocated a PDP address.
If the GGSN has been configured by the operator to use External PDN Address Allocation for the requested APN, the PDP address returned by the GGSN shall be set to 0.0.0.0, indicating that the PDP address shall be negotiated by the MS with the external PDN after the PDP context activation procedure. The GGSN shall relay, modify and monitor these negotiations during the life time of the PDP context and use the GGSN-initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure to transfer the currently used PDP address to the SGSN and the MS.
BB Protocol indicates whether TCP or UDP shall be used to transport user data on the backbone network between the SGSN and GGSN. Reordering Required indicates whether the SGSN shall reorder N-PDUs before delivering the N-PDUs to the MS. PDP Configuration Options contain optional PDP parameters that the GGSN may transfer to the MS. These optional PDP parameters may be requested by the MS in the Activate PDP Context Request message, or may be sent unsolicited by the GGSN. PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN. The Create PDP Context messages are sent over the GPRS backbone network.

If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being activated (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type), then the GGSN rejects the Create PDP Context Request message. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.

4) The SGSN inserts the NSAPI along with the GGSN address in its PDP context. If the MS has requested a dynamic address, the PDP address received from the GGSN is inserted in the PDP context. The SGSN selects Radio Priority based on QoS Negotiated, and returns an Activate PDP Context Accept (PDP Type, PDP Address, TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, PDP Configuration Options) message to the MS. The SGSN is now able to route PDP PDUs between the GGSN and the MS, and to start charging.

For each PDP Address a different quality of service (QoS) profile may be requested. For example, some PDP addresses may be associated with E-mail that can tolerate lengthy response times. Other applications cannot tolerate delay and demand a very high level of throughput, interactive applications being one example. These different requirements are reflected in the QoS profile. The QoS profile is defined in subclause "Quality of Service Profile". If a QoS requirement is beyond the capabilities of a PLMN, the PLMN negotiates the QoS profile as close as possible to the requested QoS profile. The MS either accepts the negotiated QoS profile, or deactivates the PDP context.

After an SGSN has successfully updated the GGSN, the PDP contexts associated with an MS is distributed as shown in clause "Information Storage".

If the PDP Context Activation Procedure fails or if the SGSN returns an Activate PDP Context Reject (Cause, PDP Configuration Options) message, then the MS may attempt another activation to the same APN up to a maximum number of attempts.

9.2.3 Modification Procedures

An MS or GGSN can request, or an SGSN can decide, possibly triggered by the HLR as explained in subclause "Insert Subscriber Data Procedure", to modify parameters that were negotiated during an activation procedure for one or several PDP contexts. The following parameters can be modified:

- QoS Negotiated;~~ and~~
- Radio Priority~~.~~; and
- PDP address (in case of the GGSN-initiated modification procedure).

The SGSN has several means to inform the MS of such a modification:

- send a separate Modify PDP Context Request message to the MS; or
- piggyback the modification information on a mobility management signalling exchange, e.g., routeing area update.

A GGSN can request the modification of parameters by sending an Update PDP Context Request message to the SGSN.

An MS can request the modification of parameters by sending a Modify PDP Context Request message to the SGSN.

9.2.3.2 GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

The GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure X. Each step is explained in the following list.

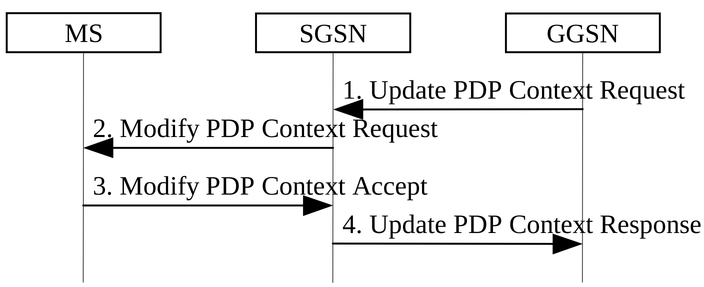


Figure X: GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

1) The GGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (TID, QoS Requested, PDP Address) message to the SGSN. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. PDP Address is optional.

2) The SGSN may restrict the desired QoS profile given its capabilities, the current load, the current QoS profile, and the subscribed QoS profile. The SGSN selects a Radio Priority based on QoS Negotiated, and sends a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, PDP Address) message to the MS. PDP Address is optional.

3) The MS acknowledges by returning a Modify PDP Context Accept message. If the MS does not accept the new QoS Negotiated it shall instead de-activate the PDP context with the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.

4) Upon receipt of the Modify PDP Context Accept message the SGSN returns an Update PDP Context Response (TID, QoS Negotiated) message to the GGSN. If the SGSN receives a Deactivate PDP Context Request message, it shall instead follow the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.

9.2.4 Deactivation Procedures

9.2.4.1 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure

The PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure is illustrated in xx. Each step is explained in the following list.

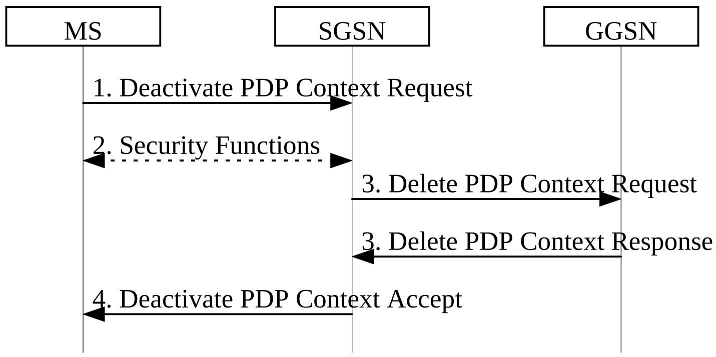


Figure xx: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure

1) The MS sends a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI) message to the SGSN.

2) Security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) The SGSN sends a Delete PDP Context Request (TID) message to the GGSN. The GGSN removes the PDP context and returns a Delete PDP Context Response (TID) message to the SGSN. If the MS was using a dynamic PDP address allocated by the GGSN, then the GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete PDP Context messages are sent over the GPRS backbone network.

4) The SGSN returns a Deactivate PDP Context Accept (TI) message to the MS.

At GPRS detach, all PDP contexts for the MS are implicitly deactivated.

9.2.4.2 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure

The PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN procedure is illustrated in xx. Each step is explained in the following list.

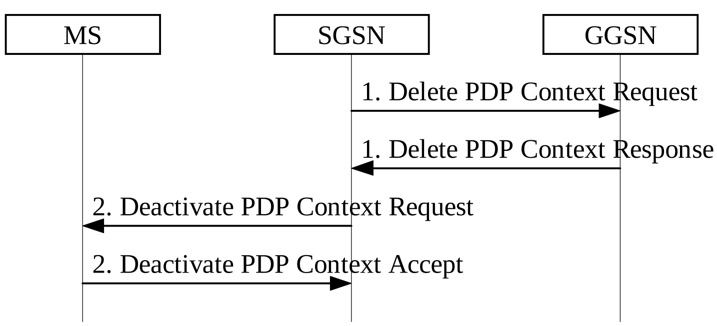


Figure xx: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure

1) The SGSN sends a Delete PDP Context Request (TID) message to the GGSN. The GGSN removes the PDP context and returns a Delete PDP Context Response (TID) message to the SGSN. If the MS was using a dynamic PDP address allocated by the GGSN, then the GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete PDP Context messages are sent over the GPRS

backbone network. The SGSN may not wait for the response from the GGSN before sending the Deactivate PDP Context Request message.

2) The SGSN sends a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI) message to the MS. The MS removes the PDP context and returns a Deactivate PDP Context Accept (TI) message to the SGSN.

9.2.4.3 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure

The PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN procedure is illustrated in xx. Each step is explained in the following list.

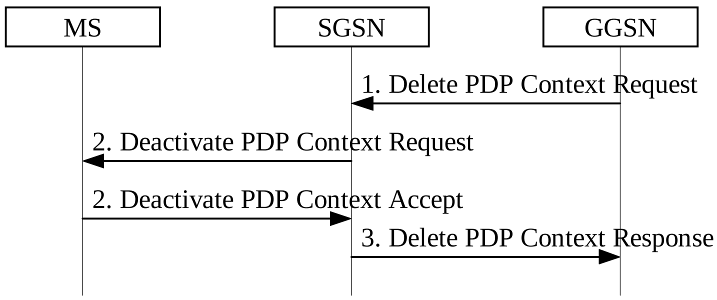


Figure xx: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure

1) The GGSN sends a Delete PDP Context Request (TID) message to the SGSN.

2) The SGSN sends a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI) message to the MS. The MS removes the PDP context and returns a Deactivate PDP Context Accept (TI) message to the SGSN.

3) The SGSN returns a Delete PDP Context Response (TID) message to the GGSN. If the MS was using a dynamic PDP address allocated by the GGSN, then the GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete PDP Context messages are sent over the GPRS backbone network. The SGSN may not wait for the response from the MS before sending the Delete PDP Context Response message.

14.9 Access Point Name

In the GPRS backbone, Access Point Name is a reference to the GGSN to be used. In addition, Access Point Name may, in the GGSN, identify the external network and optionally a service to be offered. Access Point Name is composed of two parts as defined in GSM 03.03:

- The APN Network Identifier is mandatory and is a label (for example "corporation" or "service") or a set of labels separated by dots which is a fully qualified domain name according to the DNS naming conventions (for example "company.com" or "service.company.com"). In order to guarantee the uniqueness of the APN, the GPRS PLMN should allocate, to an ISP or corporation, an APN Network Identifier identical to their domain name in the public Internet. The APN Network Identifier shall not end with ".gprs". An APN Network Identifier consisting of 3 or more labels and starting with a Reserved Service Label, or an APN Network Identifier consisting of a Reserved Service Label alone, shall indicate, that for this APN, the GGSN supports additional services, such as dynamic PDN addressing or Mobile IP support. Reserved Service Labels, e.g. "dhcp" or "MIPv4FA" and the corresponding services they stand for, e.g. external PDN addressing via DHCP, or Mobile IP Foreign Agent support are to be agreed among operators.

- The APN Operator Identifier is optional. It is a fully qualified domain name according to the DNS naming conventions, and consists of three labels. The APN Operator Identifier shall end in ".gprs". For example, it may be "MNCyyyy.MCCzzzz.gprs". The exact format is defined in GSM 09.60.

The APN stored in the HLR shall not contain the APN Operator Identifier. A wild card may be stored in the HLR instead of the APN. This wild card indicates that the user may select an APN that is not stored in the HLR. The use of the wild card is described in annex A.

3GPP TSG-SA meeting #8 *Document* ***S2-99951***
Bonn, 13-17 September 1999

3G CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060 **CR** **014r2** Current Version:

3G specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by 3G support team*

For submision to TSG SA#5 for approval [X] for information [ ] *(only one box should be marked with an X)*
list TSG meeting no. here ↑

Form: 3G CR cover sheet, version 1.0 *The latest version of this form is available from:* ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/3GCRF-xx.rtf

Proposed change affects: USIM [ ] ME [X] UTRAN [X] Core Network [X]
(at least one should be marked with an X)

Source: Nokia **Date:** 10/09/99

Subject: Mobile terminated packet transfer to UE in PMM-Idle state – Revised version

3G Work item:

Category:
(only one category shall be marked with an X)

F	Correction	
A	Corresponds to a correction in a 2G specification	
B	Addition of feature	X
C	Functional modification of feature	
D	Editorial modification	

Reason for change: The procedure is used to establish a secure connection between UE and SGSN. The procedure is used when the network needs to send a downlink ciphered packet (e. g. MT SMS or user data) to an PMM-Idle UE. As ciphering is located in UTRAN, SGSN shall first send security keys to UTRAN to enable the secure downlink transfer.

The same procedure should be used by the network to request a UE PMM-Idle and SM-Active to re-establish the radio access bearer prior to downlink data transmission.

Clauses affected: A new section is proposed in MM procedure chapter

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
Other 2G core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

help.doc

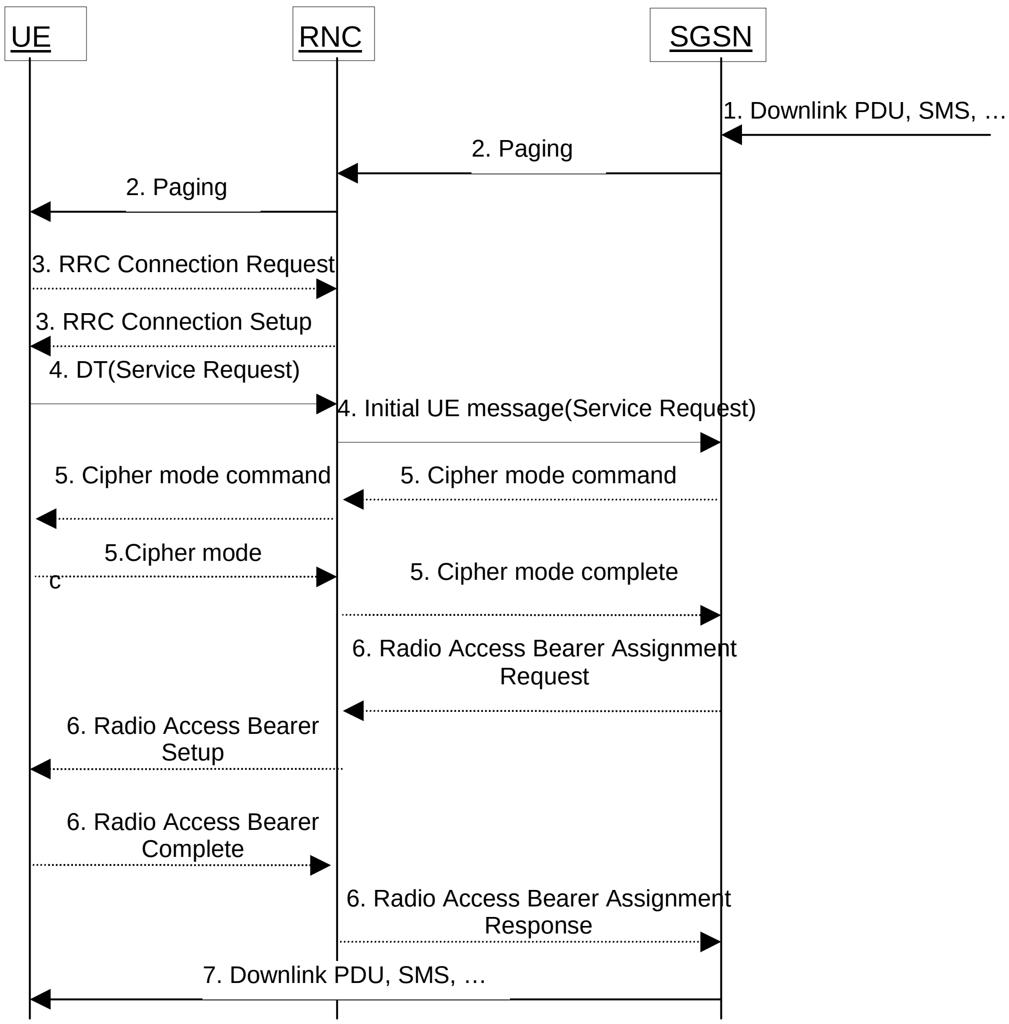
<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

6.4.1 State Transitions and Functions for UMTS

6.4.1.x Service Request Procedure

6.4.1.x.y Mobile Terminated Packet Transfer

When SGSN receives a downlink packet (e. g. Request PDP Context Activation, MT SMS, user data) for a PMM-Idle UE, SGSN sends a paging request to UTRAN. The paging request triggers the Service Request procedure in the UE.



1. The SGSN receives a downlink packet for a PMM-idle UE.
2. The SGSN sends Paging (IMSI, PTMSI, RAI, Paging Cause) to the RNC. The RNC pages the UE by sending Paging (PTMSI / IMSI, Paging Cause).
3. The UE establishes an RRC connection if none exists for CS traffic.
4. The UE sends Service Request (PTMSI, PTMSI Signature, RAI, CKSN, Service Type) which is carried over radio in RRC Direct Transfer message~~to the SGSN~~. Service Request message is carried over Iu in the RANAP Initial UE message. At this point, the SGSN may perform the authentication procedure. The message

requests setting up all radio access bearers for the UE and to perform the cipher mode procedure.

5. The SGSN may perform the cipher mode procedure.

6. If resources for the PDP contexts are re-established, the SGSN sends Radio Access Bearer Assignment Request (NSAPI(s), Tunnel Identity(s), QoS Profile(s), SGSN IP Address(es)) to the RNC. The RNC sends Radio Access Bearer Setup (RAB Identity, NSAPI) to the UE. The UE responses by sending Radio Access Bearer Complete to the RNC. RNC sends Radio Access Bearer Assingment Response (NSAPI(s), Tunnel Identity(s), QoS Profile(s), RNC IP Address(es)) to the SGSN to indicate that GTP tunnels are established on the Iu-interface and radio access bearers are setup between the RNC and the UE.

7. The SGSN sends the downlink packet.

3GPP TSG-SA WG2 meeting #8 *Document* ***S2-99991***

Bonn, Germany, 13-17 September 1999

3G CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	**CR**	**028**	Current Version:	3.0.0
3G specification number ↑		*↑ CR number as allocated by 3G support team*		

For submission to TSG	SA#5	for approval	X	*(only one box should*
list TSG meeting no. here ↑		For information		*be marked with an X)*

Form: 3G CR cover sheet, version 1.0 *The latest version of this form is available from:* ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/3GCRF-xx.rtf

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	USIM		ME	X	UTRAN		Core Network	X

Source: NTT COMMUNICATIONWARE **Date:** 17/09/1999

Subject: Modification of the definition and the usage of network operation mode

3G Work item:

Category:

(only one category Shall be marked With an X)

F	Correction	
A	Corresponds to a correction in a 2G specification	
B	Addition of feature	X
C	Functional modification of feature	
D	Editorial modification	

Reason for change:

In GSM/GPRS, network operation mode is used for the indication of paging channel which is used for sending paging message by network and is used for monitoring by MT, and for indication of network configuration which is used for initiating combined procedures by MT.

The network operation mode is also useful for the indicator of network configuration whether MT can initiate combine procedures or not in UMTS, while that is unnecessary for the indication of paging channel such as GSM/GPRS because the paging channel is related to RRC state in UMTS.

S2-99949 proposes that the definition of network operation mode described should be modified for UMTS based on above reasons, and that is agreed.

Therefore this CR proposes the addition of the new section "network operation mode for UMTS" and the modification of the definition for GPRS.

Clauses affected: 6.3.3.1

Other specs Affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
Other 2G core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:	

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

6.3.3.1 Paging Co-ordination

The network may provide co-ordination of paging for circuit-switched and packet-switched services. Paging co-ordination means that the network sends paging messages for circuit-switched services on the same channel as used for packet-switched services, i.e., on the GPRS paging channel or on the GPRS traffic channel, and the MS needs only to monitor that channel. Three network operation modes are defined:

- Network operation mode I: the network sends a CS paging message for a GPRS-attached MS, either on the same channel as the GPRS paging channel (i.e., the packet paging channel or the CCCH paging channel), or on a GPRS traffic channel. This means that the MS needs only to monitor one paging channel, and that it receives CS paging messages on the packet data channel when it has been assigned a packet data channel.

- Network operation mode II: the network sends a CS paging message for a GPRS-attached MS on the CCCH paging channel, and this channel is also used for GPRS paging. This means that the MS needs only to monitor the CCCH paging channel, but that CS paging continues on this paging channel even if the MS has been assigned a packet data channel.

- Network operation mode III: the network sends a CS paging message for a GPRS-attached MS on the CCCH paging channel, and sends a GPRS paging message on either the packet paging channel (if allocated in the cell) or on the CCCH paging channel. This means that an MS that wants to receive pages for both circuit-switched and packet-switched services shall monitor both paging channels if the packet paging channel is allocated in the cell. No paging co-ordination is performed by the network.

Table 1: Network Operation Modes for GPRS

Mode	Circuit Paging Channel	GPRS Paging Channel	Paging co-ordination
I	Packet Paging Channel	Packet Paging Channel	Yes
	CCCH Paging Channel	CCCH Paging Channel	
	Packet Data Channel	Not Applicable	
II	CCCH Paging Channel	CCCH Paging Channel	No
III	CCCH Paging Channel	Packet Paging Channel	No
	CCCH Paging Channel	CCCH Paging Channel	

When the Gs interface is present, all MSC-originated paging of GPRS-attached MSs shall go via the SGSN, thus allowing network co-ordination of paging. Paging co-ordination shall be made by the SGSN based on the IMSI, and is provided independently of whether the MS is in STANDBY or in READY state. The network operates in mode I.

When the Gs interface is not present, all MSC-originated paging of GPRS-attached MSs shall go via the A interface, and co-ordination of paging cannot be performed. The network shall then either:

- operate in mode II, meaning that the packet common control channel shall not be allocated in the cell; or

- operate in mode III, meaning that the packet common control channel shall be used for GPRS paging when the packet paging channel is allocated in the cell.

The network operation mode (mode I, II, or III) shall be indicated as system information to MSs. For proper operation, the mode of operation should be the same in each cell of a routeing area.

Based on the mode of operation provided by the network, the MS can then choose, according to its capabilities, whether it can attach to GPRS services, to non-GPRS services, or to both.

X.X.X.X Network operation mode for UMTS

The network operation mode (mode I or II) is used for the indicator of the network configuration whether the network supports Gs interface or not. When the Gs interface is present, MT can initiate combine procedures.

Table x: Network Operation Modes for UMTS

Mode	Network configuration	Combined procedure by MT
I	Gs interface is present	Yes
II	Gs interface isn't present	No

The network operation mode (mode I or II) shall be indicated as system information to MSs. For proper operation, the mode of operation should be the same in each cell of a routeing area.

Based on the mode of operation provided by the network, the MS can then choose, according to its capabilities, whether it can attach to CS domain services, to PS domain services, or to both. Furthermore, based on the mode of operation, the MS can choose whether it can initiate combine update procedure or separate update procedure, according to its capability.

3GPP TSG-SA WG2 meeting #8 | ***Document*** ***S2-99A01***

Bonn, Germany, 13-17 September 1999

3G CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	**CR**	**027 r1**	Current Version:	3.0.0

3G specification number ↑   *↑ CR number as allocated by 3G support team*

For submission to TSG	SA#5	for approval	X	*(only one box should*
list TSG meeting no. here ↑		For information		*be marked with an X)*

Form: 3G CR cover sheet, version 1.0   *The latest version of this form is available from:* ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/3GCRF-xx.rtf

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	USIM		ME	X	UTRAN	X	Core Network	X

Source: NTT COMMUNICATIONWARE   **Date:** 17/09/1999

Subject: Addition of Paging Co-ordination for UMTS

3G Work item:

Category: *(only one category Shall be marked With an X)*

F	Correction	
A	Corresponds to a correction in a 2G specification	
B	Addition of feature	X
C	Functional modification of feature	
D	Editorial modification	

Reason for change:

In GSM/GPRS, the network may provide co-ordination of paging for circuit-switched and packet-switched services. Paging co-ordination means that the network sends paging messages for circuit-switched services on the same channel as used for packet-switched services, i.e., on the GPRS paging channel or on the GPRS traffic channel, and the MS needs only to monitor that channel. However, in UMTS, paging co-ordination may be done within the UTRAN. If RRC connection is idle, the paging message is sent over PCH and if RRC connection is connected, it is considered that the paging message is sent over DCCH

S2-99949 proposes that the description of paging co-ordination in 23.060 section 6.3.3.1 should be modified for UMTS based on 23.121, and this is agreed.

Therefore this CR proposes the addition of the new section "8.4.x paging co-ordination for UMTS" and the modification of the section described paging co-ordination for GPRS

Clauses affected: 6.3.3, 8.4

Other specs Affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
Other 2G core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:	

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

6.3.3 CS Paging for GPRS

When an MS is both IMSI and GPRS-attached in a network that operates in mode I, then the MSC/VLR executes paging for circuit-switched services via the SGSN. If the MS is in STANDBY state, then it is paged in the routeing area and in the null routeing area (see subclause "Routeing Area Identity "). If the MS is in READY state, then it is paged in the cell. The paging procedure is supervised in the MSC by a paging timer. The SGSN converts the MSC paging message into an SGSN paging message.

The CS Paging procedure is illustrated in Figure 1. Each step is explained in the following list.

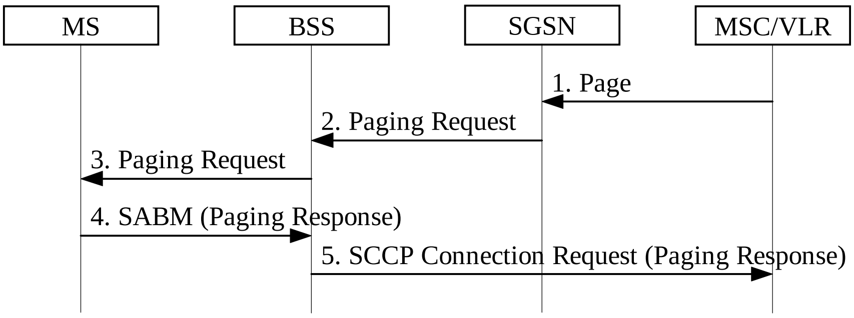


Figure 1: CS Paging Procedure

1) The SGSN receives a Page (IMSI, VLR TMSI, Channel Needed, Priority, Location Information) message from the MSC. Channel Needed is defined in GSM 08.08 [18] and indicates to the MS which type of CS channel is needed to be requested in the response. VLR TMSI and Channel Needed are optional parameters. Priority is the circuit-switched paging priority parameter as defined in GSM 08.08. The SGSN maps Priority to QoS.

2) The SGSN sends a BSSGP Paging Request (IMSI, TLLI, VLR TMSI, Area, Channel Needed, QoS) message to the BSS serving the MS. Area is derived from either the MS's MM context in the SGSN or, if no such information is available, from the Location Information received from the MSC/VLR. Area indicates a single cell for a READY state MS or a routeing area for a STANDBY state MS. VLR TMSI and Channel Needed are included if received from the MSC. If Channel Needed was not received from the MSC, then a default Channel Needed parameter indicating circuit-switched paging is included by the SGSN. QoS indicates the priority of this Paging Request relative to other Paging Request messages buffered in the BSS. If the location area where the MS was last known to be located has an associated null routeing area, then the SGSN shall send an additional BSSGP Paging Request message to each BSS serving this null RA.

3) The BSS translates the incoming BSSGP Paging Request message into one radio Paging Request message per cell. If a dedicated radio resource is assigned to the MS in a cell, then the BSS transmits one Paging Request (VLR TMSI or IMSI, Channel Needed) message on this radio resource, without stopping possibly ongoing data transfers for the MS. Otherwise, the BSS pages the MS with one Paging Request (VLR TMSI or IMSI, Channel Needed) message on the appropriate paging channel in each addressed cell. This is described in GSM 03.64.

4) Upon receipt of a Paging Request message for a circuit-switched service the MS may accept to respond to this request and shall then follow the CS procedures for paging response (random access, immediate assignment, and paging response) as specified in GSM 04.08 [13].

5) When received at the BSS, the Paging Response message is sent to the MSC which shall then stop the paging response timer.

6.3.3.1 Paging Co-ordination for GPRS

The network may provide co-ordination of paging for circuit-switched and packet-switched services. Paging co-ordination means that the network sends paging messages for circuit-switched services on the same channel as used for packet-switched services, i.e., on the GPRS paging channel or on the GPRS traffic channel, and the MS needs only to monitor that channel. Three network operation modes are defined:

- Network operation mode I: the network sends a CS paging message for a GPRS-attached MS, either on the same channel as the GPRS paging channel (i.e., the packet paging channel or the CCCH paging channel), or on a GPRS traffic channel. This means that the MS needs only to monitor one paging channel, and that it receives CS paging messages on the packet data channel when it has been assigned a packet data channel.

- Network operation mode II: the network sends a CS paging message for a GPRS-attached MS on the CCCH paging channel, and this channel is also used for GPRS paging. This means that the MS needs only to monitor the CCCH paging channel, but that CS paging continues on this paging channel even if the MS has been assigned a packet data channel.

- Network operation mode III: the network sends a CS paging message for a GPRS-attached MS on the CCCH paging channel, and sends a GPRS paging message on either the packet paging channel (if allocated in the cell) or on the CCCH paging channel. This means that an MS that wants to receive pages for both circuit-switched and packet-switched services shall monitor both paging channels if the packet paging channel is allocated in the cell. No paging co-ordination is performed by the network.

Table 1: Network Operation Modes

Mode	Circuit Paging Channel	GPRS Paging Channel	Paging co-ordination
I	Packet Paging Channel	Packet Paging Channel	Yes
	CCCH Paging Channel	CCCH Paging Channel	
	Packet Data Channel	Not Applicable	
II	CCCH Paging Channel	CCCH Paging Channel	No
III	CCCH Paging Channel	Packet Paging Channel	No
	CCCH Paging Channel	CCCH Paging Channel	

When the Gs interface is present, all MSC-originated paging of GPRS-attached MSs shall go via the SGSN, thus allowing network co-ordination of paging. Paging co-ordination shall be made by the SGSN based on the IMSI, and is provided independently of whether the MS is in STANDBY or in READY state. The network operates in mode I.

When the Gs interface is not present, all MSC-originated paging of GPRS-attached MSs shall go via the A interface, and co-ordination of paging cannot be performed. The network shall then either:

- operate in mode II, meaning that the packet common control channel shall not be allocated in the cell; or

- operate in mode III, meaning that the packet common control channel shall be used for GPRS paging when the packet paging channel is allocated in the cell.

The network operation mode (mode I, II, or III) shall be indicated as system information to MSs. For proper operation, the mode of operation should be the same in each cell of a routeing area.

Based on the mode of operation provided by the network, the MS can then choose, according to its capabilities, whether it can attach to GPRS services, to non-GPRS services, or to both.

8.4.X Paging Co-ordination for UMTS

A CN node requests paging only for UE in CS-IDLE state or PS IDLE state. In the separate CN architecture, paging from a CN node is done independent of the service state of the UE in the other CN service domain.

In this alternative with page co-ordination in UTRAN, the UE does not need to listen to the PCH (Page Channel) in RRC connected mode. (At least not when UE is allocated a dedicated channel.)

At each page request received from a CN node, the RNC controls whether the UE has an established RRC connection or not. For this, the context that is build up in the SRNC for UE in RRC connected mode must contain the IMSI, i.e. the UE identity common for the two CN domains.

If no context is found for the UE, “normal PCH paging” is performed. This implies transfer on the Paging channel of a page message indicating the UE paging identity received from the CN and a CN service domain type indication.

If a context is found, a “CN paging message” is transferred using the existing RRC connection. This message indicates then the UE paging identity received from the CN and a CN service domain type indication.

Note: The RNC might use another identity e.g. TMSI, P-TMSI, or other radio related identity, to page the mobile.

3GPP TSG-SA WG2
Helsinki, Finland
5 – 7 October 1999

Tdoc S2G99009

3G CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060 **CR** **016** Current Version: 3.0.0

3G specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by 3G support team*

For submision to TSG SA#5 for approval **X** *(only one box should be marked with an X)*
list TSG meeting no. here ↑ for information

Form: 3G CR cover sheet, version 1.0 *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/3GCRF-xx.rtf*

Proposed change affects: USIM [ ] ME [ ] UTRAN [ ] Core Network [X]
(at least one should be marked with an X)

Source: Alcatel **Date:** 03/10/1999

Subject: PDP Context Deactivation during an activation

3G Work item:

Category:
(only one category shall be marked with an X)

F	Correction	X
A	Corresponds to a correction in a 2G specification	
B	Addition of feature	
C	Functional modification of feature	
D	Editorial modification	

Reason for change:

The goal of this CR is to clarify what the Network behaviour should be when it receives a PDP Context Deactivation Request for a PDP Context for which an activation is in progress.

A MS may for example, decide to deactivate the PDP Context if it does not receive a response from the Network after several attempts of a PDP Context Activation request. In this case, the Network shall stop the PDP Context Activation and shall process the PDP Context Deactivation procedure.

As the MS is allowed to re-initiate a new PDP Context Activation with the same TI, the Network shall not respond to the first PDP Context Activation, otherwise the MS may consider this response to be the response to its new Activation request.

Clauses affected: 9.2.4.1

Other specs Affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
Other 2G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

9.2.4.1 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure

The PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure is illustrated in Figure 1. Each step is explained in the following list.

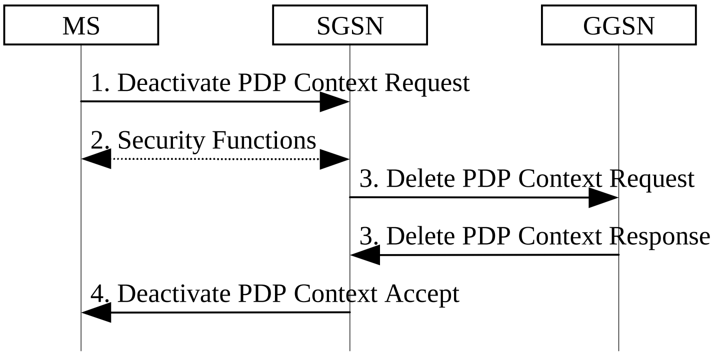


Figure 1: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure

1) The MS sends a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI) message to the SGSN.

2) Security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) The SGSN sends a Delete PDP Context Request (TID) message to the GGSN. The GGSN removes the PDP context and returns a Delete PDP Context Response (TID) message to the SGSN. If the MS was using a dynamic PDP address, then the GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete PDP Context messages are sent over the GPRS backbone network.

4) The SGSN returns a Deactivate PDP Context Accept (TI) message to the MS.

At GPRS detach, all PDP contexts for the MS are implicitly deactivated.

If the SGSN receives a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI) message for a PDP context that is currently being activated, then the SGSN shall stop the PDP Context Activation procedure without responding to the MS, and continue with the PDP Context Deactivation initiated by MS procedure.

3GPP TSG SA2 23.060 Drafting | ***Document*** ***S2G99010***

Helsinki, Finland, 5-7 October 1999

3G CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	**CR**	**001**	Current Version: 3.0.0

3G specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by 3G support team*

For submision to TSG	SA#	for approval	**X**	*(only one box should*
list TSG meeting no. here ↑		for information		*be marked with an X)*

Form: 3G CR cover sheet, version 1.0 The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/3GCRF-xx.rtf

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	USIM		ME	**X**	UTRAN		Core Network **X**

Source:	TSG CN1	**Date:**	22 August, 1999
Subject:	APN and GGSN selection SDL diagrams		
3G Work item:	GPRS		

Category:	F	Correction	**X**
	A	Corresponds to a correction in a 2G specification	
(only one category	B	Addition of feature	
shall be marked	C	Functional modification of feature	
with an X)	D	Editorial modification	

Reason for change:	CN1 / SMG3 WPA has agreed in principle that the 03.60 Annex A APN selection rules pseudo code shall be converted to SDL diagrams as proposed in N1-99237. This CR proposes the corresponding reformulation of Annex A.
Clauses affected:	Annex A

Other specs affected:	Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
	Other 2G core specifications		→ List of CRs:	03.60 A166 and A167
	MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
	BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
	O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:	

Other comments:	

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

Annex A (normative): APN and GGSN Selection ~~Decision Tree~~

This annex contains the rules applied upon PDP context activation to determine the APN and the corresponding GGSN.

A.1 Definitions

The SGSN knows from the subscription data the parameters (S for Subscribed): PDP type (S), PDP address (S), APN (S), and VPLMN address allowed.

The SGSN may know from configuration the default APN supporting a given PDP type. This APN is called APN (SGSN) and does not include an APN Operator Identifier.

The SGSN knows the parameters requested by the MS (R for Requested): PDP type (R), PDP address (R), and APN (R). APN (R) is the APN Network Identifier requested by the MS~~user~~.

In case of "an APN chosen by the SGSN" the activated PDP context is always linked with a dynamic PDP address.

An MS may have multiple subscription records for the same PDP type and the same PDP address, but with different APNs.

An MS may have one or two subscription records with the same PDP type and the same APN: one with a static PDP address, one with a dynamic PDP address.

When the MS is in its HPLMN, if the MS requests an APN that does not correspond to any GGSN of its HPLMN, the request shall be rejected by SGSN. When the MS is in a VPLMN, if the MS requests an APN that does not correspond to any GGSN of its HPLMN nor of this VPLMN, the request shall be rejected by SGSN.

If APN (S) = wild card (see GSM 03.03), it means either:

- that a default APN (a default PDN) has to be chosen by the SGSN (APN (SGSN)) if no APN (R) has been provided; or
- that a PDP context with dynamic PDP address may be activated towards any APN requested by the MS.

~~A.2 APN (R)~~

In order to derive APN (R) from the APN sent by the MS, the SGSN shall check if the APN sent by the user ends with ".gprs". If no~~t~~, then APN (R) is equal to APN sent by the MS. If yes, then APN (R) is the APN sent by the MS without the three last labels.

A.2~~3~~ ~~APN~~ Selection Rules

The SGSN shall select the APN to be used to derive the GGSN address, and set the selection mode parameter according to the ~~following~~ rules in the SDL diagrams in this subclause. The following definitons apply to the SDL diagrams:

AddrMode: Addressing Mode.

APN-OI: APN Operator Identifier.

HPLMN-OI: HPLMN APN Operator Identifier.

Number <condition>: determines the PDP context subscription records that satisfy the given condition.

PDPaddr: PDP address.

SelMode := ChosenBySGSN: Network-provided APN, subscription not verified.

SelMode := SentByMS: MS-provided APN, subscription not verified.

SelMode := Subscribed: MS or Network-provided APN, subscription verified.

SelMode: Selection Mode.

VPLMN-OI: VPLMN APN Operator Identifier.

+: concatenation operation.

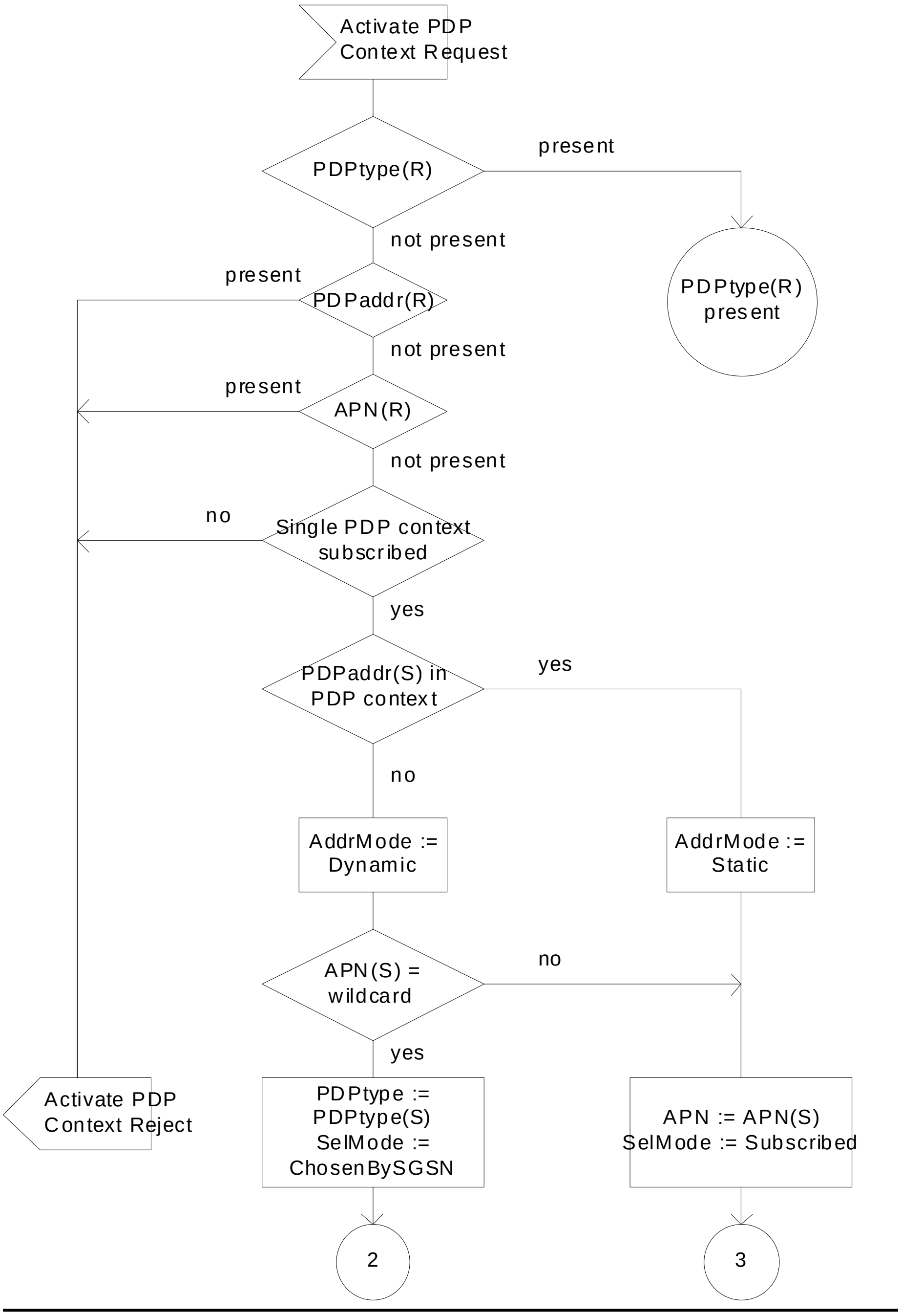


Figure A.1: SDL Diagram 1

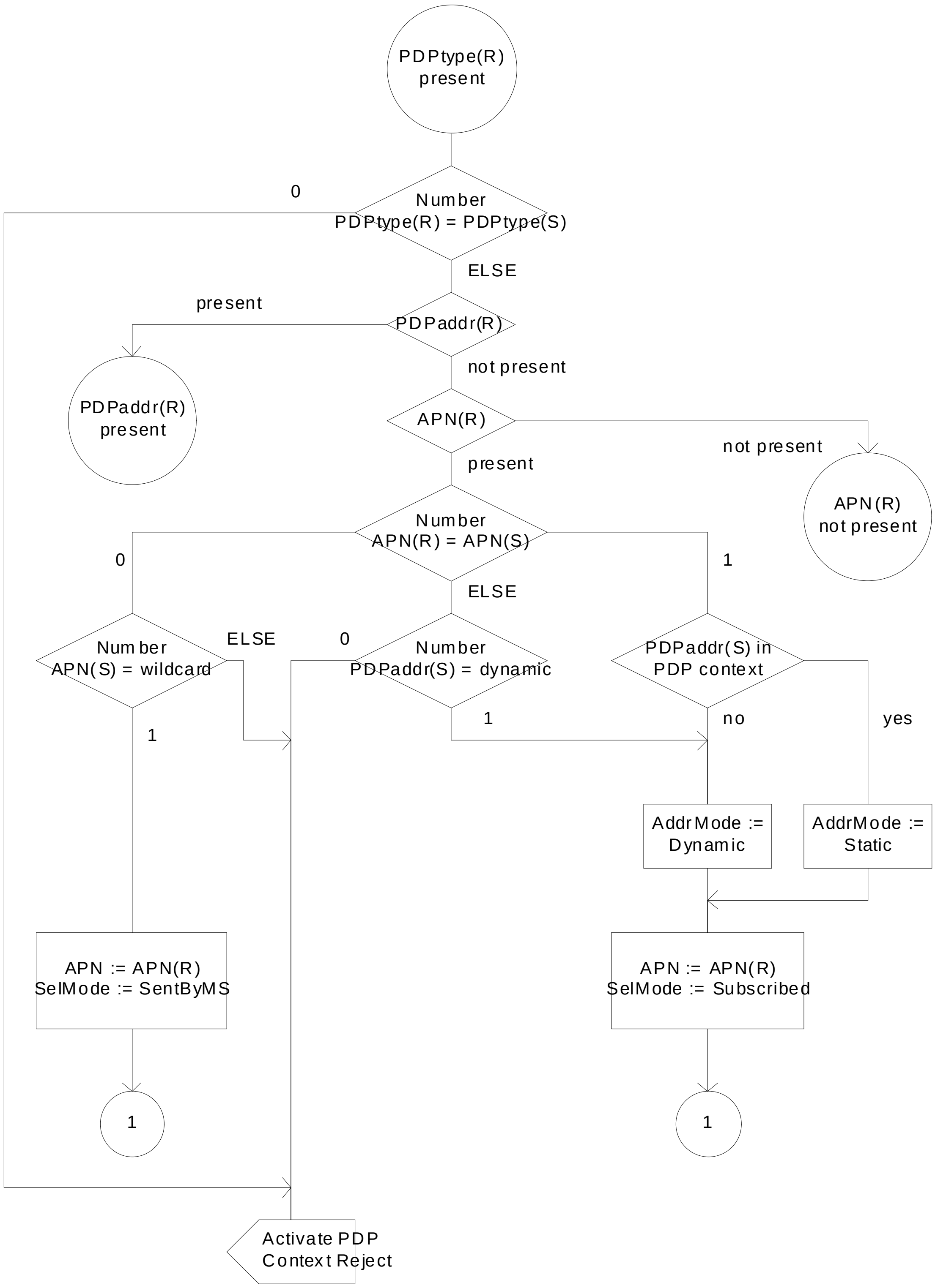


Figure A.2: SDL Diagram 2

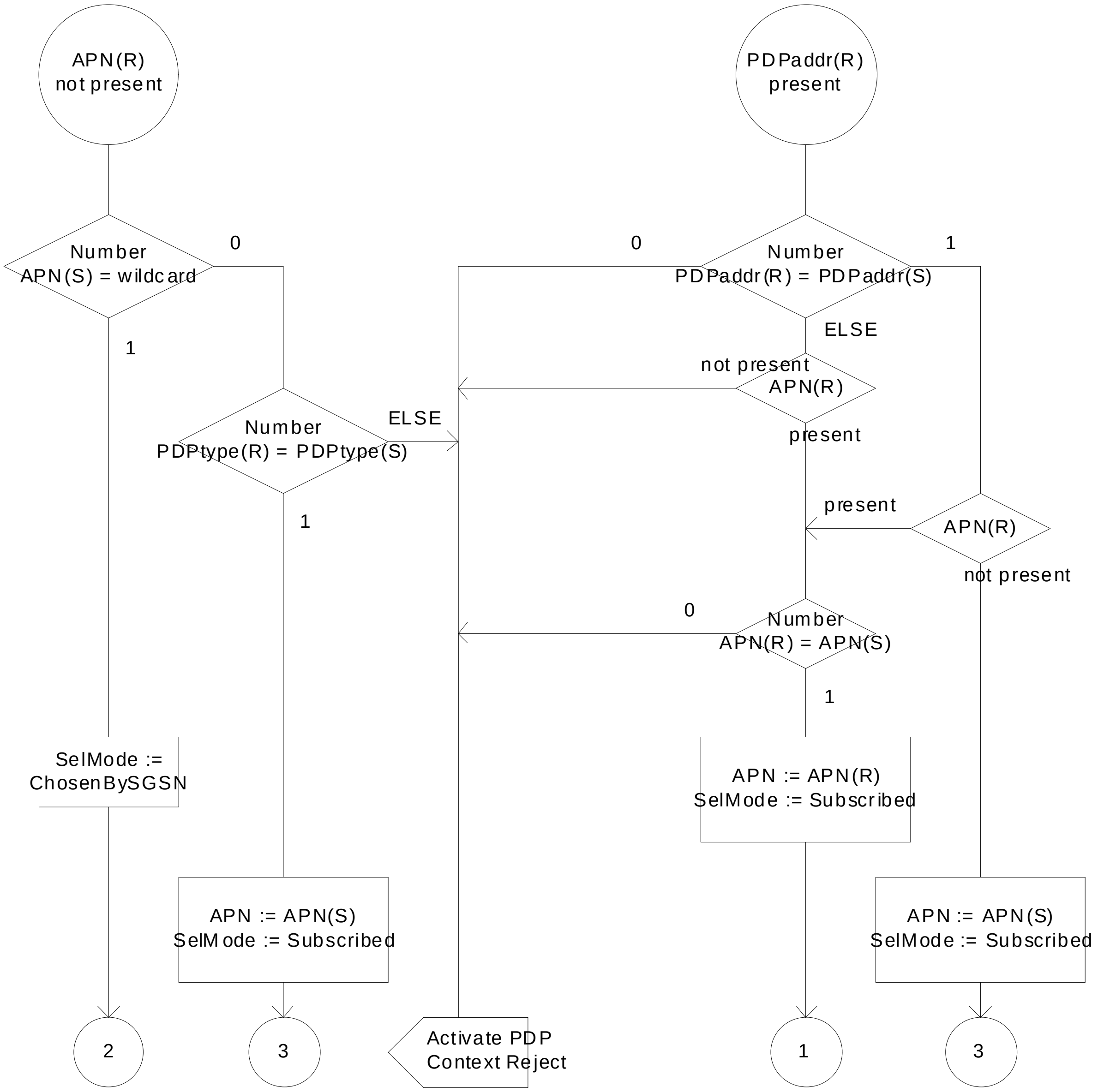


Figure A.3: SDL Diagram 3

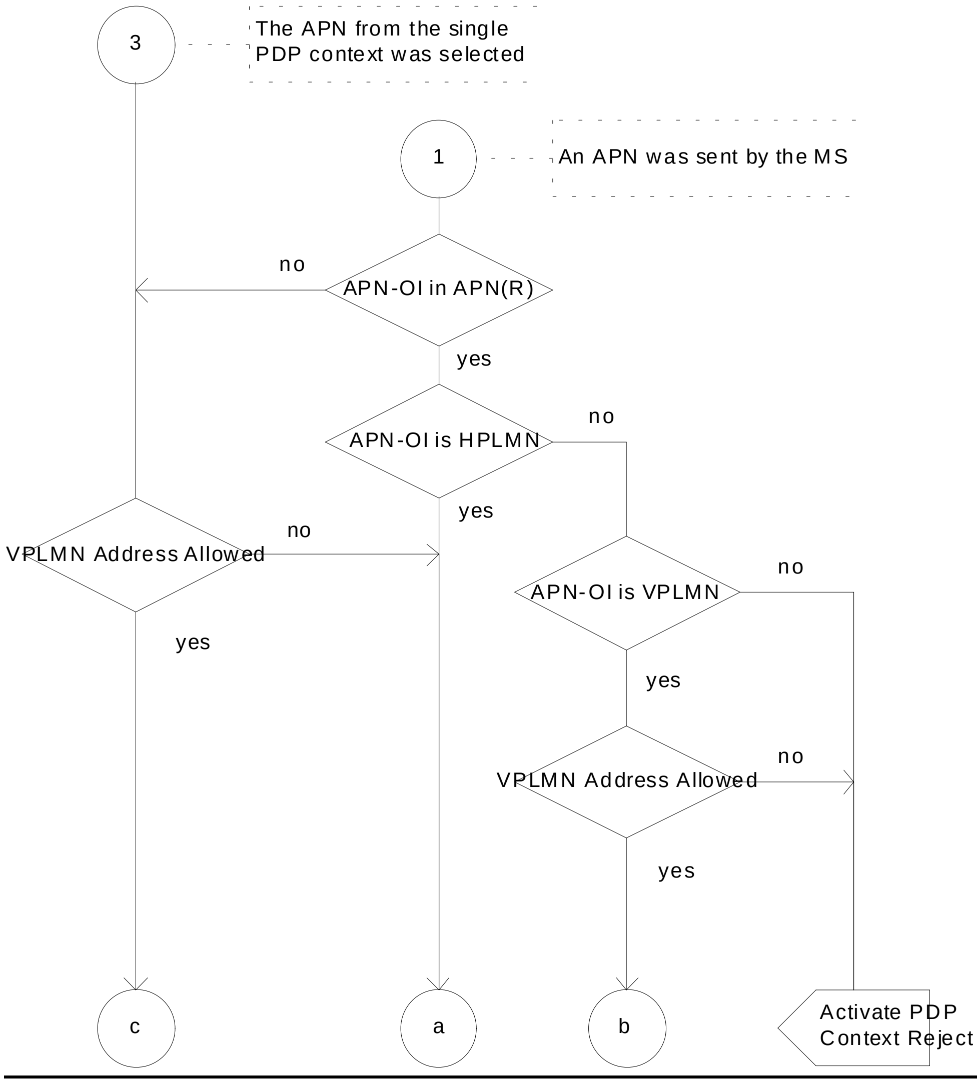


Figure A.4: SDL Diagram 4

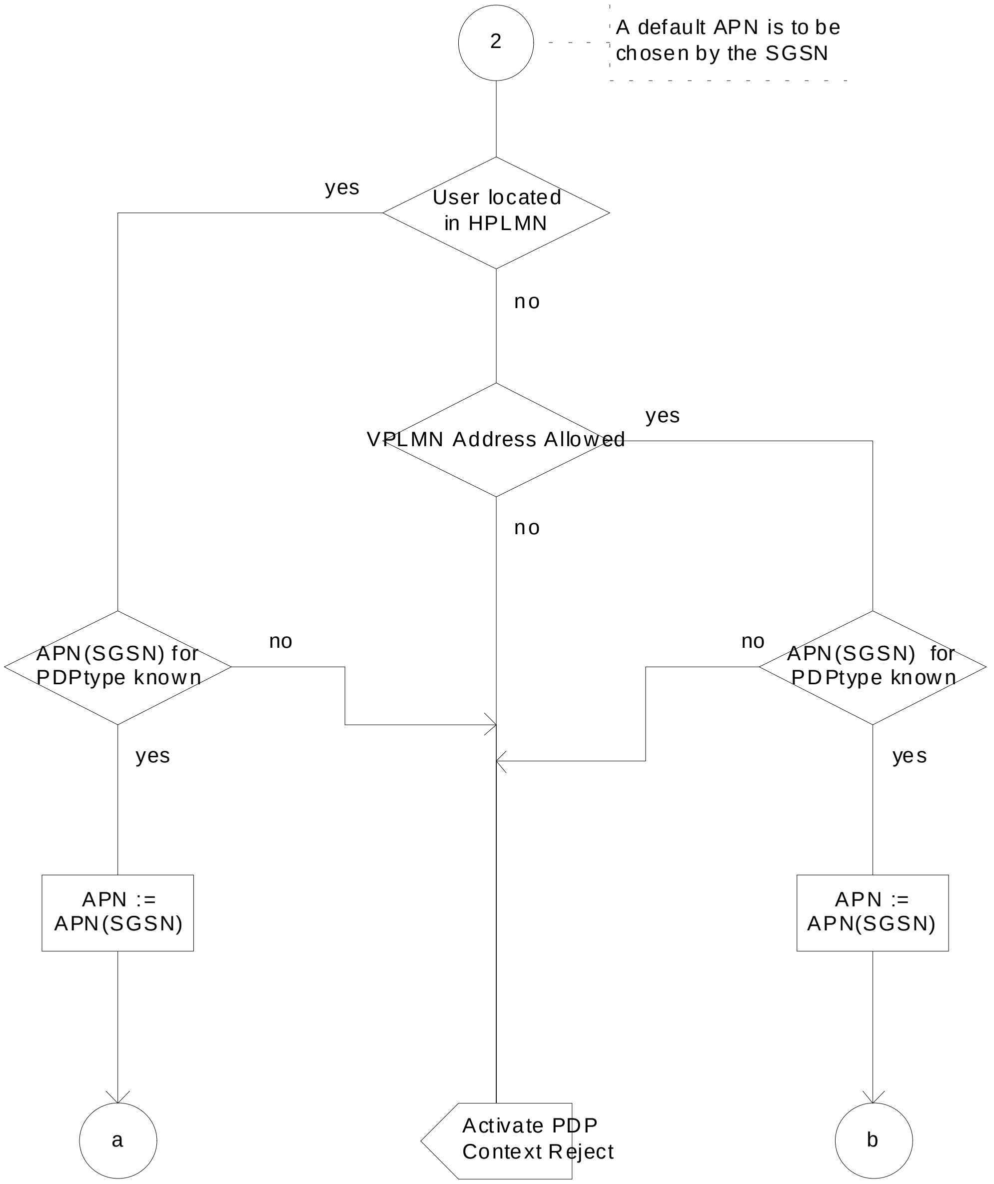


Figure A.5: SDL Diagram 5

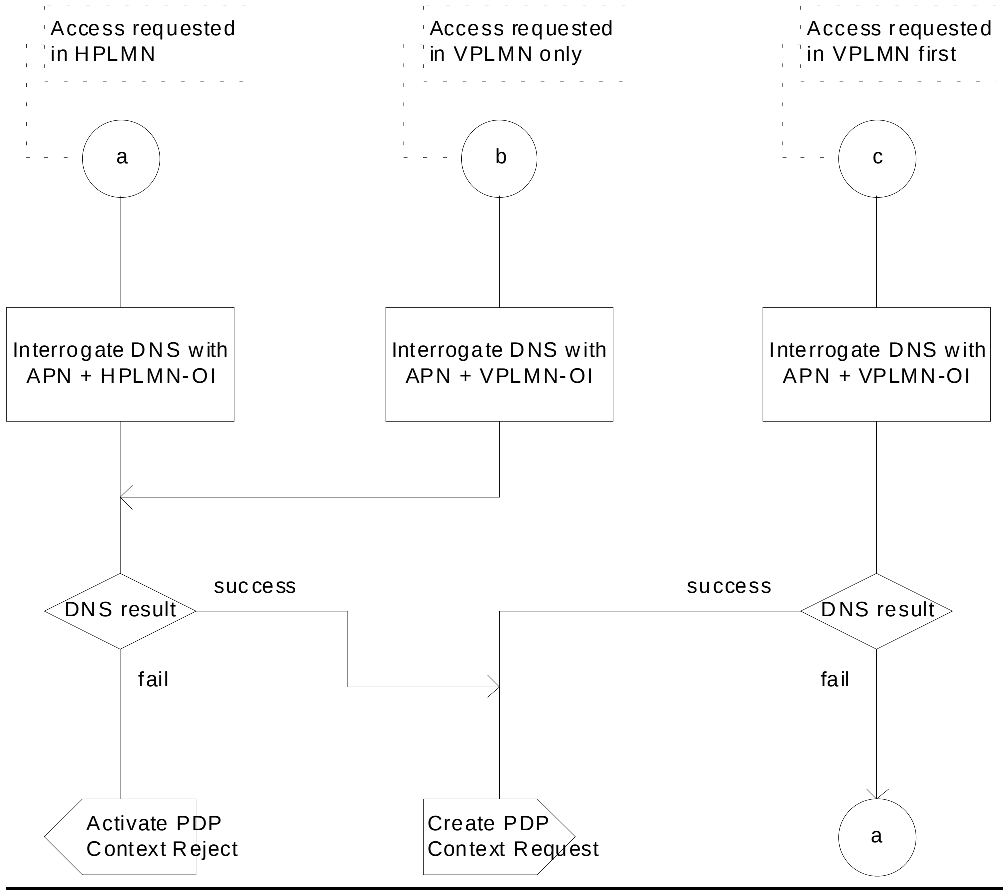


Figure A.6: SDL Diagram 6

~~If no PDP type, no PDP address and no APN is sent by the MS, SGSN checks if there is a single PDP context subscription record subscribed for this subscriber~~

~~If yes, SGSN checks if a PDP address is present in the single PDP context subscription record~~

~~If yes, SGSN considers that MS requested a static PDP address, SGSN selects APN (S) from this PDP context subscription record and sets selection mode parameter to "MS or Network-provided APN, subscription verified", go to case 3~~

~~If no, SGSN considers that MS requested a dynamic PDP address, and checks if APN (S) is a wild card~~

~~If no, SGSN selects APN (S) and sets selection mode parameter to "MS or Network-provided APN, subscription verified", go to case 3~~

~~If yes, SGSN selects subscribed PDP type and sets selection mode parameter to "Network-provided APN, subscription not verified", go to case 2~~

~~If no, SGSN rejects Activate PDP Context Request~~

~~If no PDP type, but either a PDP address, or an APN, or both is sent by MS, SGSN rejects Activate PDP Context Request~~

~~If PDP type (R) is sent by user, SGSN looks for PDP context subscription records where PDP type (S) = PDP type (R)~~

~~If none exists, SGSN rejects Activate PDP Context Request~~

~~If at least one exists, SGSN checks if PDP address is sent by the MS~~

~~If a PDP address is sent, SGSN selects the PDP context subscription records where PDP address (S) = PDP address (R)~~

~~If none exists, SGSN rejects Activate PDP Context Request~~

~~If only one record where PDP address (S) = PDP address (R) exists, SGSN checks if APN (R) is empty~~

~~If an APN (R) is not empty, check if APN (S) = APN (R)~~

~~If yes, SGSN selects APN (R) and sets selection mode para meter to "MS or Network-provided APN, subscription verified", go to case 1~~

~~If no, SGSN rejects Activate PDP Context Request~~

~~If APN (R) is empty, SGSN selects APN (S) and sets selection mode parameter to "MS or Network-provided APN, subscription verified", go to case 3~~

~~If more than one subscription record where PDP address (S) = PDP address (R) exists~~

~~If an APN (R) is not empty, SGSN selects the subscription record where APN (S) = APN (R)~~

~~If none exists, SGSN rejects Activate PDP Context Request~~

~~If one exists, SGSN selects APN (R) and sets selection mode parameter to "MS or Network-provided APN, subscription verified", go to case 1~~

~~If APN (R) is empty, SGSN rejects Activate PDP Context Request~~

~~If no PDP address is sent, SGSN checks APN (R)~~

~~If APN (R) not empty, SGSN checks if PDP context subscription record where APN (S) = APN (R) exists~~

~~If none exists, SGSN checks if HLR has one PDP context subscription record with APN (S) = wild card~~

~~If yes, SGSN selects this PDP context subscription record, selects APN (R), and sets selection mode parameter to "MS-provided APN, subscription not verified", go to case 1~~

~~If no, SGSN rejects Activate PDP Context Request~~

~~If only one subscription record where APN (S) = APN (R) exists, SGSN selects this PDP context subscription record, selects APN (S), and sets selection mode parameter to "MS or Network-provided APN, subscription verified", and checks if a PDP address is present in this PDP context subscription record~~

~~If a PDP address is present, SGSN considers that MS requested a static PDP address, go to case 1~~

~~If no PDP address is present, SGSN considers that MS requested a dynamic PDP address, go to case 1~~

~~If more than one subscription record where APN (S) = APN (R) exists, SGSN selects the PDP context subscription that allows the dynamic address~~

~~If one exists, SGSN selects APN (S) and sets selection mode parameter to "MS or Network-provided APN, subscription verified", go to case 1~~

~~If none exists, SGSN rejects the Activate PDP Context Request~~

~~If APN (R) empty, check if HLR has one PDP context subscription record with APN (S) = wild card~~

~~If yes, SGSN sets selection mode parameter to "Network-provided APN, subscription not verified", go to case 2~~

~~If no, SGSN checks if there is a single PDP context subscription record subscribed for this PDP type~~

~~If yes, SGSN selects APN (S) from this PDP context subscription record and sets selection mode parameter to "MS or Network-provided APN, subscription verified", go to case 3~~

~~If no, SGSN rejects Activate PDP Context Request~~

~~Case 1: (an APN was sent by the MS)~~

~~SGSN checks if the APN sent by MS included an APN Operator Identifier~~

~~If yes, SGSN checks if APN Operator Identifier is in HPLMN~~

~~If yes, go to case a~~

~~If no, SGSN checks if APN Operator Identifier is in VPLMN~~

~~If yes, SGSN checks if VPLMN address allowed for this selected PDP context subscription record~~

~~If yes, go to case b~~

~~If no, SGSN rejects Activate PDP Context Request~~

~~If no, SGSN rejects Activate PDP Context Request~~

~~If no, SGSN checks if VPLMN allowed for this selected PDP context subscription record~~

~~If yes, go to case c~~

~~If no, go to case a~~

~~Case 2: (a default APN is to be chosen by SGSN)~~

~~SGSN checks if user is currently located in HPLMN~~

~~If yes, SGSN checks if it knows an APN (SGSN) supporting this PDP type~~

~~If yes, SGSN selects APN (SGSN) and go to case a~~

~~If no, SGSN rejects Activate PDP Context Request~~

~~If no, check if VPLMN allowed for the wild card subscription record~~

~~If yes, SGSN checks if it knows an APN (SGSN) supporting this PDP type~~

~~If yes, SGSN selects APN (SGSN) and go to case b~~

~~If no, SGSN rejects Activate PDP Context Request~~

~~If no, SGSN rejects Activate PDP Context Request~~

~~Case 3: (the APN from the single PDP context was selected)~~

~~SGSN checks if VPLMN address allowed for this unique subscription records~~

~~If yes, go to case c~~

~~If no, go to case a~~

~~Case a: (access requested in HPLMN)~~

~~SGSN interrogates DNS server with selected APN with appended HPLMN APN Operator Identifier to interrogate DNS server~~

~~If interrogation fails, reject Activate PDP Context Request~~

~~If interrogation successful, SGSN sends Create PDP Context Request to GGSN~~

~~Case b: (access requested in VPLMN only)~~

~~SGSN interrogates DNS server with selected APN with appended VPLMN APN Operator Identifier to interrogate DNS server~~

~~If interrogation fails, reject Activate PDP Context Request~~

~~If interrogation successful, SGSN sends Create PDP Context Request to GGSN~~

~~Case c: (access requested in VPLMN first)~~

~~SGSN interrogates DNS server with selected APN with appended VPLMN APN Operator Identifier to interrogate DNS server~~

~~If interrogation fails, go to case a~~

~~If interrogation successful, SGSN sends Create PDP Context Request to GGSN.~~

3GPP TSG SA2 23.060 Drafting ***Document* S2G99011**

Helsinki, Finland, 5-7 October 1999

3G CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060 CR 003 Current Version: 3.0.0

3G specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by 3G support team*

For submision to TSG SA# — for approval [X] — for information [ ] *(only one box should be marked with an X)*

list TSG meeting no. here ↑

Form: 3G CR cover sheet, version 1.0 The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/3GCRF-xx.rtf

Proposed change affects: USIM [ ] ME [X] UTRAN [ ] Core Network [X]

(at least one should be marked with an X)

Source:	TSG CN1
Date:	22 August, 1999
Subject:	Modification information is not piggybacked
3G Work item:	GPRS

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	X
A	Corresponds to a correction in a 2G specification	
B	Addition of feature	
C	Functional modification of feature	
D	Editorial modification	

Reason for change: It is stated that modification information can be piggybacked on MM signalling messages. This possibility is not specified in stage 3, and should therefore be removed from stage 2.

Clauses affected: 9.2.3.

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:	
Other 2G core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:	03.60 A165 and A169
MS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:	
BSS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:	
O&M specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:	

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

9.2.3 Modification Procedures

An SGSN can decide, possibly triggered by the HLR as explained in subclause "Insert Subscriber Data Procedure", to modify parameters that were negotiated during an activation procedure for one or several PDP contexts. The following parameters can be modified:

- QoS Negotiated; and
- Radio Priority.

The SGSN can request the~~has several means to inform the MS of such a~~ modification of parameters by sending a~~:~~

~~- send a separate~~ Modify PDP Context Request message to the MS~~; or~~

~~- piggyback the modification information on a mobility management signalling exchange, e.g., routeing area update~~.

3G CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	**CR**	**015 rev.2**	Current Version:	3.0.0
3G specification number ↑		*↑ CR number as allocated by 3G support team*		

For submision to TSG	CN	for approval	X	*(only one box should*
list TSG meeting no. here ↑		for information		*be marked with an X)*

Form: 3G CR cover sheet, version 1.0 The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/3GCRF-xx.rtf

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*

USIM		ME	X	UTRAN		Core Network	X

Source: Siemens AG **Date:** 13.09.99

Subject: Clarification on multiplexing of several NSAPIS onto one LLC SAPI

3G Work item:

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	
A	Corresponds to a correction in a 2G specification	X
B	Addition of feature	
C	Functional modification of feature	
D	Editorial modification	

Reason for change:

The QoS-related limitations when NSAPIs share a SAPI are not clearly stated.
There is nothing stated about radio priority or further QoS parameters like peak throughput class or mean throughput class when multiplexing several NSAPIS onto one LLC SAPI.
This may lead to multiplexing of NSAPIS with e.g. radio priorities onto one LLC SAPI at the same time, thus mixing LLC acknowledged and unacknowledged mode, RLC acknowledged and unacknowledged mode etc.
As a result the LLE (at least in the MS) has to associate QoS parameters and a radio priority with each LLC frame. TS 04.64 (table 7) foresees QoS parameters and radio priority as parameters in the LL-DATA and LL-UNITDATA primitives, but when transmitting e.g. SABM commands or UA responses the LLE does not know which QoS parameters and radio priority to use, so default values which currently are not defined would have to be used.
Another problem occurs if, as a result of multiplexing NSAPIS with different QoS parameters, N-PDUS with different priorities have to be transmitted on one SAPI. In the MS the only criteria for establishing priorities to multiplex LLC SAPIS is the radio priority (peak throughput and reliability class are the only available QoS parameters in the MS LLC), but no fixed relation between delay class and radio priority is specified.
The implementation dependant multiplexing procedure may establish priorities in such a way that LLC PDUs of one LLE may not be transmitted in FIFO order any longer which is essential for the LLC protocol.
On the other hand PDUs with a high priority may be delayed by PDUs with a lower priority which are in the same LLE transmission queue.
A drawback of mixing LLC-PDUs with different RLC modes on one SAPI is that each change of RLC mode leads to releasing the existing TBF and establishing a new one in the RLC/MAC layer.
This CR proposes that multiplexing of further NSAPIS onto an LLC SAPI shall only be possible if the QoS parameters and radio priority used by that LLC SAPI (as a result of the first PDP context activation for that LLC SAPI) are equal to the subsequent NSAPIS.

Clauses affected: 12.3.2

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
Other 2G core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	

BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:	

<u>Other comments:</u>

12.3.2 Subfunctions

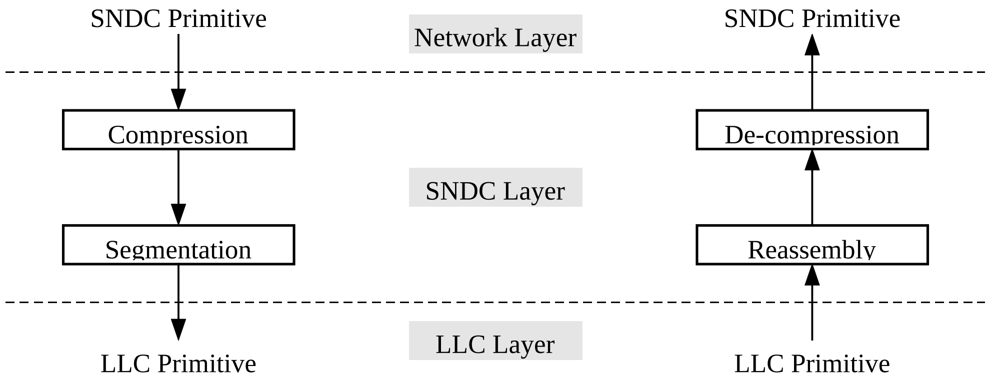


Figure 1: Sequential Invocation of SNDC Functionality

SNDCP performs the following subfunctions:

- Mapping of SNDC primitives received from the network layer into corresponding LLC primitives to be passed to the LLC layer, and vice versa.
- Multiplexing of N-PDUs from one or several NSAPIs onto one LLC SAPI. NSAPIs that are multiplexed onto the same SAPI shall use the same radio priority and QoS delay class and precedence class ~~if LLC operates in acknowledged mode~~.
- Compression of redundant protocol control information and user data. This may include e.g., TCP/IP header compression and V.42 bis [32] data compression. Compression may be performed independently for each QoS delay class and precedence class. If several network layers use the same QoS delay class and precedence class, then one common compressor may be used for these network layers. The relationship between NSAPIs, compressors, and SAPIs is defined in GSM 04.65. Compression parameters are negotiated between the MS and the SGSN. Compression is an optional SNDC function.
- Segmentation and reassembly. The output of the compression subfunctions are segmented to maximum-length LLC frames.

3GPP TSG-? meeting # **Document** ***S2G99016***

Helsinki,Finland, 05-07. 10. 1999

3G CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23060	**CR**	**32**	Current Version:	3.1.0 draft
3G specification number ↑		*↑ CR number as allocated by 3G support team*		

For submision to TSG		for approval	**X**	*(only one box should*
list TSG meeting no. here ↑		for information		*be marked with an X)*

Form: 3G CR cover sheet, version 1.0 *The latest version of this form is available from:* ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/3GCRF-xx.rtf

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	USIM		ME		UTRAN		Core Network	**X**

Source:	Siemens AG	**Date:**	5.10.1999
Subject:	changes in chapter 11 of 23.060		
3G Work item:			

Category:	F	Correction	
	A	Corresponds to a correction in a 2G specification	
(only one category	B	Addition of feature	**X**
shall be marked	C	Functional modification of feature	
with an X)	D	Editorial modification	

Reason for change:	Adaptation of 23.060 to UMTS
Clauses affected:	11

Other specs affected:	Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
	Other 2G core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
	MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
	BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
	O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:	

Other comments:	

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

11 Compatibility Issues

Non-GPRS MSs in GSM PLMNs that support GPRS shall, without changes, be able to continue operation.

GSM PLMNs that do not support GPRS shall, without changes, be able to continue interworking with GSM PLMNs that do support GPRS.

A GPRS ME shall be able to access GPRS services with GPRS-aware SIMs, and with SIMs that are not GPRS-aware.

A GPRS-aware SIM is able to store information in the elementary files EF_{KcGPRS} and $EF_{LOCIGPRS}$,as defined in GSM 11.11 [28].

The compatibility of SIMs and USIMs with GPRS/GSM or UMTS MEs is defined in 3GPP 22.102.

3GPP TSG-SA meeting ad-hoc meeting **_Document_** ***S2G99024***

Helsinki, 5-7 October 1999

3G CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060 **CR** **A040** Current Version: 3.1.0 Draft 2

3G specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by 3G support team*

For submision to TSG SA#5 for approval [X] for information [ ] *(only one box should be marked with an X)*

list TSG meeting no. here ↑

Form: 3G CR cover sheet, version 1.0 *The latest version of this form is available from:* ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/3GCRF-xx.rtf

Proposed change affects: USIM [ ] ME [X] UTRAN [X] Core Network [X]

(at least one should be marked with an X)

Source:	Nokia
Date:	24/09/99
Subject:	Handling of lost of coverage for UMTS
3G Work item:	

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	
A	Corresponds to a correction in a 2G specification	
B	Addition of feature	X
C	Functional modification of feature	
D	Editorial modification	

Reason for change: This procedure was not yet describe in 23.060. This CR describes how periodic RAU timer and periodic RAU procedure are handled. It covers the case of UMTS only network, GPRS only network and UMTS/GPRS network. It introduces the notion of packet domain coverage. It should be noted that this CR does not intend to describe how the cell selection (triggering the MS to be in packet coverage or not) is done.

Clauses affected: 6.3.3

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
Other 2G core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

6.3.3 Periodic RA Update Timer Function

The Periodic RA Update Timer function monitors the periodic RA update procedure in the MS. The length of the periodic RA update timer is sent in the Routeing Area Update Accept or Attach Accept message. The periodic RA update timer is unique within an RA. Upon expiry of the periodic RA update timer, the MS shall start a periodic routeing area update procedure.

Note: A MS is said to be in packet domain coverage if it can access to packet domain services. These services may be provided through GPRS or UMTS.

~~6.3.3.1 Loss of Coverage for GPRS~~

If the MS is in coverage but out of packet domain~~GPRS~~ coverage when the periodic RA update timer expires, then, if the MS is ~~IM~~CS~~I~~-attached to a network in network operation mode I, the periodic location update procedure (or other appropriate location update procedure) shall be started immediately. In addition, and irrespective of whether or not the MS was ~~IM~~CS~~I~~-attached, regardless of the network operation mode, the periodic RA update procedure (or other appropriate update procedure) shall be started as soon as the MS returns to packet domain~~GPRS~~ coverage.

If the MS is out of coverage when the periodic RA update timer expires then:

- if the MS is both ~~IM~~CS~~I~~ and ~~G~~P~~R~~S-attached and returns to coverage in a cell that supports packet domain services~~GPRS~~ in network operation mode I, then the combined RA / LA update procedure with ~~IM~~CS~~I~~ attach requested shall be started as soon as the MS returns to coverage;
- if the MS is both ~~IM~~CS~~I~~ and ~~G~~P~~R~~S-attached and returns to coverage in a cell that supports packet domain services~~GPRS~~ in network operation mode II or III, or if a ~~G~~P~~R~~S only-attached MS returns to coverage in a cell that supports packet domain services~~GPRS~~, then the periodic RA update procedure shall be started as soon as the MS returns to coverage; or
- if the MS returns to coverage in a cell that does not support packet domain services~~GPRS~~, and if the MS is ~~IM~~CS~~I~~-attached, then the periodic location update procedure (or other appropriate location update procedure) shall be started as soon as the MS returns to coverage in that cell. In addition, and irrespective of whether or not the MS was ~~IM~~CS~~I~~-attached, the periodic RA update procedure (or other appropriate update procedure) shall be started as soon as the MS returns to packet domain~~GPRS~~ coverage.

If the MS lost packet domain~~GPRS~~ coverage but the periodic RA update timer did not expire while out of ~~GPRS~~ packet domain coverage, then, the MS shall not perform the periodic RA update procedure because of the MS's return to packet domain~~GPRS~~ coverage.

If the MS lost coverage but the periodic RA update timer did not expire while out of coverage, then the MS shall not perform the periodic RA update procedure because of the MS's return to coverage.

~~6.3.3.2 Loss of Coverage for UMTS~~

~~[FFS]~~

3GPP TSG-SA WG2 ***Document*** ***S2G99028***

Helsinki, Finland

5 – 7 October 1999

3G CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	**CR**	**019r1**	Current Version:	3.1.0

3G specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by 3G support team*

For submision to TSG		for approval	X	*(only one box should*
list TSG meeting no. here ↑		for information		*be marked with an X)*

Form: 3G CR cover sheet, version 1.0 *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/3GCRF-xx.rtf*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	USIM		ME		UTRAN		Core Network	X

Source: NTT DoCoMo, NTC **Date:** 30/09/1999

Subject: Change in chapter 2,3 of 23.060

3G Work item:

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	
A	Corresponds to a correction in a 2G specification	
B	Addition of feature	X
C	Functional modification of feature	
D	Editorial modification	

Reason for change: This document proposes text for section 2 (References) and 3 (Definitions, abbreviations and Symbols) based on 23.060 ver 3.1.0 DRAFT2.

Clauses affected: 2, 3

Other specs Affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
Other 2G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

2 References

~~[UMTS references need to be added, and GSM references to be updated.]~~

The following documents contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of the present document.

- References are either specific (identified by date of publication, edition number, version number, etc.) or non-specific.
- For a specific reference, subsequent revisions do not apply.
- For a non-specific reference, the latest version applies.
- A non-specific reference to an ETS shall also be taken to refer to later versions published as an EN with the same number.

[1] GSM 01.04: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Abbreviations and acronyms".

[2] GSM 01.61: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); GPRS ciphering algorithm requirements".

[3] ~~GSM 02.60~~ TS 22.060: "~~Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+);~~ General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Service description; Stage 1".

[4] ~~GSM 03.03~~TS 23.003: "~~Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+);~~ Numbering, addressing and identification".

[5] ~~GSM 03.07~~TS 23.007: "~~Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+);~~ Restoration procedures".

[6] GSM 03.20: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Security related network functions".

[7] ~~GSM 03.22~~TS 23.022: "~~Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+);~~ Functions related to Mobile Station (MS) in idle mode and group receive mode".

[8] ~~GSM 03.40~~TS 23.040: "~~Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+);~~ Technical realization of the Short Message Service (SMS); Point-to-Point (PP)".

[9]

[10]

[11] GSM 03.64: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Overall description of the General Packet Radio Service (GPRS) Radio interface; Stage 2".

[12] ~~GSM 04.07~~TS 24.007: "~~Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+);~~ Mobile radio interface signalling layer 3; General aspects".

[13] ~~GSM 04.08~~TS 24.008: "~~Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+);~~ Mobile radio interface layer 3 specification, Core Network Protocols - Stage3".

[14] GSM 04.60: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Mobile Station (MS) - Base Station System (BSS) interface; Radio Link Control / Medium Access Control (RLC/MAC) protocol".

[15] GSM 04.64: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Logical Link Control (LLC)".

[16] ~~GSM 04.65~~TS 24.065: "~~Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+);~~ General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Mobile Station (MS) - Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN); Subnetwork Dependent Convergence Protocol (SNDCP)".

[17] ~~GSM 07.60~~TS 27.060: "~~Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+);~~ General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Mobile Station (MS) supporting GPRS".

[18] GSM 08.08: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Mobile Switching Centre - Base Station System (MSC - BSS) interface: Layer 3 specification".

[19] GSM 08.14: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Base Station System (BSS) - Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN) interface; Gb interface layer 1".

[20] GSM 08.16: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Base Station System (BSS) - Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN) interface; Network Service".

[21] GSM 08.18: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Base Station System (BSS) - Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN); BSS GPRS Protocol (BSSGP)".

[22] GSM 08.60: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Inband control of remote transcoders and rate adaptors for Enhanced Full Rate (EFR) and full rate traffic channels."

[23] ~~GSM 09.02~~TS 29.002: "~~Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+);~~ Mobile Application Part (MAP) specification".

[24] ~~GSM 09.16~~TS 29.016: "~~Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+);~~ General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN) - Visitors Location Register (VLR); Gs interface network service specification".

[25] ~~GSM 09.18~~TS 29.018: "~~Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+);~~ General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN) - Visitors Location Register (VLR); Gs interface layer 3 specification".

[26] ~~GSM 09.60~~TS 29.060: "~~Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+);~~ General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); GPRS Tunnelling Protocol (GTP) across the Gn and Gp Interface".

[27] ~~GSM 09.61~~TS 29.061: "~~Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+);~~ General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); ~~requirements on i~~Interworking between the Public Land Mobile Network (PLMN) supporting ~~General Packet Radio Service~~ (GPRS) and Packet Data Networks (PDN)".

[28] GSM 11.11: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Specification of the Subscriber Identity Module - Mobile Equipment (SIM - ME) interface".

[28a] GSM 12.15: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); GPRS Charging".

[29] CCITT Recommendations I.130: "General modelling methods – Method for the characterisation of telecommunication services supported by an ISDN and network capabilities of an ISDN".

[30] CCITT Recommendation E.164: "Numbering plan for the ISDN era".

[31] CCITT Recommendation Q.65: "Methodology – Stage 2 of the method for the characterization of services supported by an ISDN".

[32] CCITT Recommendation V.42 bis: "Data communication over the telephone network – Data compression procedures for data circuit-terminating equipment (DCE) using error correction procedures".

[33] CCITT Recommendation X.3: "Packet assembly disassembly facility (PAD) in a public data network".

[34] CCITT Recommendation X.25: "Interface between data terminal equipment (DTE) and data circuit-terminating equipment (DCE) for terminals operating in the packet mode and connected to public data networks by dedicated circuit".

[35] CCITT Recommendation X.28: "DTE / DCE interface for a start-stop mode data terminal equipment accessing the packet assembly / disassembly facility (PAD) in a public data network situated in the same country".

[36] CCITT Recommendation X.29: "Procedures for the exchange of control information and user data between a packet assembly / disassembly (PAD) facility and a packet mode DTE or another PAD".

[37] CCITT Recommendation X.75: "Packet-switched signalling system between public networks providing data transmission services".

[38] CCITT Recommendation X.121: "International Numbering Plan for Public Data Networks".

[39] IETF RFC 768 (1980): "User Datagram Protocol" (STD 6).

[40] IETF RFC 791 (1981): "Internet Protocol" (STD 5).

[41] IETF RFC 792 (1981): "Internet Control Message Protocol" (STD 5).

[42] IETF RFC 793 (1981): "Transmission Control Protocol" (STD 7).

[43] IETF RFC 1034 (1987): "Domain Names – Concepts and Facilities" (STD 7).

[44] IETF RFC 1661 (1994): "The Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP)" (STD 51).

[45] IETF RFC 1542 (1993): "Clarification and Extensions for the Bootstrap Protocol".

[46] IETF RFC 2002 (1996): "IPv4 Mobility Support".

[47] IETF RFC 2131 (1997): "Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol".

[48] Bellcore GR-000301 Issue 2 December 1997: "Public Packet Switched Network Generic Requirements (PPSNGR)".

[49] TIA/EIA-136 (1999): "TDMA Cellular / PCS"; Arlington: Telecommunications Industry Association.

[50] TS 25.301: " Radio Interface Protocol Architecture".

[51] TS 25.303: "UE Functions and Interlayer Procedures in Connected Mode".

[52] TS 25.331: "RRC Protocol Specification".

[53] TS 25.401: "UTRAN Overall Description [UMTS <spec>] ".

[54] TS 23.121: "Architectural Requirements for Release 1999".

[55] TS 25.322: "RLC Protocol Specification".

[56] TS 25.412: "UTRAN Iu Interface Signalling Transport".

3 Definitions, abbreviations and symbols

3.1 Definitions

Refer to ~~GSM 02.60~~TS 22.060 and TS 25.401.

2G-/3G-: A node written with 2G- or 3G- (e.g. 2G-SGSN) supports only that generation. A node written without a header supports both 2G and 3G.

3.2 Abbreviations

For the purposes of the present document the following abbreviations apply. Additional applicable abbreviations can be found in GSM 01.04 [1].

AA	Anonymous Access
APN	Access Point Name
ATM	Asynchronous Transfer Mode
AUTN	Authentication Token
BG	Border Gateway
BSS	Base Station System
BSSAP+	Base Station System Application Part +
BSSGP	Base Station System GPRS Protocol
BVCI	BSSGP Virtual Connection Identifier
CCU	Channel Codec Unit
CDR	Call Detail Record
CGF	Charging Gateway Functionality
CGI	Cell Global Identification
CI	Cell Identity
CK	Cipher Key for UMTS
CS	Circuit Switched
CS attach	Circuit Switched attach
DHCP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
DNS	Domain Name System
EGPRS	Enhanced GPRS
GGSN	Gateway GPRS Support Node
GMM/SM	GPRS Mobility Management and Session Management
GMM-Idle	GPRS Mobility Management in Idle state
GMM-Standby	GPRS Mobility Management in Standby state
GMM-Ready	GPRS Mobility Management in Ready state
GEA	GPRS Encryption Algorithm
GSN	GPRS Support Node
GTP	GPRS Tunnelling Protocol
GTP-C	GTP for control plane
GTP-U	GTP for user plane
ICMP	Internet Control Message Protocol
IETF	Internet Engineering Task Force
IHOSS	Internet-Hosted Octet Stream Service
IK	Integrity Key
IP	Internet Protocol
IPv4	Internet Protocol version 4
IPv6	Internet Protocol version 6
IPX	Internet Packet eXchange
ISP	Internet Service Provider
KSI	Key Set Identifier
L2TP	Layer-2 Tunnelling Protocol
LA	Location Area
LL-PDU	LLC PDU
LLC	Logical Link Control
MAC	Medium Access Control
MAP	Mobile Application Part
MIP	Mobile IP
MNRF	Mobile station Not Reachable Flag
MNRG	Mobile station Not Reachable for GPRS flag
MNRR	Mobile station Not Reachable Reason
MTP2	Message Transfer Part layer 2
MTP3	Message Transfer Part layer 3
NGAF	Non-GPRS Alert Flag
NS	Network Service
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier

NSS	Network SubSystem
OSP	Octet Stream Protocol
P-TMSI	Packet TMSI
PAD	Packet Assembly/Disassembly
PCU	Packet Control Unit
PDCH	Packet Data Channel
PDCP	Packet Data Convergence Protocol
PDN	Packet Data Network
PDP	Packet Data Protocol, e.g., IP or X.25 [34]
PDU	Protocol Data Unit
PMM	Packet Mobility Management
PMM-Detached	Packet Mobility Management in Detached state
PMM-Idle	Packet Mobility Management in Idle state
PMM-Connected	Packet Mobility Management in Connected state
PPF	Paging Proceed Flag
PPP	Point-to-Point Protocol
PS	Packet Switched
PS attach	Packet Switched attach
PTM	Point To Multipoint
PTP	Point To Point
PVC	Permanent Virtual Circuit
RA	Routeing Area
RAC	Routeing Area Code
RAI	Routeing Area Identity
RANAP	Radio Access Network Application Protocol
RLC	Radio Link Control
RNS	Radio Network Subsystem
RRC	Radio Resource Control
SGSN	Serving GPRS Support Node
SM	Short Message
SM-SC	Short Message service Service Centre
SMS-GMSC	Short Message Service Gateway MSC
SMS-IWMSC	Short Message Service Interworking MSC
SN-PDU	SNDCP PDU
SNDC	SubNetwork Dependent Convergence
SNDCP	SubNetwork Dependent Convergence Protocol
SVC	Switched Virtual Circuit
TCAP	Transaction Capabilities Application Part
TCP	Transmission Control Protocol
TFT	Traffic Flow Template
TI	Transaction Identifier
TID	Tunnel Identifier
TLLI	Temporary Logical Link Identity
TOM	Tunnelling Of Messages
TRAU	Transcoder and Rate Adaptor Unit
UDP	User Datagram Protocol
UEA	UMTS Encryption Algorithm
UIA	UMTS Integrity Algorithm
URA	UTRAN Registration Area
USIM	User Service Identity Module
UTRAN	UMTS Terrestrial Radio Access Network

3.3 Symbols

~~[New symbols to be added.]~~

For the purposes of the present document the following symbols apply:

2G-SGSN	The GSM GPRS-only part of an SGSN.

3G-SGSN	The UMTS-only part of an SGSN.
Ga	Charging data collection interface between a CDR transmitting unit (e.g., an SGSN or a GGSN) and a CDR receiving functionality (a CGF).
Gb	Interface between an 2G-SGSN and a BSS.
Gc	Interface between a GGSN and an HLR.
Gd	Interface between a SMS-GMSC and an SGSN, and between a SMS-IWMSC and an SGSN.
Gf	Interface between an SGSN and an EIR.
Gi	Reference point between GPRS and an external packet data network.
Gn	Interface between two GSNs within the same PLMN.
Gp	Interface between two GSNs in different PLMNs. The Gp interface allows support of GPRS network services across areas served by the co-operating GPRS PLMNs.
Gr	Interface between an SGSN and an HLR.
Gs	Interface between an SGSN and an MSC/VLR.
Iu	Interconnection point between the RNS and the Core Network. It is also considered as a reference point.
kbit/s	Kilobits per second.
Mbit/s	Megabits per second. 1 Mbit/s = 1 million bits per second.
R	Reference point between a non-ISDN compatible TE and MT. Typically this reference point supports a standard serial interface.
Reporting Area	The service area for which a UE's location shall be reported.
Service Area	The location accuracy level needed for service management purposes in the 3G-SGSN, e.g., a routeing area or a cell. The 3G-SGSN can request the SRNC to report: i) the UE's current service area; ii) when the UE moves into a given service area; or iii) when the UE moves out of a given service area.
Um	Interface between the mobile station (MS) and the GPRS fixed network part. The Um interface is the GPRS network interface for providing packet data services over the radio to the MS. The MT part of the MS is used to access the GPRS services through this interface.
Uu	Interface between the mobile station (MS) and the UMTS fixed network part. The Uu interface is the UMTS network interface for providing packet data services over the radio to the MS. The MT part of the MS is used to access the UMTS services through this interface.

3GPP TSG-? Meeting #?
Helsinki, Finland, 05-07. Oct. 1999

***Document* S2G99030**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060 CR 020r1 Current Version: 3.1.0

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:
list expected approval meeting # here ↑

for approval	X	strategic		*(for SMG use only)*
for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc

Proposed change affects: (U)SIM [X] ME [X] UTRAN / Radio [X] Core Network [X]
(at least one should be marked with an X)

Source: NTT DoCoMo, NTT Software **Date:** 30.09.1999

Subject: Changes in chapter 5 of 23.060

Work item:

Category:
(only one category shall be marked with an X)

F	Correction	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release	
B	Addition of feature	
C	Functional modification of feature	
D	Editorial modification	

Release:

Phase 2	
Release 96	
Release 97	
Release 98	
Release 99	X
Release 00	

Reason for change: The CR proposes text for section 5; General GPRS Architecture and Transmission Mechanism.

Clauses affected:

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

5 General Packet Domain Architecture and Transmission Mechanism

5.1 Packet Domain Access Interfaces and Reference Points

Each PLMN has two access points, the radio interface (labelled Um in GPRS and Uu in UMTS) used for mobile access and the R reference point used for origination or reception of messages. The R reference point for the ~~GPRS~~ MSs is defined in GSM ~~0~~27.060 [17].

An interface differs from a reference point in that an interface is defined where specific information is exchanged and needs to be fully recognised.

There is an inter PLMN interface called Gp that connects two independent packet domain networks for message exchange.

There is also a PLMN to fixed network (typically a packet data network) reference point called Gi. Gi is defined in ~~GSM~~ TS 02~~9~~.061 [27].

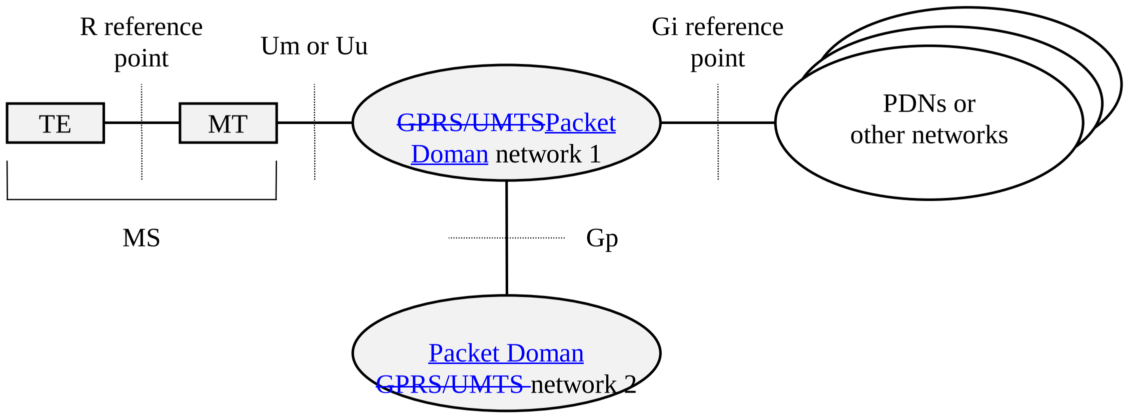


Figure 1: Packet Domain Access Interfaces and Reference Points

There may be more than a single network interface to several different packet data (or other) networks. These networks may both differ in ownership as well as in communications protocol (e.g., X.25, TCP/IP etc.). The network operator should define and negotiate interconnect with each external (PDN or other) network.

5.2 Network Interworking

Network interworking is required whenever a packet domain PLMN and any other network are involved in the execution of a service request. With reference to Figure 1, interworking takes place through the Gi reference point and the Gp interface.

The internal mechanism for conveying the PDP PDU through the PLMN is managed by the PLMN network operator and is not apparent to the data user. The use of the packet domain data service may have an impact on and increase the transfer time normally found for a message when communicated through a fixed packet data network.

5.2.1 PSPDN Interworking

The packet domain shall support interworking with PSPDN networks. The interworking may be either direct or through a transit network (e.g., ISDN). GPRS shall support both X.121 [38] and E.164 [30] addresses.

The packet domain shall provide support for X.25 virtual circuits and X.25 fast select. X.75 [37] or X.75' [48] may be used for interworking with X.25 PDNs.

The packet domain TEs have addresses provided by the packet domain service operator and belong to the packet domain. The PSPDN TE sends data to the packet domain TE by use of the packet domain PLMN DNIC (Data Network Identification Code) or equivalent that uniquely identifies the packet domain network.

5.2.2 Internet (IP) Interworking

The packet domain shall support interworking with networks based on the internet protocol (IP). IP is defined in RFC 791 [40]. The packet domain may provide compression of the TCP/IP header when an IP-datagram is used within the context of a TCP connection.

In a similar way to the PSPDN X.25 case, the packet domain PLMN service is an IP domain, and mobile terminals offered service by a service provider may be globally addressable through the network operator's addressing scheme.

5.3 High-Level Functions Required ~~for GPRS~~

The following list gives the logical functions performed within the packet domain network. Several functional groupings (meta-functions) are defined which each encompasses a number of individual functions:

- Network Access Control Functions.
- Packet Routeing and Transfer Functions.
- Mobility Management Functions.
- Logical Link Management Functions (GPRS only).
- Radio Resource Management Functions.
- Network Management Functions.

5.3.1 Network Access Control Functions

Network access is the means by which a user is connected to a telecommunication network in order to use the services and/or facilities of that network. An access protocol is a defined set of procedures that enables the user to employ the services and/or facilities of the network.

User network access may occur from either the mobile side or the fixed side of the network. The fixed network interface may support multiple access protocols to external data networks, for example X.25 or IP. The set of access protocols to be supported is determined by the PLMN operator.

Individual PLMN administrations may require specific access-control procedures in order to limit the set of users permitted to access the network, or to restrict the capabilities of individual users, for example by limiting the type of service available to an individual subscriber. Such access control procedures are beyond the scope of the specifications.

In addition to the standard data transfer, the packet domain may support anonymous access to the network. The service allows an MS to exchange data packets with a predefined host that can be addressed by the supported interworking protocols. Only a limited number of destination PDP addresses can be used within this service. IMSI or IMEI shall not be used when accessing the network thus guaranteeing a high level of anonymity. Therefore, no authentication and ciphering functionalities are foreseen for anonymous access.

5.3.1.1 Registration Function

Registration is the means by which a user's Mobile Id is associated with the user's packet data protocol(s) and address(es) within the PLMN, and with the user's access point(s) to the external PDP network. The association can be static, i.e., stored in an HLR, or dynamic, i.e., allocated on a per need basis.

5.3.1.2 Authentication and Authorisation Function

This function performs the identification and authentication of the service requester, and the validation of the service request type to ensure that the user is authorised to use the particular network services. The authentication function is performed in association with the Mobility Management functions.

5.3.1.3 Admission Control Function

The purpose of admission control is to calculate which network resources are required to provide the quality of service (QoS) requested, determine if those resources are available, and then reserve those resources. Admission control is performed in association with the Radio Resource Management functions in order to estimate the radio resource requirements within each cell.

5.3.1.4 Message Screening Function

A screening function concerned with filtering out unauthorised or unsolicited messages is required. This should be supported through packet filtering functions.

5.3.1.5 Packet Terminal Adaptation Function

This function adapts data packets received / transmitted from / to terminal equipment to a form suitable for transmission across the Packet Doman ~~GPRS~~ network.

5.3.1.6 Charging Data Collection Function

This function collects data necessary to support subscription and/or traffic fees.

5.3.2 Packet Routeing and Transfer Functions

A route is an ordered list of nodes used for the transfer of messages within and between the PLMN(s). Each route consists of the originating node, zero or more relay nodes and the destination node. Routeing is the process of determining and using, in accordance with a set of rules, the route for transmission of a message within and between the PLMN(s).

5.3.2.1 Relay Function

The relay function is the means by which a node forwards data received from one node to the next node in the route.

5.3.2.2 Routeing Function

The routeing function determines the network node to which a message should be forwarded and the underlying service(s) used to reach that GPRS Support Node (GSN), using the destination address of the message. The routeing function selects the transmission path for the "next hop" in the route.

Data transmission between GSNs may occur across external data networks that provide their own internal routeing functions, for example X.25, Frame Relay or ATM networks.

5.3.2.3 Address Translation and Mapping Function

Address translation is the conversion of one address to another address of a different type. Address translation may be used to convert an external network protocol address into an internal network address that can be used for routeing packets within and between the PLMN(s).

Address mapping is used to map a network address to another network address of the same type for the routeing and relaying of messages within and between the PLMN(s), for example to forward packets from one network node to another.

5.3.2.4 Encapsulation Function

Encapsulation is the addition of address and control information to a data unit for routeing packets within and between the PLMN(s). Decapsulation is the removal of the addressing and control information from a packet to reveal the original data unit.

Encapsulation and decapsulation are performed between the support nodes of the packet domain PLMN(s), and between the serving support node and the MS.

5.3.2.5 Tunnelling Function

Tunnelling is the transfer of encapsulated data units within and between the PLMN(s) from the point of encapsulation to the point of decapsulation. A tunnel is a two-way point-to-point path. Only the tunnel endpoints are identified.

5.3.2.6 Compression Function

The compression function optimises use of radio path capacity by transmitting as little of the SDU (i.e., the exterior PDP PDU) as possible while at the same time as preserving the information contained within it. Only IP header compression is supported in UMTS.

5.3.2.7 Ciphering Function

The ciphering function preserves the confidentiality of user data and signalling across the radio channels and inherently protects the PLMN from intruders.

5.3.2.8 Domain Name Server Function

The Domain Name Server function resolves logical GSN names to GSN addresses. This function is standard Internet functionality according to RFC 1034 [43], which allows to resolve any name for GSNs and other nodes within the packet domain PLMN backbone networks.

5.3.3 Mobility Management Functions

The mobility management functions are used to keep track of the current location of an MS within the PLMN or within another PLMN.

5.3.4 Logical Link Management Functions for GPRS

~~[The UMTS signalling connection could also be considered as logical link. Should it be describe here?]~~

Logical link management functions are concerned with the maintenance of a communication channel between an individual MS and the PLMN across the radio interface. These functions involve the co-ordination of link state information between the MS and the PLMN as well as the supervision of data transfer activity over the logical link.

Refer to GSM 04.64 [15] for further information.

5.3.4.1 Logical Link Establishment Function

Logical link establishment is performed when the MS attaches to the PS services.

5.3.4.2 Logical Link Maintenance Functions

Logical link maintenance functions supervise the logical link status and control link state changes.

5.3.4.3 Logical Link Release Function

The logical link release function is used to de-allocate resources associated with the logical link connection.

5.3.5 Radio Resource Management Functions

Radio resource management functions are concerned with the allocation and maintenance of radio communication paths, and is performed by the Access Network.Refer to GSM 03.64 for further information on the GSM GPRS radio. Refer to ~~UM~~TS 25.301 for further information on the UMTS radio.

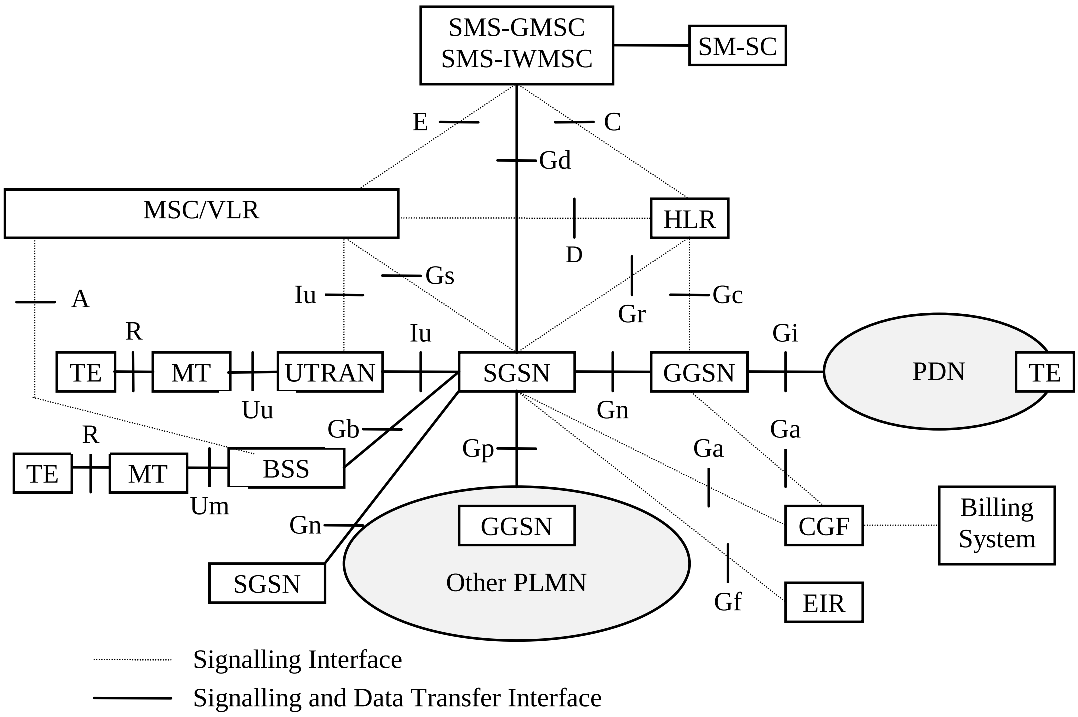
5.3.6 Network Management Functions

Network management functions provide mechanisms to support O&M functions related to the packet domain.

5.4 Logical Architecture

The packet domain Core Network functionality is logically implemented on two network nodes, the Serving GPRS Support Node and the Gateway GPRS Support Node. The GPRS support nodes originating from GPRS evolve to UMTS network nodes. Therefore, the name GPRS Support Node is used even if the node provides UMTS functionality only. It is necessary to name a number of new interfaces. No inference should be drawn about the physical configuration on an interface from Figure 2~~Figure 2~~.

~~[Replace the figure with the one from Tdoc S2G99004, but change RNS to UTRAN, and add Iu between MSC/VLR and UTRAN.]~~



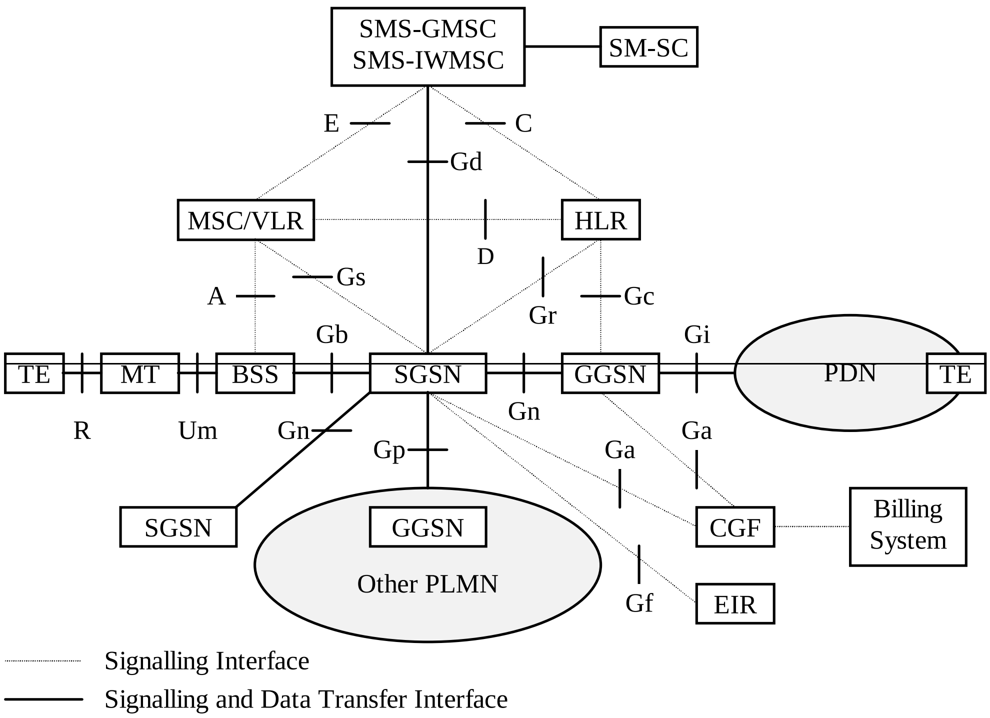


Figure 2: Overview of the Packet Domain Logical Architecture

5.4.1 Packet Domain Core Network Nodes

A GPRS Support Node (GSN) contains functionality required to support GPRS and/or to support UMTS packet domain functionality. In one PLMN, there may be more than one GSN.

The Gateway GPRS Support Node (GGSN) is the node that is accessed by the packet data network due to evaluation of the PDP address. It contains routeing information for attached GPRS users. The routeing information is used to tunnel N-PDUs to the MS's current point of attachment, i.e., the Serving GPRS Support Node. The GGSN may request location information from the HLR via the optional Gc interface. The GGSN is the first point of PDN interconnection with a GSM PLMN supporting GPRS (i.e., the Gi reference point is supported by the GGSN). GGSN functionality is common for GPRS and for the UMTS packet domain.

The Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN) is the node that is serving the MS. The SGSN supports GPRS (i.e., the Gb interface is supported by the SGSN) and/or UMTS (i.e., the Iu interface is supported by the SGSN). At GPRS attach, the SGSN establishes a mobility management context containing information pertaining to e.g., mobility and security for the MS. At PDP Context Activation, the SGSN establishes a PDP context, to be used for routeing purposes, with the GGSN that the Packet Doman ~~GPRS~~ subscriber will be using.

The SGSN and GGSN functionalities may be combined in the same physical node, or they may reside in different physical nodes. SGSN and GGSN contain IP or other (operator's selection, e.g., ATM-SVC ~~[add to abbreviations? FFS]~~) routeing functionality, and they may be interconnected with IP routers. When SGSN and GGSN are in different PLMNs, they are interconnected via the Gp interface. The Gp interface provides the functionality of the Gn interface, plus security functionality required for inter-PLMN communication. The security functionality is based on mutual agreements between operators.

The SGSN may send location information to the MSC/VLR via the optional Gs interface. The [FFS: 2G-]SGSN may receive paging requests from the MSC/VLR via the Gs interface.

5.4.2 Packet Domain PLMN Backbone Networks

There are two kinds of backbone networks. These are called:

- intra-PLMN backbone network; and
- inter-PLMN backbone network.

The intra-PLMN backbone network is the IP network interconnecting GSNs within the same PLMN.

The inter-PLMN backbone network is the IP network interconnecting GSNs and intra-PLMN backbone networks in different PLMNs.

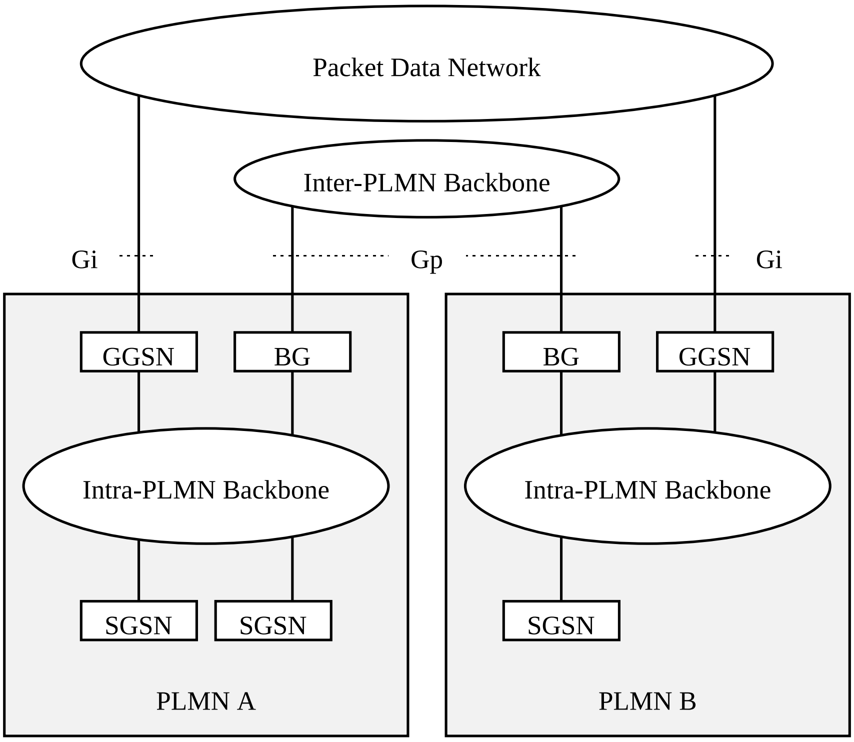


Figure 4~~3~~: Intra- and Inter-PLMN Backbone Networks

Every intra-PLMN backbone network is a private IP network intended for packet domain data and signalling only. A private IP network is an IP network to which some access control mechanism is applied in order to achieve a required level of security. Two intra-PLMN backbone networks are connected via the Gp interface using Border Gateways (BGs) and an inter-PLMN backbone network. The inter-PLMN backbone network is selected by a roaming agreement that includes the BG security functionality. The BG is not defined within the scope of the packet domain. The inter-PLMN backbone can be a Packet Data Network, e.g., the public Internet or a leased line.

5.4.3 HLR

The HLR contains packet domain subscription data and routeing information. The HLR is accessible from the SGSN via the Gr interface and from the GGSN via the Gc interface. For roaming MSs, HLR may be in a different PLMN than the current SGSN.

5.4.4 SMS-GMSC and SMS-IWMSC

The SMS-GMSC and SMS-IWMSC are connected to the SGSN via the Gd interface to enable the SGSN to support SMS.

5.4.5 GPRS Mobile Stations

A GPRS MS can operate in one of three modes of operation. The mode of operation depends on the services that the MS is attached to, i.e., only GPRS or both GPRS and other GSM services, and upon the MS's capabilities to operate GPRS and other GSM services simultaneously.

- Class-A mode of operation: The MS is attached to both GPRS and other GSM services, and the MS supports simultaneous operation of GPRS and other GSM services.
- Class-B mode of operation: The MS is attached to both GPRS and other GSM services, but the MS can only operate one set of services at a time. In network operation mode III (see subclause "Paging Co-ordination"), an MS that is capable of monitoring only one paging channel at a time cannot operate in class B mode of operation. In this case, such an MS shall revert to class-C mode of operation.
- Class-C mode of operation: The MS is exclusively attached to GPRS services.

NOTE: Other GSM technical specifications may refer to the MS modes of operation as GPRS class-A MS, GPRS class-B MS, and GPRS class-C MS.

5.4.6 UMTS Mobile Station

[Text needed. Shall this be called MS or UE or 3G-MS?]

5.4.7 Charging Gateway Functionality

The Charging Gateway Functionality (CGF) is described in GSM 12.15 [28a].

5.5 Assignment of Functions to General Logical Architecture

The functions identified in the functional model are assigned to the logical architecture.

Table 1: Mapping of Functions to Logical Architecture

Function	2G-MS	3G-MS	BSS	UTRAN	2G-SGSN	3G-SGSN	GGSN	HLR
Network Access Control:								
Registration								X
Authentication and Authorisation	X	X			X	X		X
Admission Control	X	X	X	X	X	X		
Message Screening							X	
Packet Terminal Adaptation	X	X						
Charging Data Collection					X	X	X	
Packet Routeing & Transfer:								
Relay	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Routeing	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Address Translation and Mapping	X	X		X	X	X	X	
Encapsulation	X	X		X	X	X	X	
Tunnelling				X	X	X	X	
Compression	X	X		X	X			
Ciphering	X	X		X	X			X
Mobility Management:	X	X			X	X	X	X
Logical Link Management:								
Logical Link Establishment	X				X			
Logical Link Maintenance	X				X			
Logical Link Release	X				X			
Radio Resource Management:	X	X	X	X	X			

5.6 User and Control Planes

5.6.1 User Plane for GPRS

5.6.1.1 MS – GGSN

The user plane consists of a layered protocol structure providing user information transfer, along with associated information transfer control procedures (e.g., flow control, error detection, error correction and error recovery). The user plane independence of the Network Subsystem (NSS) platform from the underlying radio interface is preserved via the Gb interface. The following user plane is used in GPRS:

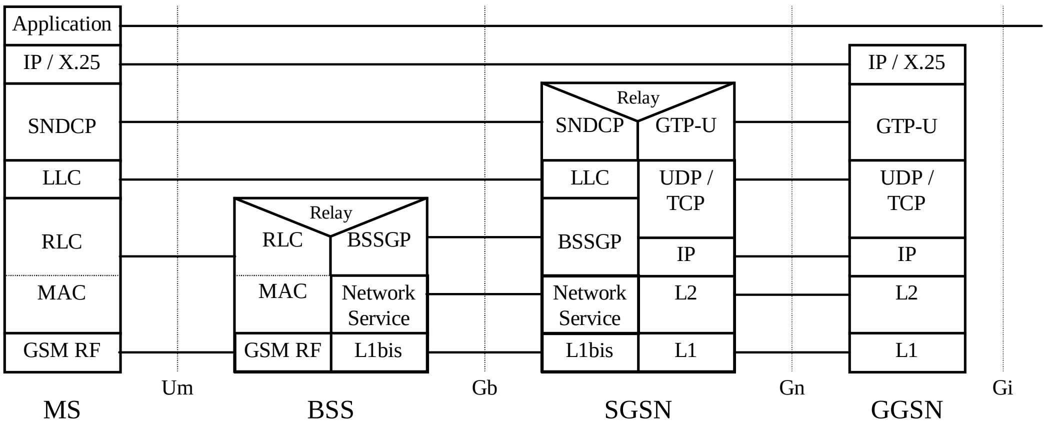


Figure 54: User Plane for GPRS

Legend:

- GPRS Tunnelling Protocol for the user plane (GTP-U): This protocol tunnels user data between GPRS Support Nodes in the backbone network. All PDP PDUs shall be encapsulated by the GPRS Tunnelling Protocol. GTP is specified in ~~GSM~~ TS ~~0~~29.060 [26].
- TCP carries GTP PDUs in the backbone network for protocols that need a reliable data link (e.g., X.25), and UDP carries GTP PDUs for protocols that do not need a reliable data link (e.g., IP). TCP provides flow control and protection against lost and corrupted GTP PDUs. UDP provides protection against corrupted GTP PDUs. TCP is defined in RFC 793 [42]. UDP is defined in RFC 768 [39].
- IP: This is the backbone network protocol used for routeing user data and control signalling. The backbone network may initially be based on the IP version 4 protocol. Ultimately, IP version 6 shall be used. IP version 4 is defined in RFC 791.
- Subnetwork Dependent Convergence Protocol (SNDCP): This transmission functionality maps network-level characteristics onto the characteristics of the underlying network. SNDCP is specified in ~~GSM~~ TS ~~0~~240.65 [16].
- Logical Link Control (LLC): This layer provides a highly reliable ciphered logical link. LLC shall be independent of the underlying radio interface protocols in order to allow introduction of alternative GPRS radio solutions with minimum changes to the NSS. LLC is specified in GSM 04.64.
- Relay: In the BSS, this function relays LLC PDUs between the Um and Gb interfaces. In the SGSN, this function relays PDP PDUs between the Gb and Gn interfaces.
- Base Station System GPRS Protocol (BSSGP): This layer conveys routeing- and QoS-related information between BSS and SGSN. BSSGP does not perform error correction. BSSGP is specified in GSM 08.18 [21].
- Network Service (NS): This layer transports BSSGP PDUs. NS is based on the Frame Relay connection between BSS and SGSN, and may be multi-hop and traverse a network of Frame Relay switching nodes. NS is specified in GSM 08.16 [20].
- RLC/MAC: This layer contains two functions: The Radio Link Control function provides a radio-solution-dependent reliable link. The Medium Access Control function controls the access signalling (request and grant) procedures for the radio channel, and the mapping of LLC frames onto the GSM physical channel. RLC/MAC is defined in GSM 04.60 [14].

- GSM RF: As defined in GSM 05 series.

5.6.1.2 GSN - GSN

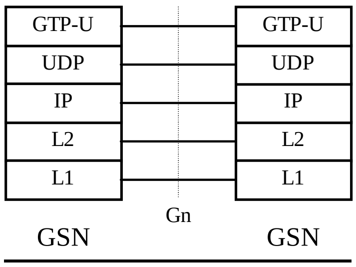


Figure 5: User Plane GSN - GSN

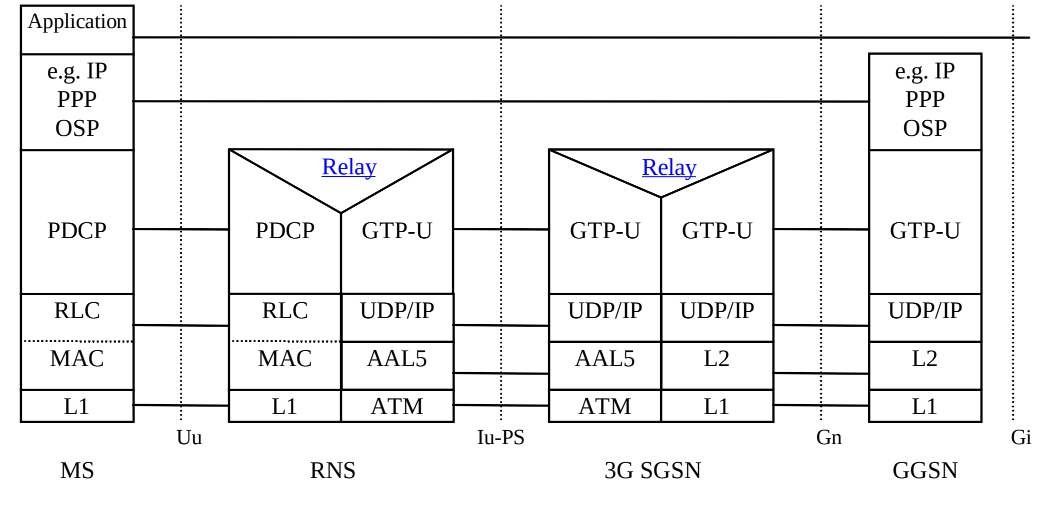
Legend:

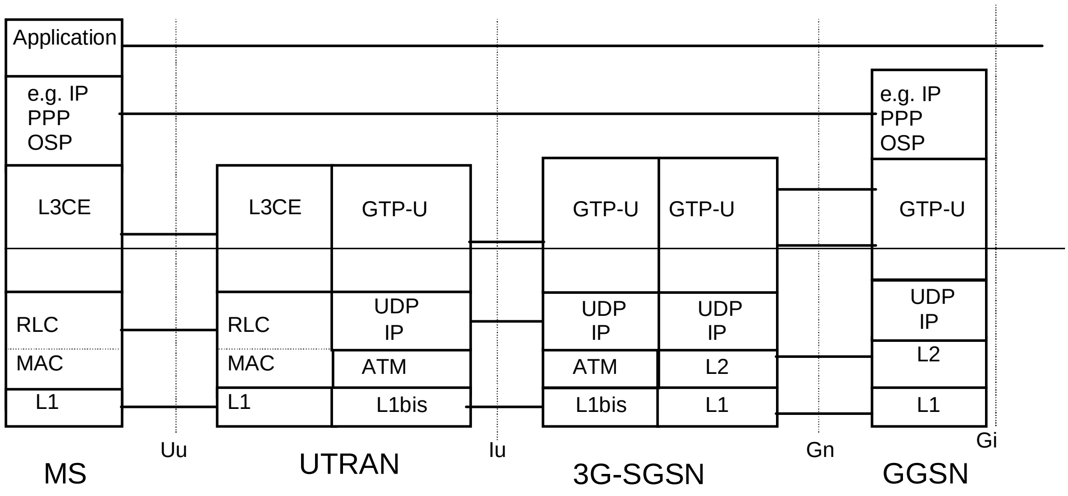
- GPRS Tunnelling Protocol Control Plane(GTP-U): This protocol tunnels user data between SGSNs and GGSNs, and between SGSNs, in the Packet Domain backbone network.

- User Datagram Protocol (UDP): This protocol transfers user data between GSNs. UDP is defined in RFC 768.

5.6.2 User Plane for UMTS

5.6.2.1 MS - GGSN





~~Figure 5~~Figure 6: User Plane for UMTS

~~[Shall it be called RNS, UTRAN, or ? Need to add Relay functions to the drawing.]~~

Legend:

- Packet Data Convergence Protocol (PDCP): This transmission functionality maps higher-level characteristics onto the characteristics of the underlying radio-interface protocols. PDCP provides protocol transparency for higher-layer protocols. PDCP supports e.g., IPv4, PPP, OSP, and IPv6. Introduction of new higher-layer protocols shall be possible without any changes to the radio-interface protocols. PDCP provides protocol control information compression. PDCP is specified in ~~UM~~TS 25.323 ~~[FFS]~~.

NOTE: Unlike in GPRS, user data compression is not supported in UMTS, because the data compression efficiency depends on the type of user data, and because many applications compress data before transmission. It is difficult to check the type of data in the PDCP layer, and compressing all user data requires too much processing.

- GPRS Tunnelling Protocol for the user plane (GTP-U): This protocol tunnels user data between UTRAN and the 3G-SGSN, and between the GSNs in the backbone network. All PDP PDUs shall be encapsulated by GTP. GTP is specified in ~~UM~~TS 29.060 ~~[FFS]~~.
- UDP/IP: These are the backbone network protocols used for routeing user data and control signalling.
- Radio Link Control (RLC): The RLC protocol provides logical link control over the radio interface. There may be several simultaneous RLC links per MS. Each link is identified by a Bearer Id. RLC is defined in ~~UM~~TS 25.322 ~~[FFS]~~.

~~[Add text for ATM and MAC.]~~

5.6.2.2 GSN – GSN

Refer to 5.6.1.2.

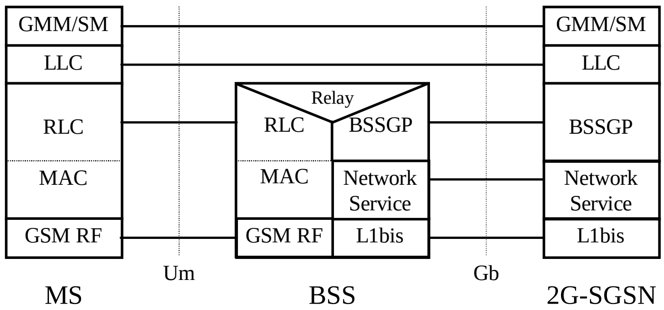
5.6.3 Control Plane

The control plane consists of protocols for control and support of the user plane functions:

- controlling the packet domain network access connections, such as attaching to and detaching from the packet domain network;
- controlling the attributes of an established network access connection, such as activation of a PDP address;
- controlling the routeing path of an established network connection in order to support user mobility; and
- controlling the assignment of network resources to meet changing user demands.

The following control planes are used in both GPRS and UMTS unless specifically indicated:

5.6.3.1 MS – SGSN for GPRS

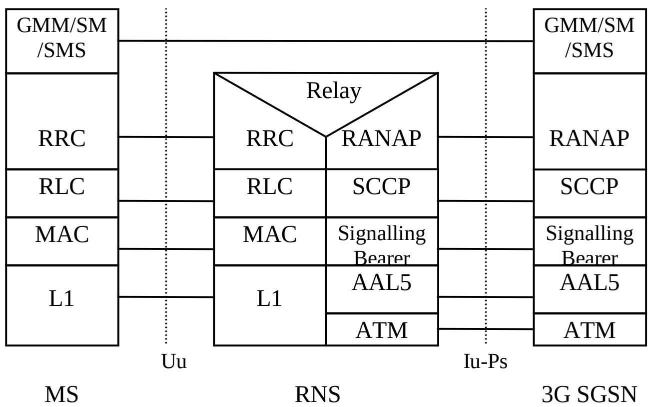


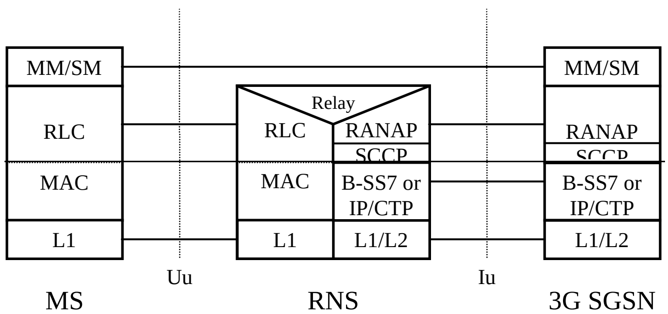
~~Figure 6~~Figure 7: Control Plane MS – 2G-SGSN

Legend:

- GPRS Mobility Management and Session Management (GMM/SM): This protocol supports mobility management functionality such as GPRS attach, GPRS detach, security, routeing area update, location update, PDP context activation, and PDP context deactivation, as described in clause "Mobility Management Functionality" and "PDP Context Activation, Modification, and Deactivation Functions".

5.6.3.2 MS – SGSN for UMTS





~~Figure 7~~Figure 8: Control Plane MS - 3G-SGSN

Legend:

UMTS Mobility Management and Session Management (GMM/SM):

- GMM supports mobility management functionality such as attach, detach, security, and routeing area update, as described in clause "Mobility Management Functionality".

- SM supports PDP context activation and PDP context deactivation, as described in subclause "PDP Context Activation, Modification, and Deactivation Functions".

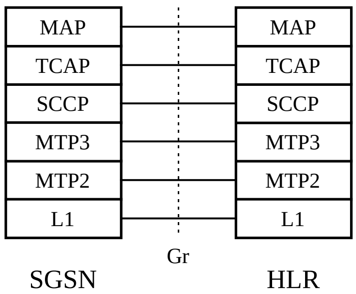
- SMS supports Short Message Mobile Originated, and Short Message Mobile Terminated, as described in TS 23.040 [8].

- Radio Access Network Application Protocol (RANAP): This protocol encapsulates and carries higher-layer signalling, handles signalling between the 3G-SGSN and UTRAN, and manages the GTP connections on the Iu interface. RANAP is specified in ~~UM~~TS 25.413 ~~[FFS]~~

.The layers below RANAP are defined in ~~UM~~TS ~~23.121~~25.410 ~~[FFS]~~.

- Radio Link Control (RLC): The RLC protocol offers logical link control over the radio interface for the transmission of higher layer-signalling messages and SMS. RLC is defined in TS25.322.

5.6.3.2 SGSN - HLR



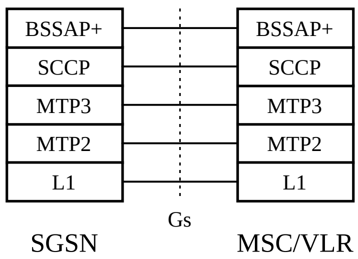
~~Figure 8~~Figure 9: Control Plane SGSN - HLR

Legend:

- Mobile Application Part (MAP): This protocol supports signalling exchange with the HLR, as defined in ~~GSM~~ TS ~~0~~29.~~0~~02 [23], with enhancements for GPRS as described in the present document.

- TCAP, SCCP, MTP3, and MTP2 are the same protocols as used to support MAP in ~~non-GPRS~~ CS ~~GSM~~ PLMNs.

5.6.3.3 SGSN - MSC/VLR



~~Figure 9~~Figure 10: Control Plane SGSN - MSC/VLR

Legend:

- Base Station System Application Part + (BSSAP+): A subset of BSSAP procedures supports signalling between the SGSN and MSC/VLR, as described in subclause "Mobility Management Functionality" and in ~~GSM~~ TS 2~~0~~9.~~0~~18 [25]. The requirements for the lower layers are specified in ~~GSM~~ TS 2~~0~~9.~~0~~16 [24].

5.6.3.4 SGSN - EIR

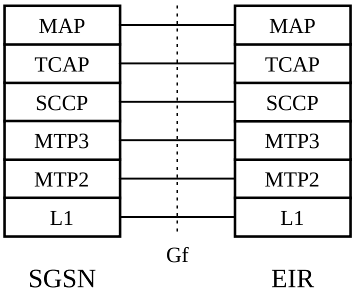


Figure 11~~9~~: Control Plane SGSN - EIR

Legend:

- Mobile Application Part (MAP): This protocol supports signalling between the SGSN and the EIR, as described in subclause "Identity Check Procedures".

5.6.3.5 SGSN - SMS-GMSC or SMS-IWMSC

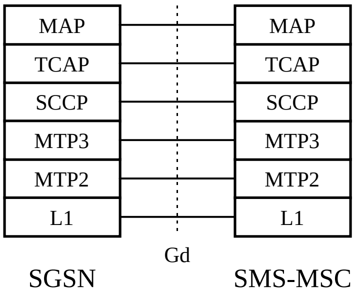


Figure ~~10~~12: Control Plane SGSN - SMS-GMSC and SGSN - SMS-IWMSC

Legend:

- Mobile Application Part (MAP): This protocol supports signalling between the SGSN and SMS-GMSC or SMS-IWMSC, as described in subclause "Point-to-point Short Message Service".

5.6.3.6 GSN - GSN

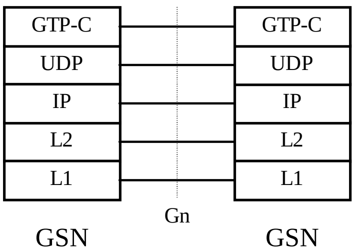


Figure ~~11~~13: Control Plane GSN - GSN

Legend:

- GPRS Tunnelling Protocol for the control plane (GTP-C): This protocol tunnels signalling messages between SGSNs and GGSNs, and between SGSNs, in the backbone network.

- User Datagram Protocol (UDP): This protocol transfers signalling messages between GSNs. UDP is defined in RFC 768.

5.6.3.7 GGSN - HLR

This optional signalling path allows a GGSN to exchange signalling information with an HLR. There are two alternative ways to implement this signalling path:

- If a SS7 interface is installed in the GGSN, the MAP protocol can be used between the GGSN and an HLR.
- If a SS7 interface is not installed in the GGSN, any GSN with a SS7 interface installed in the same PLMN as the GGSN can be used as a GTP-to-MAP protocol converter to allow signalling between the GGSN and an HLR.

5.6.3.7.1 MAP-based GGSN - HLR Signalling

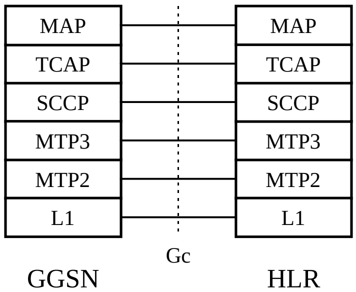


Figure ~~12~~14: Control Plane GGSN - HLR Using MAP

Legend:

- Mobile Application Part (MAP): This protocol supports signalling exchange with the HLR, as described in subclause "Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure".

5.6.3.7.2 GTP and MAP-based GGSN - HLR Signalling

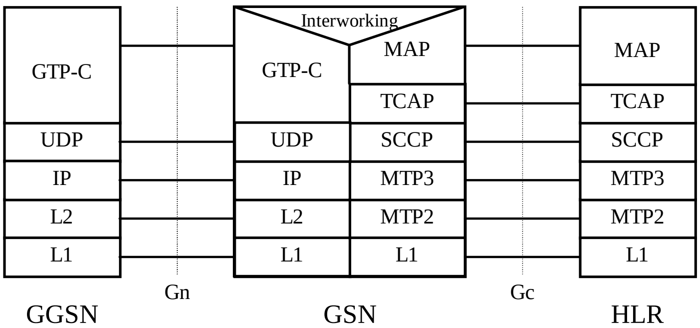


Figure ~~13~~15: Control Plane GGSN - HLR Using GTP and MAP

Legend:

- GPRS Tunnelling Protocol for the control plane (GTP-C): This protocol tunnels signalling messages between the GGSN and the protocol-converting GSN in the backbone network.
- Interworking: This function provides interworking between GTP and MAP for GGSN - HLR signalling.

3GPP TSG-SA meeting ad-hoc meeting ***Document* S2G99034**

Helsinki, 5-7 October 1999

3G CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060 CR 037r 1 Current Version: 3.1.0 draft 2

3G specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by 3G support team*

For submision to TSG SA#5 for approval [X] for information [ ] *(only one box should be marked with an X)*

list TSG meeting no. here ↑

Form: 3G CR cover sheet, version 1.0 The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/3GCRF-xx.rtf

Proposed change affects: USIM [X] ME [X] UTRAN [ ] Core Network [X]

(at least one should be marked with an X)

Source:	23.060 drafting meeting
Date:	5/10/1999
Subject:	Interactions between 3G-SGSN and MSC/VLR for UMTS
3G Work item:	

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	
A	Corresponds to a correction in a 2G specification	
B	Addition of feature	
C	Functional modification of feature	
D	Editorial modification	X

Reason for change: The CR proposes text for interactions between 3G-SGSN and MSC/VLR for UMTS.

Clauses affected: Chapter 6.4 is modified.

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
Other 2G core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

6.4 Interactions Between SGSN and MSC/VLR

The interactions described in this subclause shall be supported if the optional Gs interface is installed.

An association is created between SGSN and MSC/VLR to provide for interactions between SGSN and MSC/VLR. The association is created when the VLR stores the SGSN number and the SGSN stores the VLR number. The association is used for co-ordinating MSs that are both ~~G~~P~~R~~S-attached and C~~IM~~S~~I~~-attached.

The association supports the following actions:

- C~~IM~~S~~I~~ attach and detach via SGSN. This makes combined ~~G~~P~~R~~S / C~~IM~~S~~I~~ attach and combined ~~G~~P~~R~~S / C~~IM~~S~~I~~ detach possible, thus saving radio resources.
- Co-ordination of LA update and RA update, including periodic updates, thus saving radio resources. A combined RA / LA update is sent from the MS to the SGSN. SGSN forwards the LA update to the VLR.
- Paging for a CS connection via the SGSN~~(GPRS only)~~.
- Alert procedures for non-~~G~~P~~R~~S services.
- Identification procedure.
- MM Information procedure.

6.3.1 Administration of the SGSN - MSC/VLR Association

The SGSN - MSC/VLR association is created at the following occasions:

- Combined C~~IM~~S~~I~~ / ~~G~~P~~R~~S attach.
- ~~G~~P~~R~~S attach when the MS is already C~~IM~~S~~I~~-attached.
- Combined RA / LA update when the MS performs C~~IM~~S~~I~~ attach and is already ~~G~~P~~R~~S-attached.

  Combined RA / LA update when an C~~IM~~S~~I~~ and ~~G~~P~~R~~S-attached MS changes from an area of network operation mode II or III to an area of network operation mode I.

The association is initiated by the SGSN. The SGSN creates an association by sending a BSSAP+ message concerning a particular MS to the VLR. To get the VLR number, the SGSN translates the current RAI to a VLR number via a translation table. During a CS connection, an MS in class-B mode of operation (in GPRS only) cannot perform ~~G~~P~~R~~S attach nor routeing area updates, only MSs in class-A mode of operation can perform these procedures. If a ~~G~~P~~R~~S attach was made during a CS connection, the association shall be initiated by a combined RA / LA update after the CS connection has been released.

The association is updated on the following occasions:

- When an MS changes VLR.
- When an MS changes SGSN.

The association is not updated during a CS connection.

When the MS is in idle mode (see GSM 03.22), the association is updated with the combined RA / LA updates procedure.

In relation with a CS connection, the association is managed in the following way:

MS in class-A or CS/PS mode of operation:

An MS in class-A or CS/PS mode of operation makes RA updates but no combined RA / LA updates during the CS connection. In the case when the MS changes SGSN, the SGSN (according to normal RA update procedures, see subclause "Inter SGSN Routeing Area Update") updates the HLR and the GGSN, but not the VLR, about the new SGSN number.

In the case when the MS changes MSC during the CS connection, the subscriber data still remains in the old VLR until the CS connection is released and a combined RA / LA update or LA update is made. The association is also not updated during the CS connection.

After the CS connection has been released, a combined RA / LA update is performed (if there has been a change of RA, or if a ~~G~~P~~R~~S attach was performed and the new cell indicates network operation mode I, and the association is updated according to combined RA / LA update procedures, see subclause "Combined RA / LA Update Procedure". If the new cell indicates network operation mode II or III, then the MS performs an LA update.

MS in class-B mode of operation (GPRS only):

An MS in class-B mode of operation does not make any RA updates during a CS connection. The SGSN number therefore remains the same during the CS connection and needs not be updated in the VLR. In the case when the MS changes MSC during the CS connection, the subscriber data still remains in the old VLR until the CS connection has been released and a combined RA / LA update or LA update is made. Therefore, the VLR number remains the same during the CS connection. After the CS connection has been released, the MS shall perform an RA update and an LA update if the RA has changed and the new cell indicates network operation mode II or III, or a combined RA / LA update if the RA has changed and the new cell indicates network operation mode I. The association is updated according to the combined RA / LA update procedures, see subclauses "Inter SGSN Routeing Area Update" and "Combined RA / LA Update Procedure".

The SGSN - MSC/VLR association is removed at the following occasions:

- At IMSI detach.
- At GPRS detach.

When the MSC/VLR receives an LA update via the A or Iu interface from an MS for which an association exists, then the MSC/VLR shall remove the association without notifying the SGSN. When the SGSN receives a (non-combined) RA update from an MS for which an association exists, then the SGSN shall remove the association without notifying the MSC/VLR. When the MSC/VLR receives a BSSAP+ MS Unreachable message from the SGSN indicating that PPF is cleared, then the state of the association shall not be changed at the MSC/VLR.

6.3.2 Combined RA / LA Updating

When the MS is both C~~IM~~SI and ~~G~~P~~R~~S-attached, the LA and RA updating is done in a co-ordinated way to save radio resources if supported by the network operation mode. When the MS enters a new RA in network operation mode I, then the MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request message to the SGSN, as described in subclause "Combined RA / LA Update Procedure". The LA update is included in the RA update. The SGSN then forwards the LA update to the MSC/VLR. The MSC/VLR optionally returns a new VLR TMSI that is sent to the MS via the SGSN.

An MS in class-A mode of operation involved in a CS connection makes only RA updates and no combined RA / LA updates to the SGSN.

An MS in class-B mode of operation involved in a CS connection does not make any updates during the CS connection.

An MS in class-C mode of operation never makes combined RA / LA updates.

6.3.3 CS Paging for GPRS ~~(GPRS only)~~

When an MS is both IMSI and GPRS-attached in a network that operates in mode I, then the MSC/VLR executes paging for circuit-switched services via the SGSN. If the MS is in STANDBY state, then it is paged in the routeing area and in the null routeing area (see subclause "Routeing Area Identity "). If the MS is in READY state, then it is paged in the cell. The paging procedure is supervised in the MSC by a paging timer. The SGSN converts the MSC paging message into an SGSN paging message.

The CS Paging procedure is illustrated in Figure 1. Each step is explained in the following list.

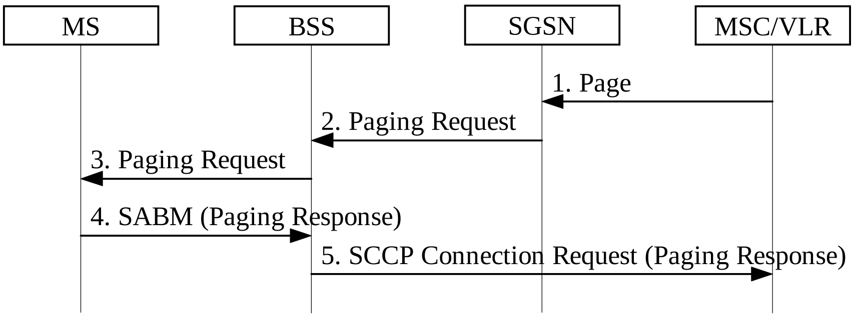


Figure 1: CS Paging Procedure

1) The SGSN receives a Page (IMSI, VLR TMSI, Channel Needed, Priority, Location Information) message from the MSC. Channel Needed is defined in GSM 08.08 [18] and indicates to the MS which type of CS channel is needed to be requested in the response. VLR TMSI and Channel Needed are optional parameters. Priority is the circuit-switched paging priority parameter as defined in GSM 08.08. The SGSN maps Priority to QoS.

2) The SGSN sends a BSSGP Paging Request (IMSI, TLLI, VLR TMSI, Area, Channel Needed, QoS) message to the BSS serving the MS. Area is derived from either the MS's MM context in the SGSN or, if no such information is available, from the Location Information received from the MSC/VLR. Area indicates a single cell for a READY state MS or a routeing area for a STANDBY state MS. VLR TMSI and Channel Needed are included if received from the MSC. If Channel Needed was not received from the MSC, then a default Channel Needed parameter indicating circuit-switched paging is included by the SGSN. QoS indicates the priority of this Paging Request relative to other Paging Request messages buffered in the BSS. If the location area where the MS was last known to be located has an associated null routeing area, then the SGSN shall send an additional BSSGP Paging Request message to each BSS serving this null RA.

3) The BSS translates the incoming BSSGP Paging Request message into one radio Paging Request message per cell. If a dedicated radio resource is assigned to the MS in a cell, then the BSS transmits one Paging Request (VLR TMSI or IMSI, Channel Needed) message on this radio resource, without stopping possibly ongoing data transfers for the MS. Otherwise, the BSS pages the MS with one Paging Request (VLR TMSI or IMSI, Channel Needed) message on the appropriate paging channel in each addressed cell. This is described in GSM 03.64.

4) Upon receipt of a Paging Request message for a circuit-switched service the MS may accept to respond to this request and shall then follow the CS procedures for paging response (random access, immediate assignment, and paging response) as specified in GSM 04.08 [13].

5) When received at the BSS, the Paging Response message is sent to the MSC which shall then stop the paging response timer.

6.3.3.1 Paging Co-ordination for GPRS

The network may provide co-ordination of paging for circuit-switched and packet-switched services. Paging co-ordination means that the network sends paging messages for circuit-switched services on the same channel as used for packet-switched services, i.e., on the GPRS paging channel or on the GPRS traffic channel, and the MS needs only to monitor that channel. Three network operation modes are defined:

- Network operation mode I: the network sends a CS paging message for a GPRS-attached MS, either on the same channel as the GPRS paging channel (i.e., the packet paging channel or the CCCH paging channel), or on a GPRS traffic channel. This means that the MS needs only to monitor one paging channel, and that it receives CS paging messages on the packet data channel when it has been assigned a packet data channel.

- Network operation mode II: the network sends a CS paging message for a GPRS-attached MS on the CCCH paging channel, and this channel is also used for GPRS paging. This means that the MS needs only to monitor the CCCH paging channel, but that CS paging continues on this paging channel even if the MS has been assigned a packet data channel.

- Network operation mode III: the network sends a CS paging message for a GPRS-attached MS on the CCCH paging channel, and sends a GPRS paging message on either the packet paging channel (if allocated in the cell) or on the CCCH paging channel. This means that an MS that wants to receive pages for both circuit-switched and packet-switched services shall monitor both paging channels if the packet paging channel is allocated in the cell. No paging co-ordination is performed by the network.

Table 1: Network Operation Modes for GPRS

Mode	Circuit Paging Channel	GPRS Paging Channel	Paging co-ordination
I	Packet Paging Channel	Packet Paging Channel	Yes
	CCCH Paging Channel	CCCH Paging Channel	
	Packet Data Channel	Not Applicable	
II	CCCH Paging Channel	CCCH Paging Channel	No
III	CCCH Paging Channel	Packet Paging Channel	No
	CCCH Paging Channel	CCCH Paging Channel	

When the Gs interface is present, all MSC-originated paging of GPRS-attached MSs shall go via the SGSN, thus allowing network co-ordination of paging. Paging co-ordination shall be made by the SGSN based on the IMSI, and is provided independently of whether the MS is in STANDBY or in READY state. The network operates in mode I.

When the Gs interface is not present, all MSC-originated paging of GPRS-attached MSs shall go via the A interface, and co-ordination of paging cannot be performed. The network shall then either:

- operate in mode II, meaning that the packet common control channel shall not be allocated in the cell; or

- operate in mode III, meaning that the packet common control channel shall be used for GPRS paging when the packet paging channel is allocated in the cell.

The network operation mode (mode I, II, or III) shall be indicated as system information to MSs. For proper operation, the mode of operation should be the same in each cell of a routeing area.

Based on the mode of operation provided by the network, the MS can then choose, according to its capabilities, whether it can attach to GPRS services, to non-GPRS services, or to both.

6.3.4 CS Paging ~~Co-ordination~~ for UMTS

~~A CN node requests paging only for a UE in CSCMM-IDLE state or PSPMM-IDLE state. In the separate CN architecture, paging from a CN node is done independently from the state of the UE in the other CN service domain.~~

~~In this alternative with paging co-ordination in UTRAN, the UE does not need to listen to the PCH in RRC connected mode (at least not when the UE is allocated a dedicated channel.)~~

~~For each paging request received from a CN node, the RNC checks whether the UE has an established RRC connection or not. For this, the context that is build up in the SRNC for a UE in RRC connected mode must contain the IMSI, i.e., the UE identity common to the two CN domains.~~

~~If no context is found for the UE, then normal PCH paging is performed. This implies transfer on the paging channel of a paging message indicating the UE paging identity received from the CN and a CN service domain type indication.~~

~~If a context is found, then a CN paging message is transferred using the existing RRC connection. This message indicates the UE paging identity received from the CN and a CN service domain type indication.~~

~~NOTE: The RNC may use another identity e.g., TMSI, P-TMSI, or an other radio related identity, to page the UE.~~

When a MS is both CS and PS-attached in a network that operates in mode I, then the MSC/VLR executes paging for circuit-switched services via the SGSN. Paging is defined in subclause "Paging Initiated by CN".

6.3.4.1 Network Operation Modes for UMTS

The network operation mode is used to indicate whether the Gs interface is installed or not. When the Gs interface is present, MT can initiate combine procedures.

Table 2: Network Operation Modes for UMTS

Mode	Network configuration	Combined procedure by MT
I	Gs interface is present	Yes
II	Gs interface is not present	No

The network operation mode (mode I or II) shall be indicated as system information to the UEs. For proper operation, the mode of operation should be the same in each cell of a routeing area.

Based on the mode of operation provided by the network, the UE can then choose, according to its capabilities, whether it can attach to CS domain services, to PS domain services, or to both. Furthermore, based on the mode of operation, the MS can choose whether it can initiate combine update procedures or separate update procedures, according to its capabilities.

NOTE: Network operation modes I and II for UMTS correspond to modes I and II, respectively, for GPRS. Mode III applies to GPRS and not to UMTS.

6.3.5 Non-~~G~~P~~R~~S Alert

The MSC/VLR may request an SGSN to report activity from a specific MS. In this case, the MSC/VLR shall send a BSSAP+ Alert Request (IMSI) message to the SGSN where the MS is currently ~~G~~P~~R~~S-attached.

Upon reception of the Alert Request (IMSI) message, the SGSN shall set NGAF. If NGAF is set for an MS, the SGSN shall inform the MSC/VLR when the next activity from that MS (and the MS is both IMSI- and GPRS-attached) is detected, and shall clear NGAF.

If the activity detected by the SGSN leads to a procedure towards the MSC/VLR, the SGSN shall just follow this procedure. If the activity detected by the SGSN does not lead to any procedure towards the MSC/VLR, the SGSN shall send an MS Activity Indication (IMSI) message towards the MSC/VLR.

6.3.6 MS Information Procedure

When the MS is marked at the VLR as both C~~IM~~S~~I~~ and ~~G~~P~~R~~S attached, the VLR may perform the MS Information procedure via the SGSN. If the information requested by the VLR in the MS Information procedure is known by the SGSN, then the SGSN shall return this information to the VLR without interrogating the MS.

If the information requested is MS identity information (e.g., IMEI) that is not known by the SGSN but is known by the MS, then the SGSN shall interrogate the MS in a similar manner to that described in subclause "Identity Check Procedures".

The MS Information procedure is illustrated in Figure 2. Each step is explained in the following list.

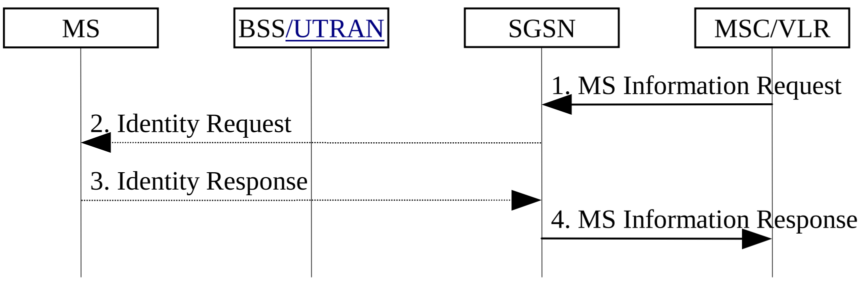


Figure 2: MS Information Procedure

1) The MSC/VLR sends an MS Information Request (IMSI, Information Type) message to the SGSN. Information Type indicates the information that the MSC/VLR is requesting for that IMSI.

2) If the information requested is not known by the SGSN but should be known by the MS, then the SGSN interrogates the MS in a similar manner to that described in the subclause "Identity Check Procedures". The SGSN sends an Identity Request (Identity Type) message to the MS.

3) The MS responds with an Identity Response (Mobile Identity) message to the SGSN.

4) The SGSN sends an MS Information Response (IMSI, Information) message to the MSC/VLR. Information contains the information requested by the MSC/VLR.

6.3.7 MM Information Procedure

When the MS is marked at the VLR as both C~~IM~~S~~I~~ and ~~G~~P~~R~~S attached, the VLR may perform the MM Information procedure via the SGSN. The MM Information procedure is typically used to inform the MS about such things as the network name and the local timezone of the mobile.

The MM Information procedure is illustrated in Figure 3. Each step is explained in the following list.

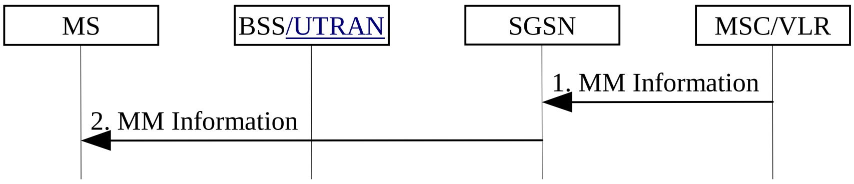


Figure 3: MM Information Procedure

1) The SGSN receives an MM Information (IMSI, Information) message from the MSC/VLR. Information is the information that the MSC/VLR is sending to the MS.

2) The SGSN sends an MM Information (Information) message to the MS including the information received by the MSC/VLR.

3GPP TSG-SA WG2 ad-hoc meeting ***Document S2G99038***
Helsinki, 5-7 October 1999

3G CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	**CR**	**036r1**	Current Version:	3.1.0 draft 2

3G specification number ↑   *↑ CR number as allocated by 3G support team*

For submision to TSG	SA#5	for approval	X	*(only one box should*
list TSG meeting no. here ↑		for information		*be marked with an X)*

Form: 3G CR cover sheet, version 1.0 *The latest version of this form is available from:* ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/3GCRF-xx.rtf

Proposed change affects: USIM [ ] ME [X] UTRAN [X] Core Network [X]
(at least one should be marked with an X)

Source: Nokia **Date:** 30/09/1999

Subject: CR to chapters 6.6.

3G Work item:

Category:
(only one category shall be marked with an X)

F	Correction	
A	Corresponds to a correction in a 2G specification	
B	Addition of feature	X
C	Functional modification of feature	
D	Editorial modification	

Reason for change: UMTS parts included into chapters 6.6.

Clauses affected: 6.6 and 6.7

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
Other 2G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

6.6 Detach Function

The PS Detach procedure allows:

- an MS to inform the network that it does not want access to the SGSN-based services any longer; and,
- the network to inform an MS that it does not have access to the SGSN-based services any more.

~~For GPRS, the Detach function allows an MS to inform the network that it wants to make a GPRS and/or IMSI detach, and it allows the network to inform an MS that it has been GPRS-detached or CS-detached by the network.~~

~~For UMTS, t~~The Detach function allows an MS to inform the network that it wants to make a PS and/or ~~IMSI~~CS detach, and it allows the network to inform an MS that it has been PS-detached or~~and~~ ~~IMSI~~CS-detached by the network. ~~[FFS: It is assumed that a~~ IMSI ~~only detach in UMTS is performed directely between the MS and the MSC/VLR, and that this therefore is outside the scope of this specification.]~~

The different types of detach are:

- ~~IMSI~~CS detach ~~(GPRS only)~~;
- PS detach; and
- combined PS / CS~~IMSI~~ detach (MS-initiated only).

The MS is detached either explicitly or implicitly:

- Explicit detach: The network or the MS explicitly requests detach.
- Implicit detach: The network detaches the MS, without notifying the MS, a configuration-dependent time after the mobile reachable timer expired, or after an irrecoverable radio error causes disconnection of the logical link.

In the explicit detach case, a Detach Request (Cause) is sent by the SGSN to the MS, or by the MS to the SGSN.

The MS can make an ~~IMSI~~CS detach in one of two ways depending on if it is ~~GPRS~~PS-attached or not:

- A ~~GPRS~~PS-attached MS sends a Detach Request message to the SGSN, indicating an ~~IMSI~~CS detach. This can be made in combination with ~~GPRS~~PS detach.
- An MS that is not ~~GPRS~~PS-attached makes the ~~IMSI~~CS detach as already defined in GSM or UMTS.

In the MO Detach Request message there is an indication to tell if the detach is due to switch off or not. The indication is needed to know whether a Detach Accept message should be returned or not.

In the network-originated Detach Request message there may be an indication to tell the MS that it is requested to initiate PS Attach and PDP Context Activation procedures for the previously activated PDP contexts.

6.6.1 MS-Initiated Detach Procedure

The MS-Initiated Detach procedure when initiated by the MS is illustrated in Figure 1. Each step is explained in the following list.

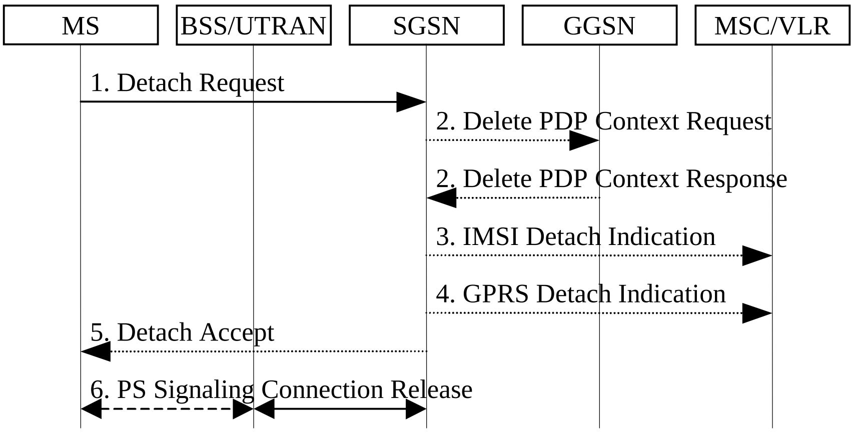


Figure 1: MS-Initiated Combined PS / ~~IMSI~~CS Detach Procedure

1) The MS detaches by sending Detach Request (Detach Type, P-TMSI, P-TMSI signature, Switch Off) to the SGSN. Detach Type indicates which type of detach that is to be performed, i.e., PS Detach only, ~~IMSI~~CS Detach only or combined PS and ~~IMSI~~CS Detach. Switch Off indicates whether the detach is due to a switch off situation or not In UMTS, Detach Request includes P-TMSI and P-TMSI signature. P-TMSI signature is used to check the validity of the Detach Request message. If the P-TMSI signature is not valid or is not included, authentication procedure should be performed.

2) If PS detach, the active PDP contexts in the GGSNs regarding this particular MS are deactivated by the SGSN sending Delete PDP Context Request (TEID~~ID~~) to the GGSNs. The GGSNs acknowledge with Delete PDP Context Response (TEID).

3) If ~~IMSI~~CS detach, the SGSN sends ~~IMSI~~CS Detach Indication (IMSI) to the VLR.

4) If the MS wants to remain ~~IMSI~~CS-attached and is doing a PS detach, the SGSN sends a PS Detach Indication (IMSI) message to the VLR. The VLR removes the association with the SGSN and handles paging and location update without going via the SGSN.

5) If Switch Off indicates that the detach is not due to a switch off situation, the SGSN sends a Detach Accept to the MS.

6) ~~[6) FFS. Add this after sending the detach accept: T~~If the MS was PS detached, then the 3G-SGSN releases the ~~Iu~~PS signaling connection. ~~is released3G-SGSN sends an Iu Release Command message to the~~ .~~RNC.]~~

6.6.2 Network-Initiated Detach Procedure

6.6.2.1 SGSN-Initiated Detach Procedure

The SGSN-Initiated Detach procedure when initiated by the SGSN is illustrated in Figure 2. Each step is explained in the following list.

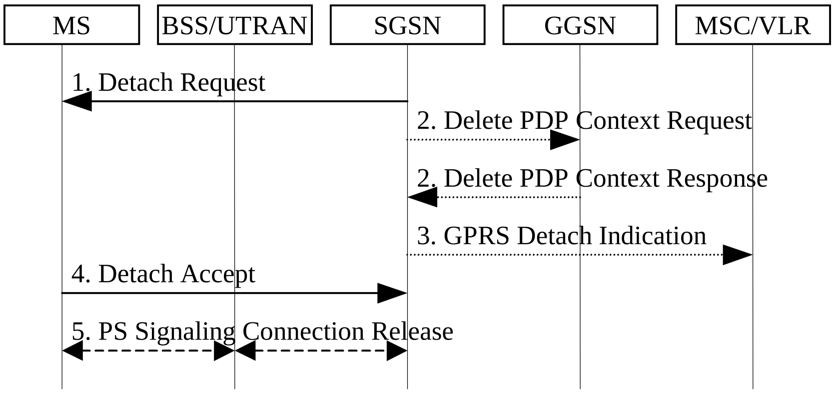


Figure 2: SGSN-Initiated PS Detach Procedure

1) The SGSN informs the MS that it has been detached by sending Detach Request (Detach Type) to the MS. Detach Type indicates if the MS is requested to make a new attach and PDP context activation for the previously activated PDP contexts. If so, the attach procedure shall be initiated when the detach procedure is completed.

2) The active PDP contexts in the GGSNs regarding this particular MS are deactivated by the SGSN sending Delete PDP Context Request (TEID) messages to the GGSNs. The GGSNs acknowledge with Delete PDP Context Response (TEID) messages.

3) If the MS was both ~~IMSI~~CS- and PS-attached, the SGSN sends a PS Detach Indication (IMSI) message to the VLR. The VLR removes the association with the SGSN and handles paging and location update without going via the SGSN.

4) The MS sends a Detach Accept message to the SGSN any time after step 1.

~~[~~5) ~~FFS. Add this a~~After receiving the Detach Accept~~:~~, i~~I~~f Detach Type did not request the MS to make a new attach, then the 3G-SGSN releases the PS signaling connection.~~ sends an Iu Release Command message to the RNC.]~~

6.6.2.2 HLR-Initiated Detach Procedure

The HLR-Initiated Detach procedure is initiated by the HLR. The HLR uses this procedure for operator-determined purposes to request the removal of a subscriber’s MM and PDP contexts at the SGSN. The HLR-Initiated Detach Procedure is illustrated in Figure 3. Each step is explained in the following list.

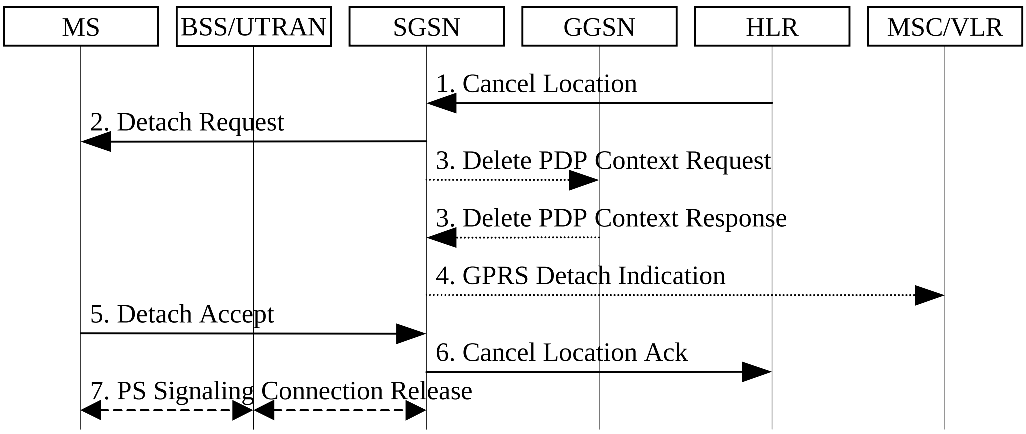


Figure 3: HLR-Initiated PS Detach Procedure

1) If the HLR wants to request the immediate deletion of a subscriber's MM and PDP contexts from the SGSN, the HLR shall send a Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) message to the SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Subscription Withdrawn.

2) The SGSN informs the MS that it has been detached by sending Detach Request (Detach Type) to the MS. Detach Type shall indicate that the MS is not requested to make a new attach and PDP context activation.

3) The active PDP contexts in the GGSNs regarding this particular MS are deactivated by the SGSN sending Delete PDP Context Request (TEID) messages to the GGSNs. The GGSNs acknowledge with Delete PDP Context Response (TEID) messages.

4) If the MS was both ~~IMSI~~CS- and PS-attached, the SGSN sends a PS Detach Indication (IMSI) message to the VLR. The VLR removes the association with the SGSN and handles paging and location update without going via the SGSN.

5) The MS sends a Detach Accept message to the SGSN any time after step 2.

~~[6) FFS. Add this after receiving the Detach Accept: If Detach Type did not request the MS to make a new attach, then the 3G-SGSN sends an Iu Release Command message to the RNC.]~~

6) ~~6)~~ The SGSN shall confirm the deletion of the MM and PDP contexts with a Cancel Location Ack (IMSI) message.

7) After receiving the Detach Accept, if the Detach Type did not request the MS to make a new attach, then the 3G-SGSN releases the PS signaling connection.

3GPP TSG-SA meeting 23.060 ad-hoc ***Document*** ***S2G99040***
Helsinki, 5-7 October 1999

3G CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	**CR**	**031 rev1**		Current Version:	3.1.0 draft 2

3G specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by 3G support team*

For submision to TSG	SA#5	for approval	X	*(only one box should*
list TSG meeting no. here ↑		for information		*be marked with an X)*

Form: 3G CR cover sheet, version 1.0 *The latest version of this form is available from:* ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/3GCRF-xx.rtf

Proposed change affects: USIM X ME X UTRAN X Core Network X
(at least one should be marked with an X)

Source: Nokia **Date:** 27.09.99

Subject: Introduction of UMTS security

3G Work item:

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	
A	Corresponds to a correction in a 2G specification	
B	Addition of feature	X
C	Functional modification of feature	
D	Editorial modification	

Reason for change: The UMTS security was not describe yet in 23.060. This contribution propose to add it. This contribution attempts to provide enough information for general understanding without duplicating too much information from 3GPP TS33.102. Note that 3GPP TS 33.102 is the specification fully describing security features.

Clauses affected: Chapter 3.2 (abbreviation) and 6.8 (security) except 6.8.1 are modified

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
Other 2G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

3.2 Abbreviations

For the purposes of the present document the following abbreviations apply. Additional applicable abbreviations can be found in GSM 01.04 [1].

[…]

AUTN Authentication Token

CK Cipher Key for UMTS

GEA GPRS Encryption Algorithm

IK Integrity Key

KSI Key set Identifier

UEA UMTS Encryption Algorithm

UIA UMTS Integrity Algorithm

[…]

6.8 Security Function

~~[Significant changes are needed to this section in order to introduce the new UMTS security enhancement. It should also be decided if these new enhancement (e.g integrity check) are applicable to GPRS or not.]~~

Security-related network functions are described in GSM 03.20 [6] for GPRS and in 3GPP TS 33.102 for UMTS.

The Security function:

- Guards against unauthorised packet domain~~GPRS~~ service usage (authentication and service request validation).
- Provides user identity confidentiality (temporary identification and ciphering).
- Provides user data and signalling confidentiality (ciphering).
- Provides for UMTS only, data integrity and origin authentication of signalling data (integrity protection)
- Provides for UMTS only, authentication of the network by the MS

[…]

6.8.2 User Identity Confidentiality

6.8.2.1 User Identity confidentiality for GPRS

A Temporary Logical Link Identity (TLLI) identifies a GPRS user. The relationship between TLLI and IMSI is known only in the MS and in the SGSN. TLLI is derived from the P-TMSI allocated by the SGSN or built by the MS as described in subclause "NSAPI and TLLI".

6.8.2.2 User Identity confidentiality for UMTS

A Radio Network Temporary Identity (RNTI) identifies a UMTS user between UTRAN and MS. The relationship between RNTI and IMSI is known only in the MS and in the UTRAN. A P-TMSI identifies a UMTS user between SGSN and MS. The relationship between P-TMSI and IMSI is known only in the MS and in the SGSN.

~~The SGSN may reallocate the P-TMSI at any time when the MS is in READY state. The reallocation procedure can be performed by the P-TMSI Reallocation procedure, or it can be included in the Attach or Routeing Area Update procedures.~~

6.8.2.3~~1~~ P-TMSI Signature

P-TMSI Signature is optionally sent by the SGSN to the MS in Attach Accept and Routeing Area Update Accept messages. If the P-TMSI Signature has been sent by the SGSN to the MS since the current P-TMSI was allocated, then the MS shall include the P-TMSI Signature in the next Routeing Area Update Request, Detach Request, Service Request and Attach Request for identification checking purposes. If the PTMSI signature was sent,~~n the Attach and Routeing Area Update procedures,~~ the SGSN shall compare the P-TMSI Signature sent by the MS with the signature stored in the SGSN. If the values do not match, the SGSN should use the security functions to authenticate the MS. If the values match or if the P-TMSI Signature is missing, the SGSN may use the security functions to authenticate the MS. The P-TMSI Signature parameter has only local significance in the SGSN that allocated the signature.

If ciphering is supported by the network, the SGSN shall send the P-TMSI Signature ciphered to the MS. Routeing Area Update Request and Attach Request, into which the MS includes the P-TMSI Signature, are not ciphered.

6.8.2.2 P-TMSI Reallocation Procedure

The SGSN may reallocate the P-TMSI at any time. The reallocation procedure can be performed by the P-TMSI Reallocation procedure, or it can be included in the Attach or Routeing Area Update procedures.

The P-TMSI Reallocation procedure is illustrated in Figure 1. Each step is explained in the following list.

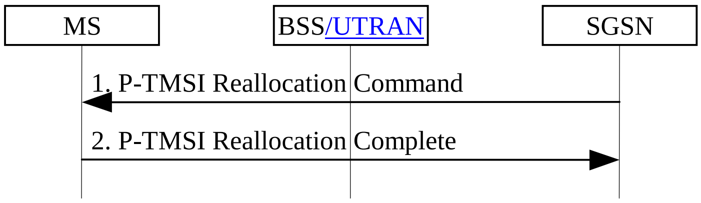


Figure 1: P-TMSI Reallocation Procedure

1) The SGSN sends a P-TMSI Reallocation Command (new P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, RAI) message to the MS. P-TMSI Signature is an optional parameter that the MS, if received, shall return to the SGSN in the next Attach and Routeing Area Update procedures.

2) The MS returns a P-TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the SGSN.

6.8.3 User Data and GMM/SM Signalling Confidentiality

6.8.3.1 Scope of Ciphering

~~In contrast to the scope of ciphering in existing GSM (a single logical channel between BTS and MS), t~~The scope of GPRS ciphering is from the ciphering function at the SGSN to the ciphering function in the MS.

Ciphering is done in the LLC layer, and from the perspective of the existing GSM MS-BTS radio path, an LLC PDU is transmitted as plain text.

The scope of UMTS ciphering is from the ciphering function at the UTRAN to the ciphering function in the MS.

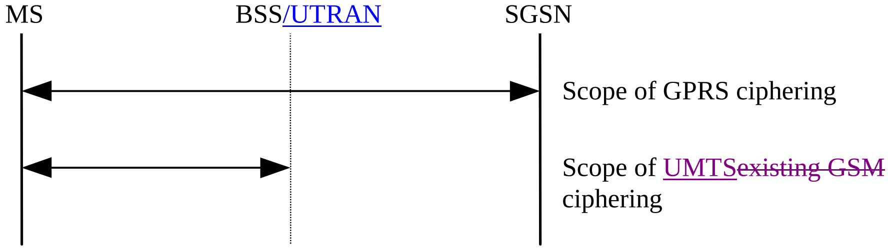


Figure 2: Scope of GPRS Ciphering

6.8.3.2 ~~GPRS~~ Ciphering Algorithm

~~A ciphering algorithm to be used for GPRS ciphering shall be selected. A new ciphering algorithm may be designed.~~ GSM 01.61 [2] contains the requirements for the GPRS Encryption Algorithm~~ciphering algorithm~~ (GEA). The GPRS ciphering Key Kc is an input of the algorithm.~~The TDMA frame number is not known at the SGSN. Therefore, a Logical Link Control frame number may replace the TDMA frame number as an input to the algorithm.~~

The standard key management procedures for the Kc shall be used.

UMTS ciphering is made with the UMTS Encryption Algorithm (UEA). The UMTS Ciphering Key CK is an input of the algorithm.

6.8.3.3 Start of ciphering

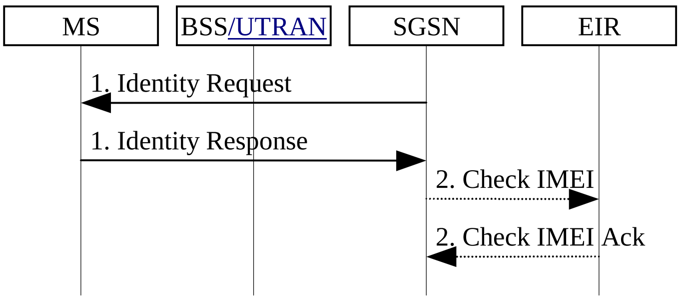
In GPRS, the MS starts ciphering after sending the Authentication and Ciphering Response message. The SGSN starts ciphering when a valid Authentication and Ciphering Response is received from the MS. In the routeing area update case, if ciphering was used before the routeing area update, and if the Authentication procedure is omitted, then the SGSN shall resume ciphering with the same algorithm when a ciphered Routeing Area Update Accept message is sent, and the MS shall resume ciphering when a ciphered Routeing Area Update Accept message is received.

In UMTS, the start of ciphering is controlled by the security mode procedure as described in 3GPP TS 33.102.

6.8.4 Identity Check Procedures

~~MS identity check procedures already defined in GSM shall be used, with the distinction that the procedures are executed from the SGSN.~~

The Identity Check procedure is illustrated in **Error! Reference source not found.**. Each step is explained in the following list.



Error! Reference source not found.**: Identity Check Procedure**

1) ~~1)~~ The SGSN sends Identity Request (Identity Type) to the MS. The MS responds with Identity Response (Mobile Identity). In UMTS, the MS may choose to send its IMSI encrypted (FFS).

2) ~~2)~~ If the SGSN decides to check the IMEI against the EIR, it sends Check IMEI (IMEI) to EIR. The EIR responds with Check IMEI Ack (IMEI).

6.8.4 Data integrity Procedure (UMTS only)

The Data integrity procedure is performed between MS and UTRAN. It is applicable only to radio signalling. UMTS integrity check is made with the UMTS Integrity Algorithm (UIA). The UMTS Integrity Key IK is an input of the algorithm. The start of data integrity procedure is controlled by the security mode procedure as described in 3GPP TS 33.102.

3GPP TSG-SA WG2 ***Document*** ***S2G99041***

Helsinki, Finland, 5- 7 October 1999

3G CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060 **CR** **030r1** Current Version: 3.0.0

3G specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by 3G support team*

For submision to TSG	SA#5	for approval	X	*(only one box should*
list TSG meeting no. here ↑		for information		*be marked with an X)*

Form: 3G CR cover sheet, version 1.0 *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/3GCRF-xx.rtf*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	USIM	X	ME	X	UTRAN	X	Core Network X

Source: Ericsson **Date:** 1999-10-06

Subject: Authentication and security keys agreement for support of GSM-UMTS Interoperability

3G Work item: Release '99 Stage 2

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	
A	Corresponds to a correction in a 2G specification	
B	Addition of feature	
C	Functional modification of feature	X
D	Editorial modification	

Reason for change:

Introduction of authentication procedure for UMTS subscriber in UMTS mode.
Introduction of authentication procedures for GSM subscriber in UMTS network and for UMTS subscriber in GSM network.

Clauses affected: 6.8

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
Other 2G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

6.8.1 Authentication

6.8.1.1 Authentication of GSM Subscriber in GSM system

Authentication procedures already defined in GSM shall be used, with the distinction that the procedures are executed from the SGSN. The GPRS Authentication procedure performs subscriber authentication, or selection of the ciphering algorithm and the synchronisation of the start of ciphering, or both. Authentication triplets are stored in the SGSN. The MSC/VLR shall not authenticate the MS via the SGSN upon IMSI attach, nor location update, but may authenticate the MS during CS connection establishment. Security-related network functions are described in GSM 03.20 [6].

The Authentication procedure of an GSM subscriber (GSM SIM) is illustrated in Figure 1. Each step is explained in the following list.

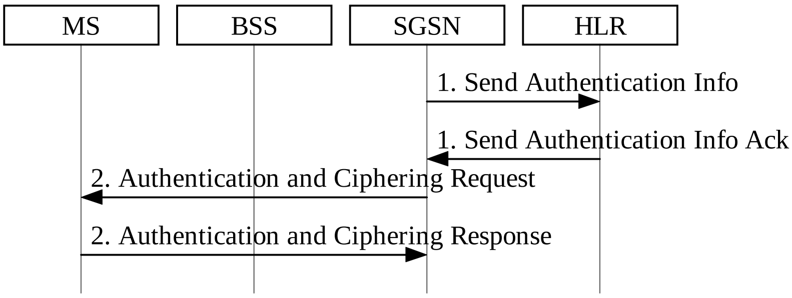


Figure 1: Authentication Procedure

1) If the SGSN does not have previously stored authentication triplets, a Send Authentication Info (IMSI) message is sent to the HLR. The HLR responds with a Send Authentication Info Ack (Authentication Triplets) message. Each Authentication Triplet includes RAND, SRES, and Kc.

2) The SGSN sends an Authentication and Ciphering Request (RAND, CKSN, Ciphering Algorithm) message to the MS. The MS responds with an Authentication and Ciphering Response (SRES) message.

The MS starts ciphering after sending the Authentication and Ciphering Response message. The SGSN starts ciphering when a valid Authentication and Ciphering Response is received from the MS. In the routeing area update case, if ciphering was used before the routeing area update, and if the Authentication procedure is omitted, then the SGSN shall resume ciphering with the same algorithm when a ciphered Routeing Area Update Accept message is sent, and the MS shall resume ciphering when a ciphered Routeing Area Update Accept message is received.

At change to UMTS system then the MS and the SGSN shall generate the UMTS security keys (IK and CK) from the GSM Kc by using standardised conversion funtions specified for this purpose in 3G TS 33.102. *Editors note:* conversion functions *to be defined by 3G TSG SA WG3.*

6.8.1.2 Authentication of UMTS Subscriber in UMTS system

The UMTS Authentication mechanism is described in 3G TS 33.102 [XX]. The UMTS authentication procedure executed from SGSN performs both the mutual authentication and security keys agreement. Authentication quintuplets are stored in the SGSN. The MSC/VLR shall not authenticate the MS via the SGSN upon CS attach, nor location update, but may authenticate the MS during CS connection establishment.

The UMTS Authentication procedure of an UMTS subscriber (USIM) is illustrated in Figure 1-1. Each step is explained in the following list.

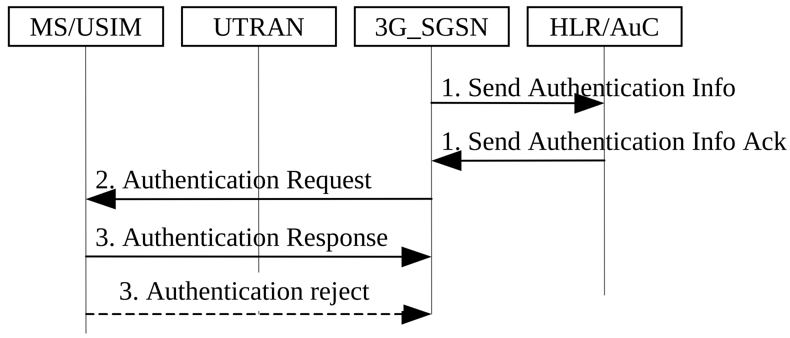


Figure 1-1: UMTS Authentication Procedure of UMTS subscriber

1) If the 3G_SGSN does not have previously stored UMTS Authentication Vectors (quintuplets), a UMTS Send Authentication Info (IMSI) message is sent to the HLR. Upon receipt of this message for a UMTS user, the HLR/AuC responds with a Send Authentication Info Ack including an ordered array of quintuplets to the 3G_SGSN Each Authentication quintuplet contains RAND, XRES, AUTN, CK and IK. The generation of quintuplets in HLR/AuC for UMTS user is performed as specified in 3G TS 33.102.

2) At authentication of an UMTS user, the 3G_SGSN selects the next in order quintuplet and transmits the RAND and AUTN, which belong to this quintuplet, to the MS in the Authentication request message. The 3G_SGSN also selects a key sequence number, KSN, and includes this in the message.

   At reception of this message, the USIM in the MS verifies the parameter AUTN and if accepted, the USIM computes the signature of RAND, RES, in accordance to 3G TS 33.102.

3) If the USIM considers the authentication being successful the MS sends then the Authentication response message including the signature RES to the 3G_SGSN. The USIM in the MS computes then also a new ciphering key, CK, and a new integrity key, IK. These keys are stored together with the KSN until it is updated at the next authentication.

   If the USIM considers the authentication being unsuccessful, i.e. in case of an authentication synchronisation failure, the MS sends the Authentication reject message to 3G_SGSN. The actions then taken are described in 3G TS 33.102.

At change to a SGSN that supports the UMTS authentication mechanism, the used IK and CK are sent from the old SGSN to the new SGSN. The unused quintuplets, if any, are then also transferred to the new SGSN.

At change to GSM system the USIM and the SGSN shall generate from the UMTS security keys (IK and CK) the GSM Kc by using standardised conversion function specified for this purpose in 3G TS 33.102. *Editors note:* conversion function *to be defined by 3G TSG SA WG3*

At change to a SGSN that does not support the UMTS authentication mechanism, the old 3G_SGSN should generate the GSM Kc as described above and transfer this to the new SGSN. This will then give support for a change of SGSN without the need for a new authentication. No quintuplet is transferred in this case.

6.8.1.3 Authentication of GSM Subscriber in UMTS system

GSM users roaming in UMTS network will be authenticated with the GSM Authentication mechanism.

The UMTS Authentication procedure of a GSM subscriber (GSM SIM) is illustrated in Figure 1-2. Each step is explained in the following list.

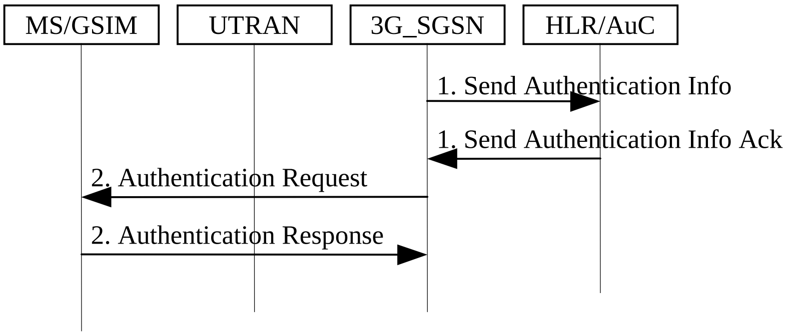


Figure 1-2: UMTS Authentication Procedure of GSM subscriber

1) If the 3G_SGSN does not have previously stored authentication parameters, a Send Authentication Info (IMSI) message is sent to the HLR. The HLR responds with a Send Authentication Info Ack (Authentication Triplets) message. Each Authentication Triplet includes RAND, SRES, and Kc.

2) At authentication in UMTS mode the 3G_SGSN will select an unused triplet and send, to the MS, the authentication request message including the RAND of the selected triplet. The GSM SIM will then calculate the SRES and the GSM Kc. The SRES is sent to the network in the authentication response message.

On the network side, the 3G_SGSN shall generate the UMTS CK and IK from the GSM Kc using the standardised conversion functions specified for this purpose in 3G TS 33.102.

On the MS side, the terminal shall generate the UMTS CK and IK from the GSM Kc using the standardised conversion functions specified for this purpose in 3G TS 33.102, i.e. the same algorithm as in 3G_SGSN.

At change of SGSN, the used Kc (i.e. the Kc of last used authentication triplet) is sent from the old 3G_SGSN to the new SGSN. The unused triplets, if any, are then also transferred to the new SGSN.

6.8.1.4 Authentication of UMTS Subscriber in GSM system

For Authentication of UMTS subscriber (USIM) in GSM system three cases are possible.

a) The SGSN supports the GSM authentication mechanism but not the UMTS authentication mechanism.

b) The SGSN supports both the GSM and UMTS authentication mechanisms but the terminal supports only the GSM authentication mechanism.

c) Both the SGSN and the terminal support the UMTS authentication mechanism. *Editors note: It is an open issue whether it shall be possible to make an UMTS authentication also in GSM release '99.*

Case a)

When the SGSN supports only the GSM authentication mechanism, then the authentication of an UMTS subscriber is performed using an Authentication triplet produced by HLR/AUC. The Authentication procedure of an UMTS subscriber by using a GSM Authentication triplet is performed in the same way as authentication of an GSM subscriber in GSM, see section 6.8.1.1. The necessary conversion functions that apply for HLR/AuC and USIM in this case are described in 3G TS 33.102.

A change to UMTS system will in this case require a new authentication using an UMTS Authentication quintuplet. *Editors note: The requirements for this system change case need to be clarified.*

Case b)

When the SGSN supports both the GSM and UMTS authentication mechanisms but the terminal supports only the GSM authentication mechanism, then the authentication of an UMTS subscriber shall be performed using an Authentication quintuplet produced by HLR/AuC. In this case the SGSN will derive a GSM triplet from a UMTS quintuplet originally produced by HLR/AuC. The Authentication procedure of the UMTS subscriber will then be performed in the same way as authentication of a GSM subscriber in GSM, see section 6.8.1.1. The necessary conversion functions that apply for SGSN and USIM in this case are described in 3G TS 33.102.

At change to a SGSN that supports the UMTS authentication mechanism, the IK and CK of last used quintuplet are sent from the old SGSN to the new SGSN. The unused quintuplets, if any, are then also transferred to the new SGSN.

At change to UMTS system the UMTS CK and IK from this last used authentication quintuplet shall be used.

At change to a SGSN that does not support the UMTS authentication mechanism, the used GSM Kc is transferred from the old SGSN to the new SGSN. This will then give support for a change of SGSN without the need for a new authentication. No quintuplet is transferred in this case.

Case c) FFS

3GPP TSG-SA meeting ***Document*** ***S2G99044***

Helsinki,Finland, 05-07. 10. 1999

3G CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23060 **CR** **022 rev1**

Current Version: 3.1.0 Draft2

3G specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by 3G support team*

For submision to TSG		for approval	X	*(only one box should*
list TSG meeting no. here ↑		for information		*be marked with an X)*

Form: 3G CR cover sheet, version 1.0 *The latest version of this form is available from:* ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/3GCRF-xx.rtf

Proposed change affects: USIM [ ] ME [ ] UTRAN [ ] Core Network [ ]
(at least one should be marked with an X)

Source:	NEC
Date:	07.10.1999
Subject:	changes in chapter 7,8 of 23.060
3G Work item:	

Category:

	F	Correction	
	A	Corresponds to a correction in a 2G specification	X
(only one category	B	Addition of feature	
shall be marked	C	Functional modification of feature	
with an X)	D	Editorial modification	

Reason for change:

Adaptation of 23.060 to UMTS;preparation of drafting session,
revised version of Tdoc S2G99006.

Base document changed from 23.060 draft ver.1 to draft ver.2.
Within the entire document, term "UE" replaced to "MS"
Within the entire document, term "GPRS and UMTS" replaced to "packet domain".
Within chapter 8.2.3.1 , RANAP parameter name "no searching indicator" fixed to "Non Searching Indication".
Within chapter 8.2.2 subchapter "RRC-Connected_mode", description "handover" replaced with "handover and cell-update" regarding the previous discussion.

Clauses affected:

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
Other 2G core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:	

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

7 Network Management Functionality

The Network Management function provides mechanisms to support O&M functions related to ~~GPRS~~packet domain.

8 Radio Resource Functionality

~~[Probably no need to add the UMTS radio resource functionality, except the UMTS PS paging procedure. Add a reference to the relevant UMTS radio specs.]~~

8.1 Radio Resource Functionality for GPRS

8.1.1 Cell Selection and Reselection for GPRS

An MS (in any mode of operation (A, B, or C)) cannot camp on more than one cell. This means that the cell selection and reselection procedure should choose cells that support services the user has subscribed to.

If the MS is in idle mode, see GSM 03.22, then it shall behave as described below:

When the MS is in GPRS IDLE state and wishes to initiate the GPRS Attach procedure, the following applies:

- If the currently camped-on cell supports GPRS then no cell reselection is required.
- If the currently camped-on cell does not support GPRS, then reselection of a cell supporting GPRS is required before execution of the attach procedure.

If the MS is in GPRS STANDBY or READY state, cell selection and reselection procedures specific to GPRS shall be used, see ~~GSM 03.22~~ TS.23.022.

The cell reselection procedure used in READY state shall minimise the cell changes.

If the MS is in dedicated mode, see ~~GSM 04.08~~ TS24.008, then the changes from one cell to another is performed according to the network-controlled handover procedures.

There may be co-ordination of the idle and dedicated mode procedures used for circuit-switched services with the READY state procedure for MSs that are both IMSI-attached and GPRS-attached.

8.1.2 Discontinuous Reception for GPRS

A GPRS MS may be able to choose if it wants to use discontinuous reception (DRX) or not. If using DRX, the MS shall also be able to specify other DRX parameters that indicate the delay for the network to send a page request or a channel assignment to the MS (see GSM 03.64).

The DRX parameters shall be indicated by the MS in the attach procedure. The SGSN shall then in each page request send these parameters to the BSS that uses this information and the IMSI to calculate the correct paging group.

DRX usage is independent of the MM states IDLE, STANDBY and READY. As DRX can be used by a GPRS MS in READY state, DRX has to be considered also when assigning a packet data channel for downlink transfer. The SGSN shall therefore indicate the DRX parameters for the MS in all packet transmission requests to the BSS.

A GPRS MS shall not apply DRX in READY state during the GPRS attach and routeing area update procedures.

8.1.3 Radio Resource Management for GPRS

GSM Radio Resource Management functions are defined in GSM 04.07 [12]. The radio interface layer 3 protocol is specified in ~~GSM 04.08~~ TS24.008.

8.1.3.1 Layer Functions

GPRS radio resource management procedures are required for the following functions:

- allocation and release of physical resources (i.e., timeslots) associated with a GPRS channel;
- monitoring GPRS channel utilisation to detect under-utilised or congested GPRS channels;
- initiating congestion control procedures; and
- distribution of GPRS channel configuration information for broadcasting to the MSs.

8.1.3.2 Model of Operation

8.1.3.2.1 Dynamic Allocation of Radio Resources

A cell may or may not support GPRS.

A cell supporting GPRS may have GPRS radio resources allocated at a given instance. If no GPRS radio resources are allocated, an MS can request allocation of such resources. MSs may then use these radio resources. The PLMN may dynamically increase, to a PLMN operator-defined maximum, or, decrease to an operator-defined minimum, the radio resources allocated.

The network broadcasts GPRS system information on the common control channels.

GSM radio resources are dynamically shared between GPRS and other GSM services.

8.1.4 Paging for GPRS Downlink Transfer

An MS in STANDBY state is paged by the SGSN before a downlink transfer to that MS. The paging procedure shall move the MM state to READY to allow the SGSN to forward downlink data to the radio resource. Therefore, any uplink data from the MS that moves the MM context at the SGSN to READY state is a valid response to paging.

The SGSN supervises the paging procedure with a timer. If the SGSN receives no response from the MS to the Paging Request message, it shall repeat the paging. The repetition strategy is implementation dependent.

The MS shall accept pages also in READY state if no radio resource is assigned. This supports recovery from inconsistent MM states in MS and SGSN.

The GPRS Paging procedure is illustrated in Figure 1. Each step is explained in the following list.

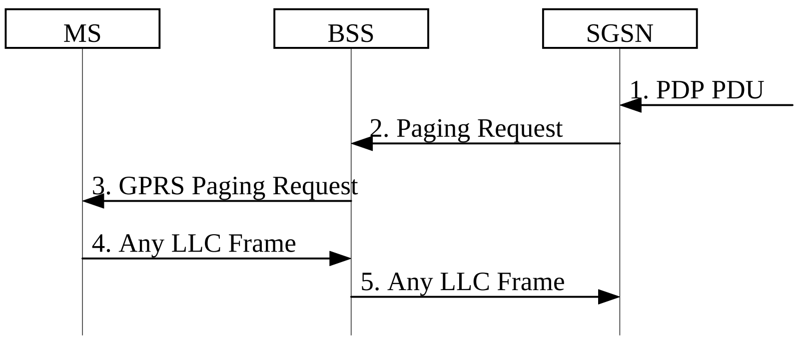


Figure 1: GPRS Paging Procedure

1) The SGSN receives a downlink PDP PDU for an MS in STANDBY state. Downlink signalling to a STANDBY state MS initiates paging as well.

2) The SGSN sends a BSSGP Paging Request (IMSI, P-TMSI, Area, Channel Needed, QoS, DRX Parameters) message to the BSS serving the MS. IMSI is needed by the BSS in order to calculate the MS paging group. P-TMSI is the identifier by which the MS is paged. Area indicates the routeing area in which the MS is paged. Channel Needed indicates GPRS paging. QoS is the negotiated QoS for the PDP context that initiates the paging procedure, and indicates the priority of this Paging Request relative to other Paging Request messages buffered in the BSS. DRX Parameters indicates whether the MS uses discontinuous reception or not. If the MS uses discontinuous reception, then DRX Parameters also indicate when the MS is in a non-sleep mode able to receive paging requests.

3) The BSS pages the MS with one Paging Request (P-TMSI, Channel Needed) message in each cell belonging to the addressed routeing area. This is described in GSM 03.64.

4) Upon receipt of a GPRS Paging Request message, the MS shall respond with either any single valid LLC frame (e.g., a Receive Ready or Information frame) that implicitly is interpreted as a page response message by the SGSN. When responding, the MS changes MM state to READY. The response is preceded by the Packet Channel Request and Packet Immediate Assignment procedures as described in GSM 03.64.

5) Upon reception of the LLC frame, the BSS adds the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell and sends the LLC frame to the SGSN. The SGSN shall then consider the LLC frame to be an implicit paging response message and stop the paging response timer.

~~8.5Paging for UMTS PS Downlink Transfer~~

~~FFS.~~

8.2 Radio Resource Functionality for UMTS

8.2.1 Radio Resource Management

UMTS Terrestrial Radio Access Network, UTRAN, functions are defined in 3GPP TS 25.401. The Radio Interface Protocol Architecture is specified in 3GPP TS25.301, and Radio Resource Control, RRC, protocol is specified in 3GPP TS 25.331.

8.2.2 The RRC state machine

The RRC state machine is a description model of how the MS and the UTRAN co-operate regarding RRC functionality. The RRC state describes the state of the MS in the UTRAN. Here follows a brief description of the RRC state machine, for more information see TS 25.303

The RRC state machine exists as peer entities, one in the MS and one in UTRAN. Apart from transient situations and error cases they are synchronised. The figure below illustrates the main modes/states of the RRC state machine.

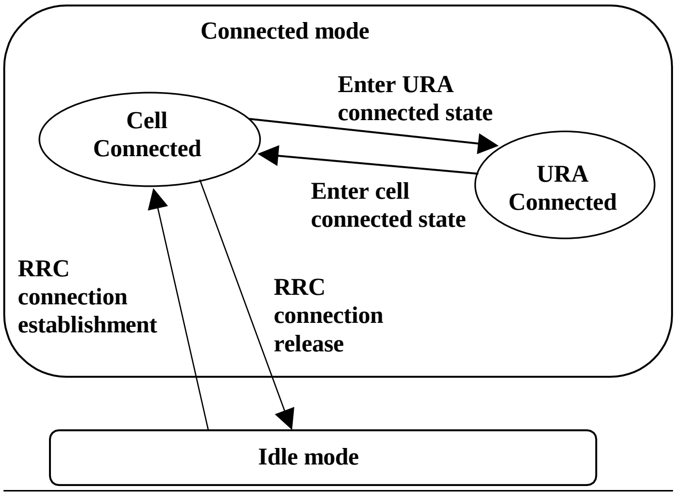


Figure 39: RRC modes, main RRC states and main mode/state transition

RRC-Idle_mode
In the Idle mode there is no connection established between MS and UTRAN. There is no signalling between UTRAN and the MS except for system information that is sent from UTRAN down link on a Broadcast channel to the MS. The MS can also receive paging messages with a CN identity on the PCH. There is no information of the MS stored in UTRAN in this state.

RRC-Connected_mode
In the Connected mode the main states are Cell Connected state and URA connected state. In this mode there is one RNC that is acting as Serving RNC (SRNC), and an RRC connection is established between the MS and this SRNC.

- When the MS position is known on cell level, the MS is in the cell connected state. When in cell connected state, the RRC connection mobility is handled by handover and cell-update procedures.
- When the MS position is known on URA level, the MS is in the URA connected state. The URA contains a set of cells. URA updating procedures provides the mobility functionality in this state. In URA connected state no dedicated radio resources are used.

8.2.3 Paging initiated by CN

A CN node requests paging only for MS in CS-IDLE state or PS IDLE state. In the separate CN architecture, paging from a CN node is done independent of the service state of the MS in the other CN service domain.

In this alternative with page co-ordination in UTRAN, the MS does not need to listen to the PCH (Page Channel) in RRC connected mode. (At least not when MS is allocated a dedicated channel.)

At each page request received from a CN node, the RNC determines whether the MS has an established RRC connection or not. In order to achieve this, the context that is prepared within the SRNC for MS in RRC connected mode must contain the IMSI, which is the common MS identity for the two CN domains.

If no context is found for the MS, "normal PCH paging" is performed. Paging message is transferred on the Paging channel, and it includes the MS paging identity received from the CN and a CN service domain type indication.

If a context is found, a "CN paging message" is transferred using the existing RRC connection. This message includes a CN service domain type indication.

8.2.3.1 PS paging initiated by 3G-SGSN without RRC connection for CS

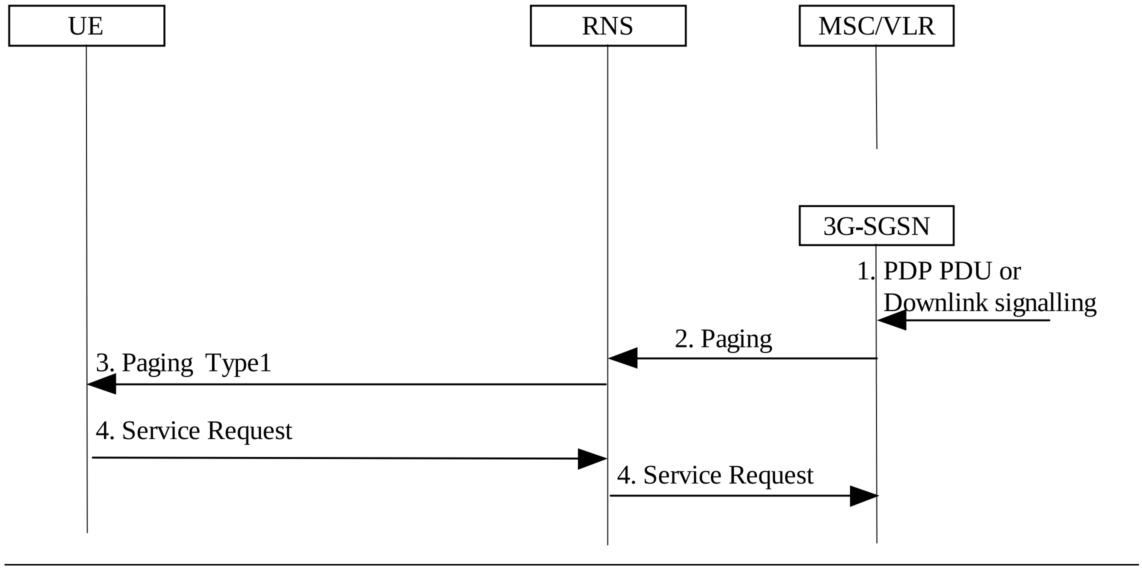


Figure 40: PS paging without RRC connection for CS

1) The 3G-SGSN receives a PDP PDU or downlink signalling for an MS in PMM Idle state.

2) The 3G-SGSN sends a RANAP Paging (IMSI, P-TMSI, Area, CN Domain Indicator) message to each RNS belonging to the routeing area in which the MS located. IMSI is needed by the RNS in order to calculate the MS paging group, and to identify the paged MS.If 3G-SGSN assigned the P-TMSI to the MS, P-TMSI is also included. Area indicates the routeing area in which the MS is paged. CN Domain Indicator indicates which domain (MSC or 3G-SGSN) initiated the paging message, and it represents "SGSN" in this case.

3) The RNS controls whether the MS has an established RRC connection or not. In this case, MS has no RRC connection, so a "normal PCH paging" is performed. Paging Type 1(IMSI or P-TMSI, Paging originator, CN domain ID) is transferred on the Paging channel, IMSI or P-TMSI identifies the MS. Paging originator indicates whether this is core network originated paging or UTRAN originated paging, so it represents "CN" in this case. And CN domain ID indicates whether this paging message is for CS-service or PS-service, so it represents "PS" in this case.

4) The paging request triggers the Service Request procedures in the MS. The service request procedures are described in subclose "Service Request Procedures", section 6.2.5.2.

Optionally, 3G-SGSN may include "Non Searching Indication" in RANAP Paging message in this case. If a "Non Searching Indication" parameter is present, the RNC will not search the established RRC connection, and just initiate "normal PCH paging".

8.2.3.2 PS paging initiated by 3G-SGSN with RRC connection for CS

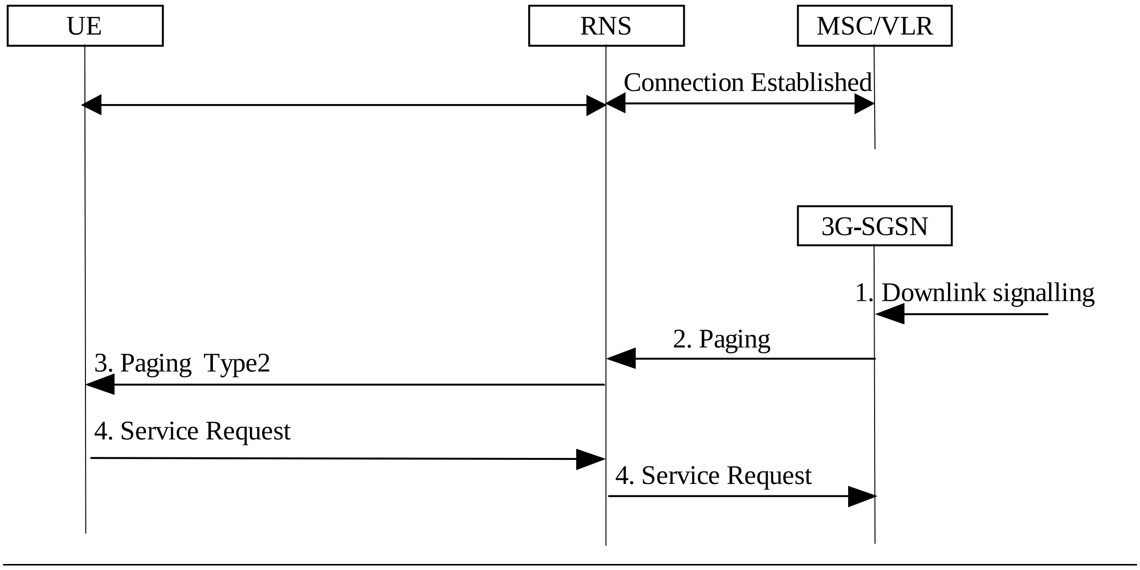


Figure 41: PS paging with RRC connection for CS

1) The 3G-SGSN receives a downlink signalling for an MS in PMM Idle state.

2) The 3G-SGSN sends a RANAP Paging (IMSI, P-TMSI, Area, CN Domain Indicator) message to each RNS belonging to the routeing area in which the MS is located. IMSI is needed by the RNS in order to calculate the MS paging group. If 3G-SGSN assigned the P-TMSI to the MS, P-TMSI is included, and it identifies the MS is paged. Area indicates the routeing area in which the MS is paged. CN Domain Indicator indicates to which domain (MSC or 3G-SGSN) the paging was initiated, and it represents "3G-SGSN" in this case.

3) The RNS controls whether the MS has an established RRC connection or not. In this case, MS has an established RRC connection for CS service, so RNS sends a RRC Paging Type 2(CN domain ID) message to the MS on established RRC connection. CN Domain ID indicates to which domain (CS or PS) the paging shall be directed, so it represents "PS" in this case.

4) The paging request triggers the Service Request procedures in the MS. The service request procedures are described in subclose "Service Request Procedures", section 6.2.5.2.

8.2.4 Paging initiated by UTRAN

An MS in RRC URA connected state is paged by the RNC before a downlink transfer to that MS. The URA paging procedure shall move the RRC state to Cell Connected to allow the RNC to forward downlink data or signalling message to the radio resource. Therefore, RRC: Cell Update message from the MS that moves the RRC State at the RNC to Cell Connected state is a valid response to URA paging.

The RNC supervises the paging procedure with a timer. If the RNC receives no response from the MS to the URA Paging Request message, it shall repeat the paging. The repetition strategy is implementation dependent. For more information see TS 25.303

The Paging procedure is illustrated in Figure 42. Each step is explained in the following list.

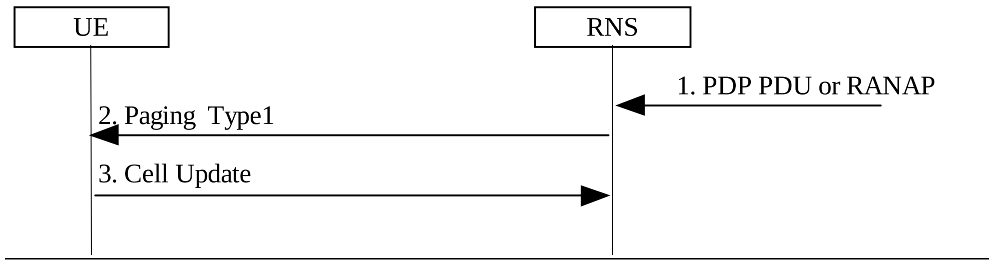


Figure 42: URA Paging Procedure

1) The RNS receives a downlink PDP PDU for an MS in RRC URA connected state. Downlink signalling to a MS in RRC URA connected state initiates URA paging as well.

2) The RNS pages the MS with one Paging Type 1 (RNTI, Paging originator) message in each cell belonging to the UTRAN routeing area where the MS exists. RNTI is the identifier by which the MS is paged. Paging originator indicates whether this is the core network originated paging or UTRAN originated paging, so it represents "UTRAN" in this case.

3) The paging request triggers the Cell Update procedures in the MS. The Cell Update procedures are described in TS 25.331.

3GPP TSG-? meeting #? *Document* ***S2G99046***

Helsinki,Finland, 05-07. 10. 1999

3G CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23060 CR 33 rev 1 Current Version: 3.1.0 draft

3G specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by 3G support team*

For submision to TSG | for approval [X] | for information [ ]
list TSG meeting no. here ↑ *(only one box should be marked with an X)*

Form: 3G CR cover sheet, version 1.0 The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/3GCRF-xx.rtf

Proposed change affects: USIM [ ] ME [ ] UTRAN [ ] Core Network [X]
(at least one should be marked with an X)

Source: 3GPP SA2 23.060 ad-hoc **Date:** 8.10.1999

Subject: changes in chapter 11 of 23.060

3G Work item:

Category:
(only one category shall be marked with an X)

F	Correction	
A	Corresponds to a correction in a 2G specification	
B	Addition of feature	X
C	Functional modification of feature	
D	Editorial modification	

Reason for change: Adaptation of 23.060 to UMTS

Clauses affected:

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
Other 2G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:

Other comments:


help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

12 Transmission

12.1 Transmission Modes

For GPRS t~~T~~he GTP-U, LLC, and RLC protocols offer various transmission modes. The combinations of the GTP-U, LLC, and RLC transmission modes define the QoS reliability classes (see subclause "Reliability Class").

For UMTS GTP-U and RLC protocols provide various transmission modes to support user data transmission with different QoS. The RLC for GPRS and the RLC for UMTS are distinct protocols of different Radio Access Networks.

12.1.1 GTP-U Transmission Modes

Two modes of operation of the GTP-U layer are supported for information transfer between the GGSN and SGSN; unacknowledged (UDP/IP) and acknowledged (TCP/IP). The GTP-U layer shall support both modes simultaneously for GPRS and UMTS. In UMTS GTP-U is also used on Iu interface for user data transport. On Iu interface the unacknowledged mode (UDP/IP) is supported only.

12.1.2 LLC Transmission Modes for GPRS

Two modes of operation of the LLC layer are defined for information transfer; unacknowledged and acknowledged. The LLC layer shall support both modes simultaneously.

- In acknowledged mode, the receipt of LL-PDUs are confirmed. The LLC layer retransmits LL-PDUs if confirmation has not been received within a timeout period.

- In unacknowledged mode, there is no confirmation required for LL-PDUs.

Signalling and SMS shall be transferred in unacknowledged mode.

In unacknowledged mode, the LLC layer shall offer the following two options:

- transport of "protected" information, such that errors within the LLC information field result in the frame being discarded; and

- transport of "unprotected" information, such that errors within the LLC information field do not result in the frame being discarded.

The LLC layer shall support several different QoS delay classes with different transfer delay characteristics.

12.1.3 RLC Transmission Modes

Two modes of operation of the RLC layer are defined for information transfer; unacknowledged and acknowledged. The RLC layer shall support both modes simultaneously.

The RLC for GPRS is described in GSM 04.60 and for UMTS in 3GPP 25.322.

12.2 Logical Link Control Functionality for GPRS

The Logical Link Control (LLC) protocol provides a reliable logical link between the MS and its SGSN. As shown in subclause "Transmission and Signalling Planes", the LLC layer is situated below the SNDC layer.

12.2.1 Addressing

TLLI is used for addressing at the LLC layer. TLLI is described in subclause "NSAPI and TLLI".

12.2.2 Services

LLC provides the services necessary to maintain a ciphered data link between an MS and an SGSN. The LLC layer does not support direct communication between two MSs.

The LLC connection is maintained as the MS moves between cells served by the same SGSN. When the MS moves to a cell being served by a different SGSN, the existing connection is released and a new logical connection is established with the new SGSN.

~~The LLC connection can be used to transfer point-to-point and point-to-multipoint data between the MS and its SGSN.~~

LLC shall be independent of the underlying radio interface protocols. In order to allow LLC to operate with a variety of different radio interface protocols, and to ensure optimum performance, it may be necessary to adjust e.g., the maximum LLC PDU length and the LLC protocol timer values. Such adjustments can be made through negotiation between the MS and the SGSN. The maximum length of an LLC PDU shall not be greater than 1 600 octets minus the BSSGP protocol control information.

12.2.3 Functions

The Logical Link Control layer supports:

- service primitives allowing the transfer of SNDCP Protocol Data Units (SN-PDUs) between the Subnetwork Dependent Convergence layer and the Logical Link Control layer;
- procedures for transferring LL-PDUs between the MS and SGSN, including:
    - procedures for unacknowledged ~~point-to-point~~ delivery of LL-PDUs between the MS and the SGSN;
    - procedures for acknowledged, reliable ~~point-to-point~~ delivery of LL-PDUs between the MS and SGSN;~~ and~~
- ~~procedures for point-to-multipoint delivery of LL-PDUs from the SGSN to the MS;~~
- procedures for detecting and recovering from lost or corrupted LL-PDUs;
- procedures for flow control of LL-PDUs between the MS and the SGSN; and
- procedures for ciphering of LL-PDUs. The procedures are applicable to both unacknowledged and acknowledged LL-PDU delivery.

The layer functions are organised in such a way that ciphering resides immediately above the RLC/MAC layer in the MS, and immediately above the BSSGP layer in the SGSN.

12.3 Subnetwork Dependent Convergence Functionality for GPRS

The Subnetwork Dependent Convergence (SNDC) protocol is situated below the network layer and above the Logical Link Control layer in the MS and the SGSN, as shown in subclause "Transmission and Signalling Planes". A variety of network layers are supported, e.g., IP and X.25. The network-layer packet data protocols share the same SNDCP, that then performs multiplexing of data coming from the different sources to be sent across LLC. This is illustrated in Figure 1.

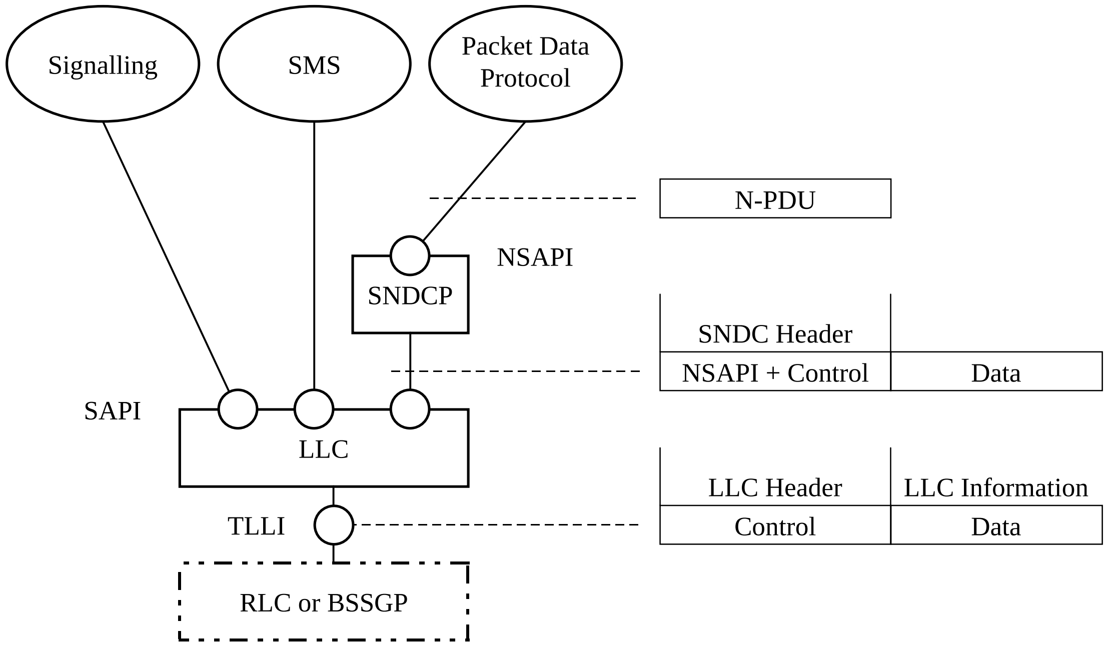


Figure 1: Multiplexing of Network Protocols

The following identities and control information is needed:

- NSAPI identifies the network layer. The SNDCP control part contains compression information.
- TLLI identifies the MS. The LLC control part contains the rest of the LLC protocol header including ciphering information.

The Subnetwork Dependent Convergence function is defined in terms of offered services and sub-functions.

12.3.1 Services

The SNDC function provides the following services to the network layer:

- Transmission and reception of N-PDUs in acknowledged and unacknowledged LLC mode. In acknowledged mode, the receipt of data shall be confirmed at the LLC layer, and the data shall be transmitted and received in order per NSAPI. In unacknowledged mode, the receipt of data shall not be confirmed at the SNDCP layer nor at the LLC layer.
- Transmission and reception between the MS and SGSN of variable-length N-PDUs.
- Transmission and reception of N-PDUs between the SGSN and MS according to the negotiated QoS profile.
- Transfer of the minimum amount of data possible between the SGSN and MS through compression techniques.

The SNDC function requires the following services from the LLC layer:

- Acknowledged and unacknowledged data transfer.
- ~~Point-to-point and point-to-multipoint data transfer.~~
- Ciphered transmission of SN-PDUs.

- In-order delivery of SN-PDUs per LLC SAPI.
- Support for variable-length SN-PDUs.

12.3.2 Subfunctions

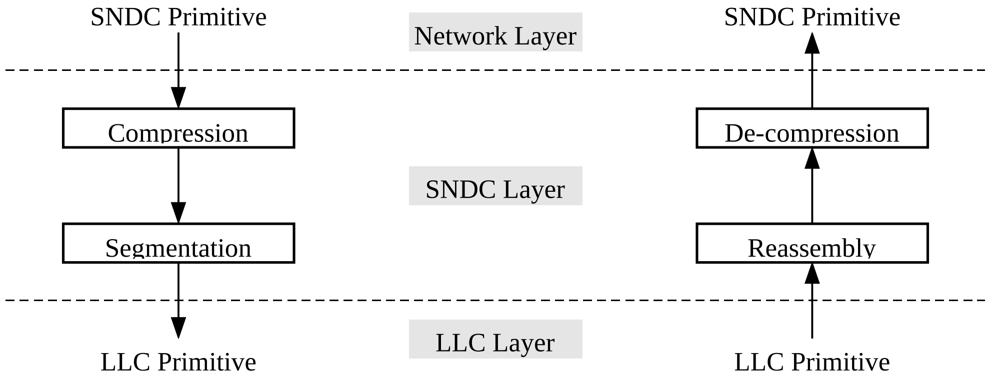


Figure 2: Sequential Invocation of SNDC Functionality

SNDCP performs the following subfunctions:

- Mapping of SNDC primitives received from the network layer into corresponding LLC primitives to be passed to the LLC layer, and vice versa.
- Multiplexing of N-PDUs from one or several NSAPIs onto one LLC SAPI. NSAPIs that are multiplexed onto the same SAPI shall use the same radio priority level, QoS delay class, and precedence class.
- Compression of redundant protocol control information and user data. This may include e.g., TCP/IP header compression and V.42 bis [32] data compression. Compression may be performed independently for each QoS delay class and precedence class. If several network layers use the same QoS delay class and precedence class, then one common compressor may be used for these network layers. The relationship between NSAPIs, compressors, and SAPIs is defined in GSM 04.65. Compression parameters are negotiated between the MS and the SGSN. Compression is an optional SNDC function.
- Segmentation and reassembly. The output of the compression subfunctions are segmented to maximum-length LLC frames.

12.4 PDCP for UMTS

Packet Data Compatibility Protocol (PDCP): This transmission functionality maps network-level characteristics onto the characteristics of the underlying network. PDCP can support several network layer protocols providing protocol transparency for the users of the service. PDCP provides protocol control information compression. PDCP is located in the UTRAN and described in 25.323.

12.45 Octet Stream Protocol Functionality

The Octet Stream Protocol (OSP) is used to carry an unstructured octet (character) stream between the MS and GGSN. It is used to provide a character pipe to allow an MS to communicate (via the GGSN) with an arbitrary Internet host, or other character-based service. PDP type shall be selected as OSP for this purpose. Unlike PDP types IP and X.25, OSP has no existence outside the PLMN. In the MS there is a character stream at the R reference point together with some optional control signals. In the GGSN there is a relay function, carrying the same character stream and control signals between OSP and a fixed-network protocol stack.

OSP has two modes of operation. In octet mode, it uses a Packet Assembly function to assemble a number of user octets into a single packet for more efficient transport by the underlying protocols. A complementary Packet Disassembly function performs the reverse operation in the peer OSP. In block mode, the Packet Assembly / Disassembly (PAD) function is bypassed. In this case, data is transferred between the OSP user and OSP in blocks of octets. Each block of octets is delivered as a single OSP PDU to the underlying protocol. The selection of octet or block mode is made independently for each OSP connection as an implementation or configuration decision before the connection is established, and remains fixed for the duration of the connection. An example of the use of the block mode is when OSP is used for interworking with a fixed network where the octets are also carried in packets. This avoids the use of back-to-back PADs. It could also be used in an embedded MT where the application transfers data in blocks of octets.

~~OSP uses the services of SNDCP between the MS and SGSN, and the services of GTP between the SGSN and GGSN.~~ The quality of service is determined mainly by that provided by the underlying layers. However, the end-to-end delay may be affected by the presence of the PAD function. A reliable (acknowledged) service shall be provided by the layers below SNDCP and GTP.

The main functions of OSP are:

- transport of an unstructured octet stream;
- packet assembly and disassembly to make efficient use of network resources; and
- end-to-end flow control.

OSP may additionally provide:

- transport of a "break" signal;
- transport of control information blocks between the OSP users;
- user control of packet assembly buffer forwarding; and
- direct OSP user access to the underlying packet service, bypassing the PAD.

Figure 3 illustrates the OSP transmission plane for GPRS and figure 4 for UMTS.

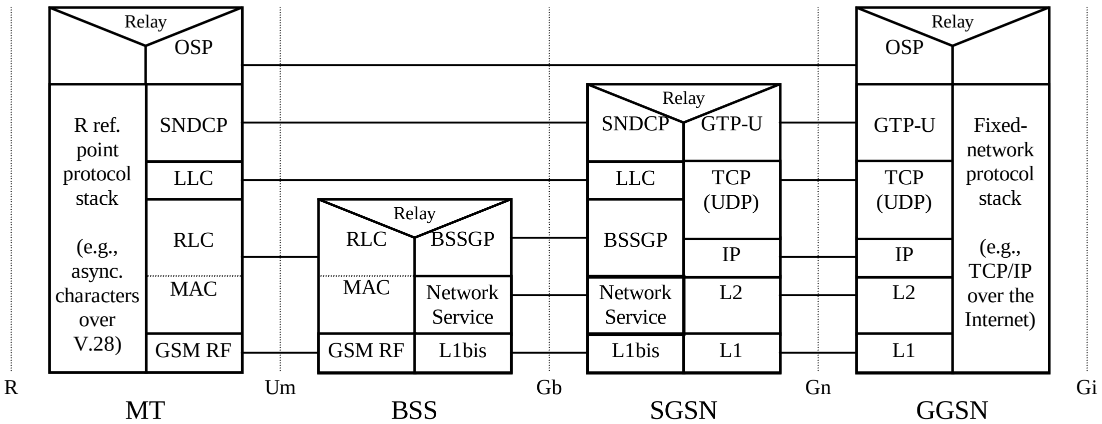


Figure 3: GPRS User Plane for PDP Type OSP~~Relationship of OSP to the Rest of the GPRS Protocol Architecture~~

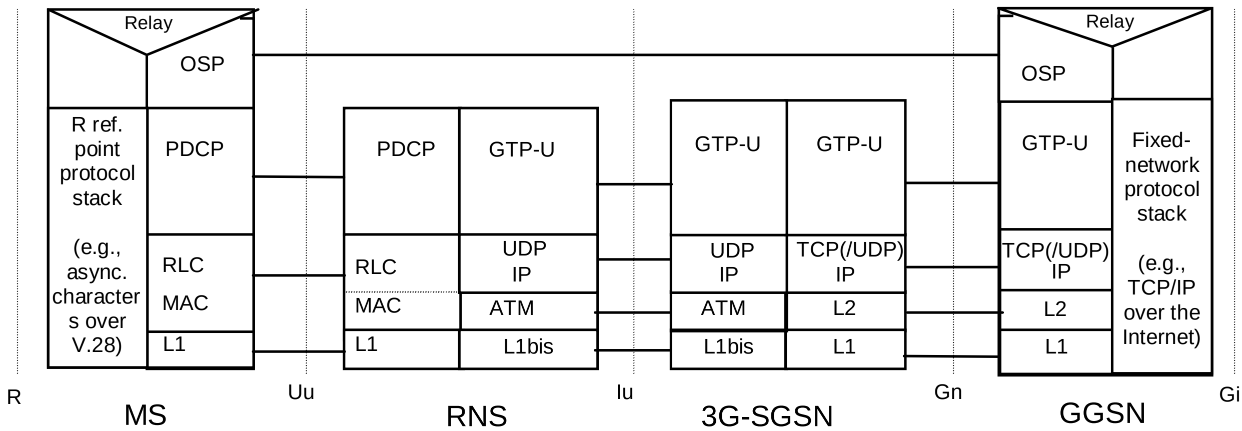


Figure 4: UMTS User Plane for PDP Type OSP

12.45.1 PAD Function

In order to make efficient use of the network resources, particularly the radio resource, octets received from the OSP user are not forwarded immediately but are placed in a buffer. When some forwarding criterion is satisfied, the contents of the buffer are forwarded in the payload of an N-PDU to the underlaying~~SNDCP~~ layer. At the receiving end, the payload of an N-PDU received from the underlaying~~SNDCP~~ layer is placed in a buffer and the octets are delivered to the OSP user as an octet stream.

The PAD is used only when OSP operates in octet mode. It is not used when OSP operates in block mode.

12.45.1.1 Packet Assembler

The packet assembler shall be able to detect the following forwarding criteria. When any one criterion is satisfied, the contents of the buffer shall be forwarded in an N-PDU to the underlaying~~SNDCP~~ layer, subject to any flow control condition.

12.45.1.1.1 Buffer Full

The buffer contents are forwarded when the number of octets in the buffer reaches the value of the maximum buffer size parameter.

12.54.1.1.2 Inactivity Timer Expiry

The inactivity timer shall be started whenever an octet is placed in the buffer. When the timer expires, the buffer contents shall be forwarded. The inactivity timer shall be stopped whenever a buffer is forwarded.

12.54.1.1.3 Maximum Buffer Delay Timer Expiry

A maximum buffer delay timer may be started when the first octet is placed in the (empty) buffer,. When the timer expires, the buffer contents shall be forwarded. This optional timer ensures that no octet is delayed in the buffer for longer than the specified time. The maximum buffer delay timer shall be stopped whenever a buffer is forwarded.

12.54.1.1.4 Special Character

Whenever an octet has been placed in the buffer, its least significant 7 bits shall be compared with a list of 7-bit special characters. If the bits match, the buffer shall be forwarded. The possible characters and combinations of characters shall be the same as specified for the X.3 PAD access to X.25.

12.54.1.1.5 Change in Flow Control State

The buffer may be forwarded when there is a need to signal a change in the ready to receive condition.

12.54.1.1.6 Immediate Forwarding Request

When the OSP receives an immediate forward request from its user, it shall immediately forward the buffer unless it is empty.

12.54.1.2 Packet Disassembler

The packet disassembler shall forward the contents of the N-PDU payload to the OSP user, subject to any local flow control condition.

12.54.2 Quality of Service

The QoS provided by the OSP layer is determined by that provided by the underlying protocol layers. However, the PAD functions introduce an additional variable delay into the transmission path. This delay can be limited at the risk of making less efficient use of network resources, in particular the radio resources.

12.6~~5~~ Point-to-Point Protocol Functionality

The PPP protocol is specified in RFC 1661 [44].

12.6~~5~~.1 User~~Transmission~~ Plane for PDP Type PPP

The transmission plane for the PDP type PPP consists of a PPP protocol stack above SNDCP for GPRS or above PDCP for UMTS in the MS and above GTP in the GGSN. The GGSN may either terminate the PPP protocol and access the packet data network at the IP level, or further tunnel PPP PDUs via e.g., L2TP.

In case the application above PPP uses a different protocol than IP (e.g., IPX or AppleTalk), the interconnection to the packet data network is outside the scope of this specification.

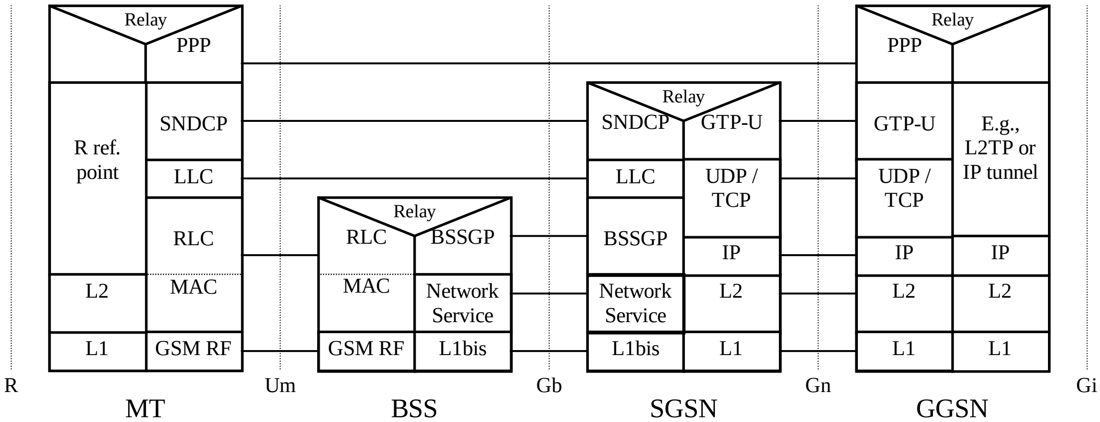


Figure 4: GPRS User~~Transmission~~ Plane for PDP Type PPP

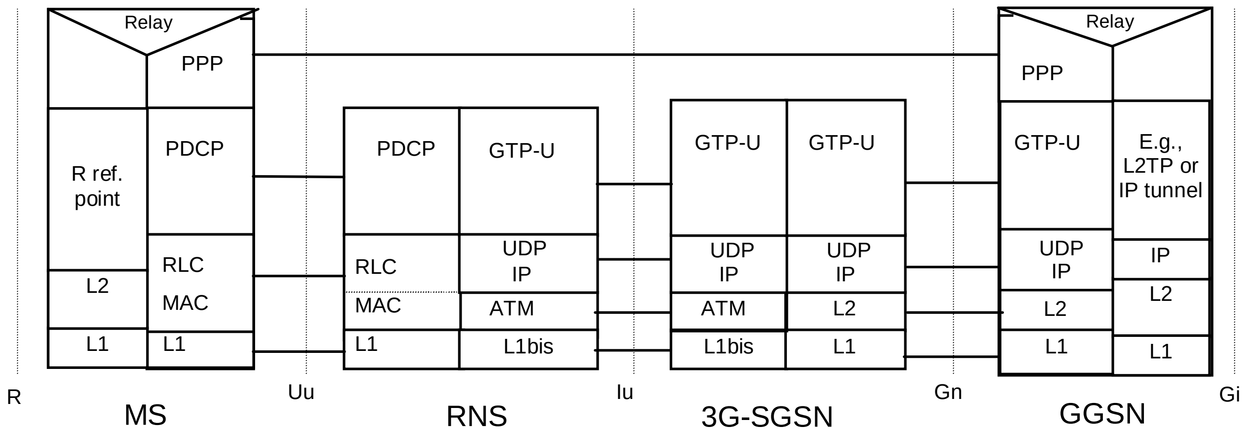


Figure 5: UMTS User Plane for PDP Type PPP

12.6~~5~~.2 Functions

The PPP peers at the MS and GGSN handle the PPP protocol as specified in RFC 1661. PPP requires in-sequence packet delivery by the underlying protocols. Concerning GTP, this shall be achieved by enabling Reordering Required upon GTP tunnel establishment.

For GPRS additionally the following applies: Concerning SNDCP, out-of-sequence packets, which may be present if LLC operates in unacknowledged mode, shall be discarded. SNDCP of GPRS and PDCP of UMTS shall not use TCP/IP header compression because PPP may not carry IP packets at all, or because PPP may carry IP packets with already compressed TCP/IP headers. These PPP options are negotiated during the RFC 1661 Network Control Protocol establishment phase.

12.7~~6~~ Gb Interface for GPRS

The Gb interface connects the BSS and the SGSN, allowing the exchange of signalling information and user data. The Gb interface shall allow many users to be multiplexed over the same physical resource. Resources are given to a user upon activity (when data is sent or received) and are reallocated immediately thereafter. This is in contrast to the A interface where a single user has the sole use of a dedicated physical resource throughout the lifetime of a call irrespective of activity.

GPRS signalling and user data are sent in the same transmission plane. No dedicated physical resources are required to be allocated for signalling purposes.

Access rates per user may vary without restriction from zero data to the maximum possible line rate (e.g., 1 984 kbit/s for the available bitrate of an E1 trunk).

12.7~~6~~.1 Physical Layer Protocol

Several physical layer configurations and protocols are possible, as defined in GSM 08.14 [19].

The physical resources shall be allocated by O&M procedures.

12.7~~6~~.2 Link Layer Protocols

The Gb interface link layer is based on Frame Relay, as defined in GSM 08.16. Frame Relay virtual circuits are established between SGSN and BSS. LLC PDUs from many users are multiplexed on these virtual circuits. The virtual circuits may be multi-hop and traverse a network of Frame Relay switching nodes. Frame Relay shall be used for signalling and data transmission.

The following characteristics apply for the Frame Relay connection:

- The maximum Frame Relay information field size shall be 1 600 octets.
- The Frame Relay address length shall be 2 octets.
- The BSS and the SGSN shall both implement Frame Relay DTE functionality. The SGSN may optionally also implement DCE functionality.
- Frame Relay PVCs shall be used.
- The Frame Relay layer offers detection of but no recovery from transmission errors.
- One or more Frame Relay PVCs shall be used between one SGSN and one BSS to transport BSSGP PDUs.

12.7~~6~~.3 BSS GPRS Protocol

The primary function of BSSGP is to provide the radio-related, QoS, and routeing information that is required to transmit user data between a BSS and an SGSN. In the BSS, it acts as an interface between LLC frames and RLC/MAC blocks. In the SGSN, it forms an interface between RLC/MAC-derived information and LLC frames. A secondary function is to enable two physically distinct nodes, the SGSN and BSS, to operate node management control functions.

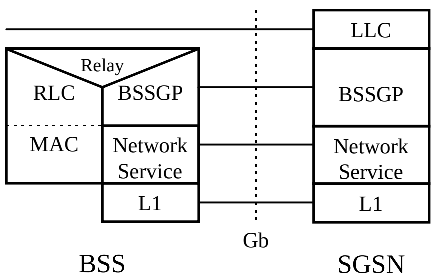


Figure 6: BSSGP Protocol Position

There is a one-to-one relationship between the BSSGP protocol in the SGSN and in the BSS. If one SGSN handles multiple BSSs, the SGSN has to have one BSSGP protocol machine for each BSS.

The main functions for the BSSGP protocol are to:

- provide a connection-less link between the SGSN and the BSS;
- transfer data unconfirmed between the SGSN and the BSS;
- provide tools for bi-directional control of the flow of data between the SGSN and the BSS;
- handle paging requests from the SGSN to the BSS;
- give support for flushing of old messages in the BSS e.g., when an MS changes BSS; and
- support multiple layer 2 links between the SGSN and one BSS.

BSSGP is defined in GSM 08.18.

12.7~~6~~.3.1 Inter-dependency of the BSSGP and LLC Functions

The functions of the BSSGP shall be defined in the context of the LLC function in order to avoid duplication of functions and information flows. The following functional model indicates each layer's functional responsibilities.

Table 1: Mapping of High-level Functions Across the Gb Architecture

Network Node and Function	**MS**	**BSS**	**SGSN**
LLC: **GSM 04.64**	Same as for the SGSN.		Provides transfer of frames between the SGSN and MS.
BSSGP: **GSM 08.18**		MS←PLMN: Using BSSGP information, RLC/MAC operations are invoked. MS→PLMN: Using RLC/MAC-derived information, a BSSGP PDU is constructed. An identifier of the cell including RAC and LAC in which an LLC frame was received is inserted into the BSSGP PDU. Same as for SGSN.	Individual MS radio-related information is used by the BSS to transfer LLC frames across the Gb and Um. Provides flow control and unconfirmed data delivery services across the Gb interface (not the Um – this is the function of the LLC and RLC/MAC function). Provides SGSN-BSS node management functions.
Network Service: **GSM 08.16**		Same as for SGSN	Provides a multiplexing, variable-bandwidth, frame-based, link layer transport mechanism across the Gb interface, and load balancing.

12.7~~6~~.3.2 BSSGP Addressing

For information transfer between the SGSN and the BSS the BSSGP is using a BSSGP Virtual Connection Identifier (BVCI) for addressing. Additionally, QoS profile, and the MS identification, e.g., TLLI, may be used to create queues and contexts in both the SGSN and the BSS. The flow control mechanism is then based on these queues and contexts.

12.7~~6~~.3.3 BVCI Contexts in BSS and in SGSN

A BVCI context in the BSS consists of at least one queue for LLC PDUs and of the available radio resource capacity.

The BVCI context in the BSS is allocated for each cell supporting GPRS. For each new GPRS cell introduced in the BSS area, a new BVCI context shall be allocated.

In the SGSN the BVCI context consists of at least one queue for LLC PDUs and the allowed throughput on BSSGP. The allowed throughput is updated by BSSGP flow control messages.

12.7~~6~~.3.4 Flow Control Between SGSN and BSS over the Gb Interface

The flow control mechanism controls the loading of the BSS LLC PDU queues per BVCI and per MS between the SGSN and the BSS in the downlink direction. No flow control is performed in the uplink direction. Buffers and link capacity shall be dimensioned to avoid loss of uplink data.

The downlink flow control mechanism is based on the following principles:

- In the SGSN, queues for LLC PDUs are provided per BVCI. These queues may be split further, e.g., per MS or per QoS delay class or precedence class. The SGSN shall pass LLC PDUs to LLC via BSSGP to the BSS as long as the allowed BSSGP throughput is not exceeded. The allowed BSSGP throughput is given per BVCI and for a single MS on that BVCI. The SGSN schedules the BSSGP downlink traffic of all MSs of a BVCI according to both throughput parameters and to the QoS profile related to each LLC PDU. The scheduling algorithm is implementation dependent.

- In the BSS, queues per BVCI are provided at the BSSGP level. These queues may be split further, e.g., per MS or per QoS delay class or precedence class. Depending on the queuing conditions and the available radio resource capacity in the cell the BSS indicates the allowed BSSGP throughput per BVCI and the default allowed BSSGP throughput for each individual MS of that BVCI by BSSGP flow control messages to the SGSN. Additionally, the BSS may change the allowed BSSGP throughput for an individual MS by a BSSGP flow control message.

12.7~~6~~.3.5 BSS Context

The SGSN can provide a BSS with information related to ongoing user data transmission. The information related to one MS is stored in a BSS context. The BSS may contain BSS contexts for several MSs. A BSS context contains a number of BSS packet flow contexts. Each BSS packet flow context is identified by a packet flow identifier assigned by the SGSN. A BSS packet flow context is shared by one or more activated PDP contexts with identical or similar negotiated QoS profiles. The data transmission related to PDP contexts that share the same BSS packet flow context constitute one packet flow.

Two packet flows are pre-defined, and identified by two reserved packet flow identifier values. The BSS shall not negotiate BSS packet flow contexts for these pre-defined packet flows with the SGSN. One pre-defined packet flow is used for best-effort service, and one is used for SMS. The SGSN can assign the SMS packet flow identifier to any PDP context, and the BSS shall in this case handle the packet flow for this PDP context with the same QoS that it handles SMS with.

The combined BSS QoS profile for the PDP contexts that share the same packet flow is called the aggregate BSS QoS profile. The aggregate BSS QoS profile is considered to be a single parameter with multiple data transfer attributes as defined in subclause "Quality of Service Profile". It defines the QoS that must be provided by the BSS for a given packet flow between the MS and the SGSN, i.e., for the Um and Gb interfaces combined. The aggregate BSS QoS profile is negotiated between the SGSN and the BSS.

A BSS packet flow timer indicates the maximum time that the BSS may store the BSS packet flow context. The BSS packet flow timer shall not exceed the value of the READY timer for this MS. The BSS packet flow timer is started when the BSS packet flow context is stored in the BSS and when an LLC frame is received from the MS. When the BSS packet flow timer expires the BSS shall delete the BSS packet flow context.

When a PDP context is activated, modified, or deactivated, the SGSN may create, modify, or delete BSS packet flow contexts.

12.7~~6~~.3.5.1 BSS Packet Flow Context Creation Procedure

On receiving a request to transmit an uplink or downlink LLC PDU for which no BSS packet flow context exists in the BSS, the BSS may request the download of the BSS packet flow context from the SGSN.

The SGSN may at any time request the creation of a BSS packet flow context, e.g., due to the activation of a PDP context.

The BSS Packet Flow Context Creation procedure is illustrated in Figure 7. Each step is explained in the following list.

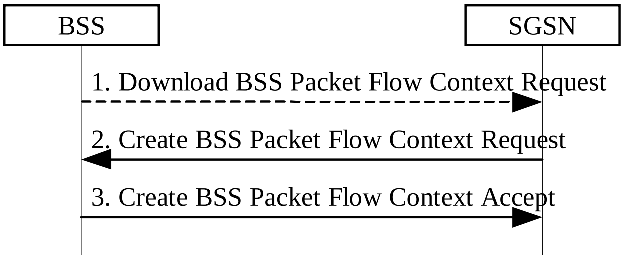


Figure 7: BSS Packet Flow Context Creation Procedure

1) The BSS receives a request to transfer an uplink or downlink user data LLC PDU for which it currently does not have a BSS packet flow context. In the uplink case, TLLI, Radio Priority, and Packet Flow Id are received from the MS as defined in GSM 04.60. In the downlink case, TLLI and Packet Flow Id are received from the SGSN as defined in GSM 08.18. If Packet Flow Id does not indicate best-effort service nor SMS, then the BSS sends a Download BSS Packet Flow Context Request (RAI, TLLI, Packet Flow Id) message to the SGSN. Until the BSS receives the BSS packet flow context, the BSS shall handle uplink and downlink transfers according to a default aggregate BSS QoS profile. For uplink transfers, the default profile is specific to the radio priority level.

2) The SGSN sends a Create BSS Packet Flow Context Request (IMSI, TLLI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Requested, BSS Packet Flow Timer) message to the associated BSS.

3) The BSS may restrict the requested aggregate BSS QoS profile given its capabilities and the current load. The BSS creates a BSS packet flow context and inserts the parameters in its BSS context. The BSS returns a Create BSS Packet Flow Context Accept (IMSI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated) message to the SGSN. The BSS uses the negotiated aggregate BSS QoS profile when allocating radio resources and other resources such as buffer capacity.

12.7~~6~~.3.5.2 SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification Procedure

The SGSN may at any time request the modification of the contents of an existing BSS packet flow context, e.g., due to the activation, modification, or deactivation of a PDP context.

The SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 8. Each step is explained in the following list.

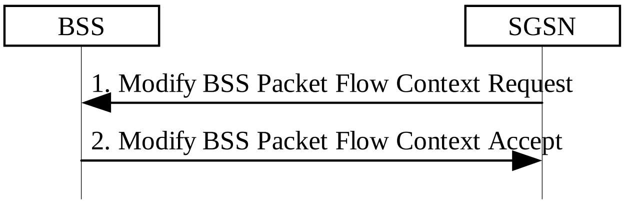


Figure 8: SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification Procedure

1) The SGSN sends a Modify BSS Packet Flow Context Request (IMSI, TLLI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Requested, BSS Packet Flow Timer) message to the BSS.

2) The BSS may restrict the requested aggregate BSS QoS profile given its capabilities and the current load. The BSS inserts the modified parameters in its BSS context. The BSS returns a Modify BSS Packet Flow Context Accept (IMSI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated) message to the SGSN.

12.7~~6~~.3.5.3 BSS-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification Procedure

The BSS can at any time request modification of the contents of an existing BSS packet flow context, e.g., due to a change in the resource availability at the BSS.

The BSS-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 9. Each step is explained in the following list.

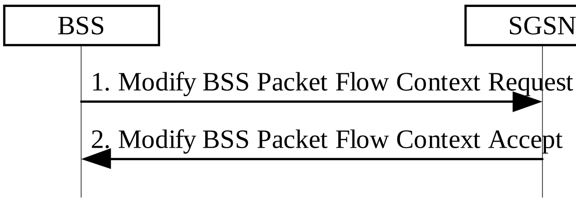


Figure 9: BSS-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification Procedure

1) The BSS sends a Modify BSS Packet Flow Context Request (IMSI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Requested) message to the SGSN.

2) The SGSN may restrict the requested aggregate BSS QoS profile given its capabilities and the current load. The SGSN returns a Modify BSS Packet Flow Context Accept (IMSI, TLLI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated, BSS Packet Flow Timer) message to the BSS. The BSS inserts the modified parameters in its BSS context.

12.7~~6~~.3.5.4 BSS Packet Flow Context Deletion Procedures

The BSS can, due to e.g., memory restrictions, at any time delete a BSS packet flow context without notifying the SGSN.

The SGSN may request the deletion of a BSS packet flow context with the SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Deletion procedure, as illustrated in Figure 10. Each step is explained in the following list.

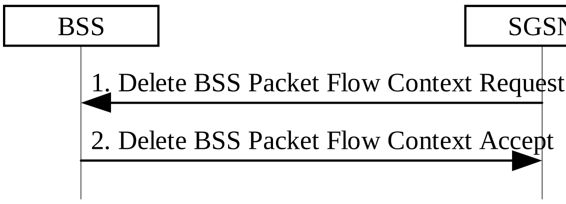


Figure 10: SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Deletion Procedure

1) The SGSN sends a Delete BSS Packet Flow Context Request (IMSI, Packet Flow Id) message to the BSS. The BSS deletes the corresponding BSS packet flow context from its BSS context.

2) The BSS returns a Delete BSS Packet Flow Context Accept (TLLI, Packet Flow Id) message to the SGSN.

12.8~~7~~ Iu Interface

Editors note: the level of detail of this Iu description chapter is still under discussion.

The Iu interface connects the UTRAN and the Core Network packet domain, allowing the exchange of signalling information and user data. The user plane of Iu interface shall allow many users to be multiplexed over the same physical resource. Resources are given to a user upon activity (when data is sent or received) and are reallocated immediately thereafter.

In UMTS only user data are transmitted on this shared physical medium. Signalling data is transferred via a SCCP connection.

A reference configuration for Iu interface is given in Figure 11.

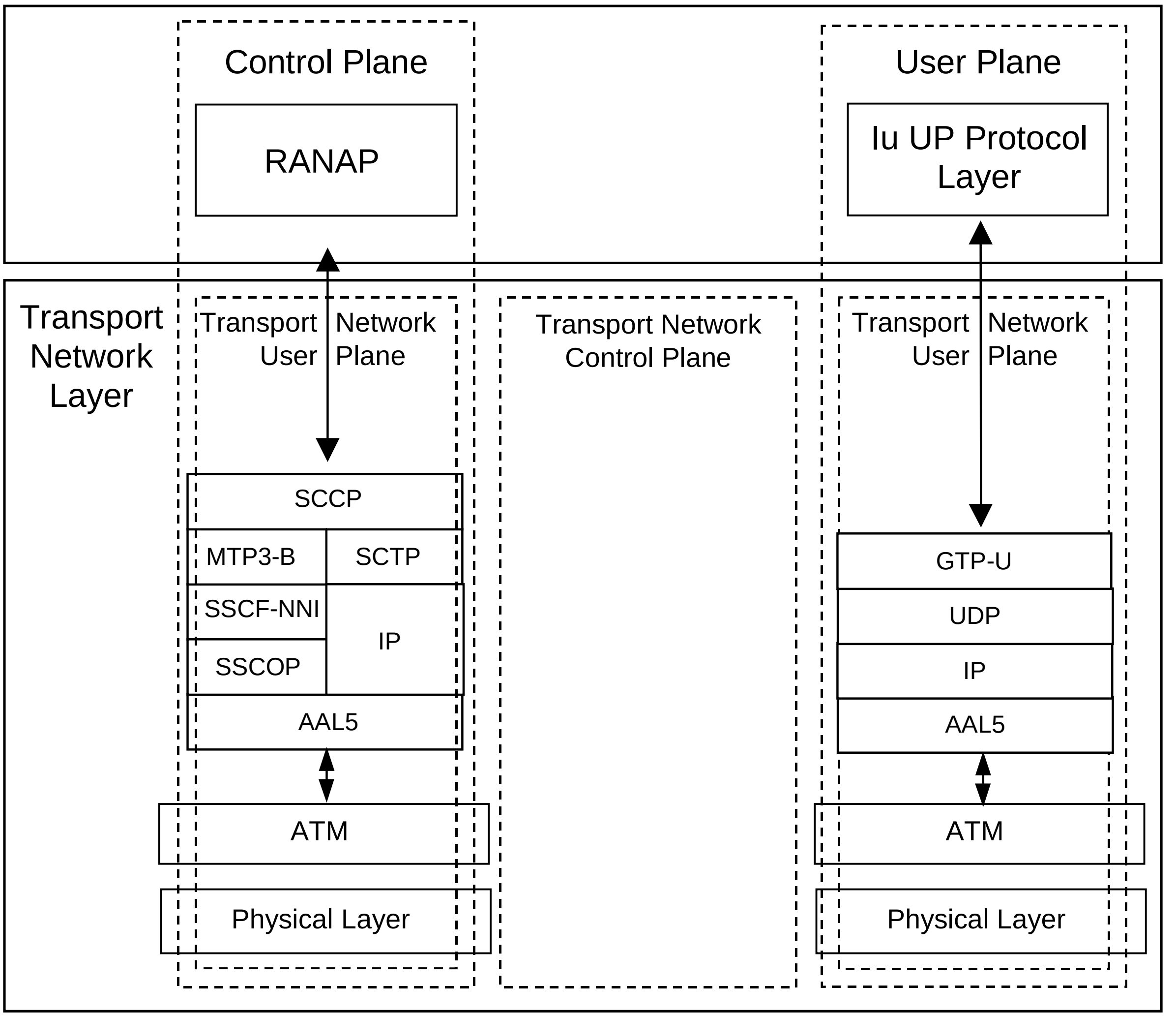


Figure 11: protocol configuration on the Iu user plane for packet switched traffic

12.8.1 Physical Layer Protocols of Iu Interface

The physical layer shall comply with one of a wide range of standards, according to 25.411.

Services provided to the upper layer shall be independent from the used underlying technology.

12.8.2 Higher Layer protocols

12.8.2.1 Higher Layer protocols for user data transport

The GTP-U /29.060/ protocol shall be used over the Iu interface between the packet switched domain and the RNS.

The path protocol used shall be UDP, which is specified in RFC 768. Both the IPv4 and IPv6 IP protocols shall be supported which are specified in RFC 791 (IPv4) or RFC 2460 (IPv6), IPv6 support is FFS.

AAL5 shall be used according to I.363.5.

AAL5 permanent or switched virtual circuits are used to transport the IP packets across the Iu interface between RNS and the packet switched core net domain. Multiple VCs can be used over the interface.

IP over ATM protocols are used to carry the IP packets over the ATM transport network. IP over ATM is specified in IETF RFC 2225. Multiprotocol Encapsulation over AAL5 is specified in IETF RFC 1483.

More detailed this topic is described in 25.414.

12.8.2.2 Higher layer protocols for signalling transport

The stack for signalling transport bases on ATM/AAL5. On AAL5 two options are available to provide services for the SCCP layer, that offers signalling transport services in both cases.

The first option for the SCCP signalling stack Uses SSCOP for reliability reasons. SSCF provides the adaptation to upper layers. MTP3-B is the network layer protocol.

The second option for the stack uses IP as the network layer. SCTP performs the adaptation of the IP layer and provides services for the SCCP layer.

12.8~~7~~.3~~1~~ Iu Release Procedure

This procedure is used to release the Iu interface. This procedure also triggers the release of all the Iu connections and changes the 3G-SGSN PMM state to PMM-IDLE. Both RNC-initiated and SGSN-initiated Iu release procedures are showed in the figure below.

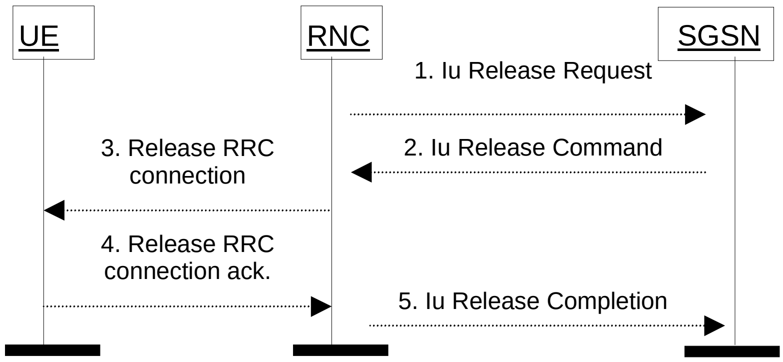


Figure 12: Iu Release Procedure

NOTE 1: Message 1 is only sent when the RNC-initiated Iu release procedure is considered.

NOTE 2: Message 1 is not sent but message 2 is sent when the SGSN-initiated Iu release procedure is considered.

1) The RNC notices that the RRC connection has been released or detects a need to release the radio resources. It sends an Iu Release Request (Cause) message to the SGSN. Cause indicates the reason for the release (O&M Intervention, Equipment Failure, Implicit Release, or Resource Optimisation). Implicit Release means that the periodic URA update timer expired. Resource Optimisation means that RNC decided to release a UE with only a non real-time bearer established to optimise the radio usage after the RRC-Connection-Release timer expired.

2) The SGSN releases the Iu by sending the Iu Release Command (Cause) message to the RNC. This message may be triggered either by an Iu Release Request message, or by another SGSN event (e.g., authentication failure or detach). It is optional for the SGSN to send the Iu Release Command message after an Iu Release Request message with Cause set to Resource Optimisation is received from the RNC.

3) If the RRC connection is not already released (Cause = Resource Optimisation), then the RNC sends a Release RRC Connection message to the UE. [Cause "Detach" or "Authentication failure are FFS]

4) The UE returns a Release RRC Connection Acknowledge message to the RNC.

5) The RNC confirms the Iu release by returning an Iu Release Completion message to the SGSN.

If the RNC does not receive the Release RRC Connection Acknowledge message and if Cause is different from Authentication Failure or Detach, then it should send a failure message to the SGSN, and the SGSN should stay in the MM-CONNECTED state.

12.8~~7~~.3~~2~~ Location Reporting Procedure

This procedure is used by a 3G-SGSN to request the SRNC to report where the UE is currently located, or to report when the UE moves into or out of a given service area. This procedure relates to location services (LCS) and other services (e.g., CAMEL and emergency calls) in UMTS. The overall LCS procedure is to be described in LCS stage 2 specification (add reference FFS).

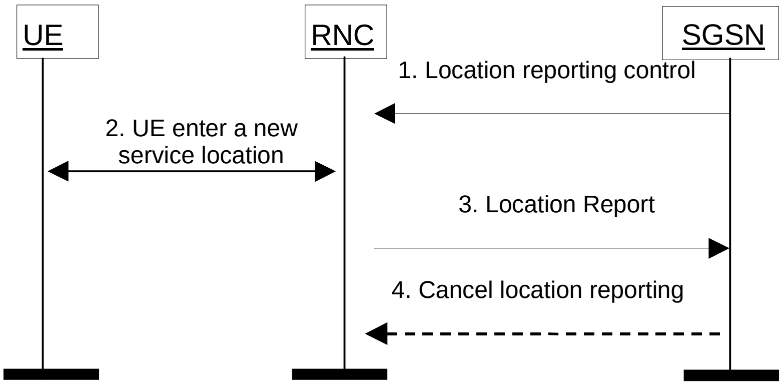


Figure 13: Location Reporting Procedure

1) The SGSN detects from the subscriber data the need to monitor in which service area a UE in the MM-CONNECTED state with an Iu interface connection is located. The SGSN sends a Location Reporting Control (Service Area Code(s), Reporting Type) message to the SRNC. The SRNC stores the Service Area Code(s) as reporting area(s) for this UE. For example, a service area may be a location area with restricted access. Reporting Type indicates whether the message is intended to start a reporting period or trigger a stand-alone report about the current location of the UE.

2) The SRNC detects that the UE moves into or out of a reporting area. Alternatively, the SRNC derives the current location of the UE if this was requested by the SGSN.

3) The SRNC sends a Location Report (Service Area Code) message informing the 3G-SGSN about where the UE is now located. If no Service Area Code is included, it indicates that the UE is outside the requested service area. When the SGSN has requested the current location of the UE, then SRNC shall include the requested location information in the Location Report message, e.g., in the format of a cell id. The SGSN may then perform specific actions (e.g., detach a UE entering a forbidden location area or route an emergency call to the nearest local emergency number).

4) The SGSN can send a Cancel Location Reporting message to inform the SRNC that it should terminate location reporting for a given UE. This message is needed only when the reporting was requested for a reporting period.

The procedure is implicitly cancelled at SRNC relocation. If the service is still required in the new SRNC or new SGSN then a new Location Reporting Control message shall be sent.

12.~~8~~9 Abis Interface for GPRS

When the GPRS MAC and RLC layer functions are positioned remote to the BTS the information between the Channel Codec Unit (CCU) and the remote GPRS Packet Control Unit (PCU) is transferred in frames with a fixed length of 320 bits (20 ms). In the present document these frames are denoted "PCU Frames" and are an extension to the "TRAU frames" defined in GSM 08.60 [22]. Within these frames both GPRS data and the GPRS RLC/MAC associated control signals are transferred.

The Abis interface should be the same if the PCU is positioned at the BSC site (option B in Figure 14) or at the SGSN site (option C in Figure 14). In option B, the PCU could be implemented as an adjunct unit to the BSC. In option C, the BSC should be considered as transparent for 16 kbit/s channels. In configurations B and C the PCU is referred to as being a remote PCU.

The remote PCU is considered a part of the BSC, and the signalling between the BSC and the PCU may be performed by using BSC internal signals. The inband signalling between the CCU and the PCU functions, using PCU frames is required when the Abis interface is applied (options B and C in Figure 14).

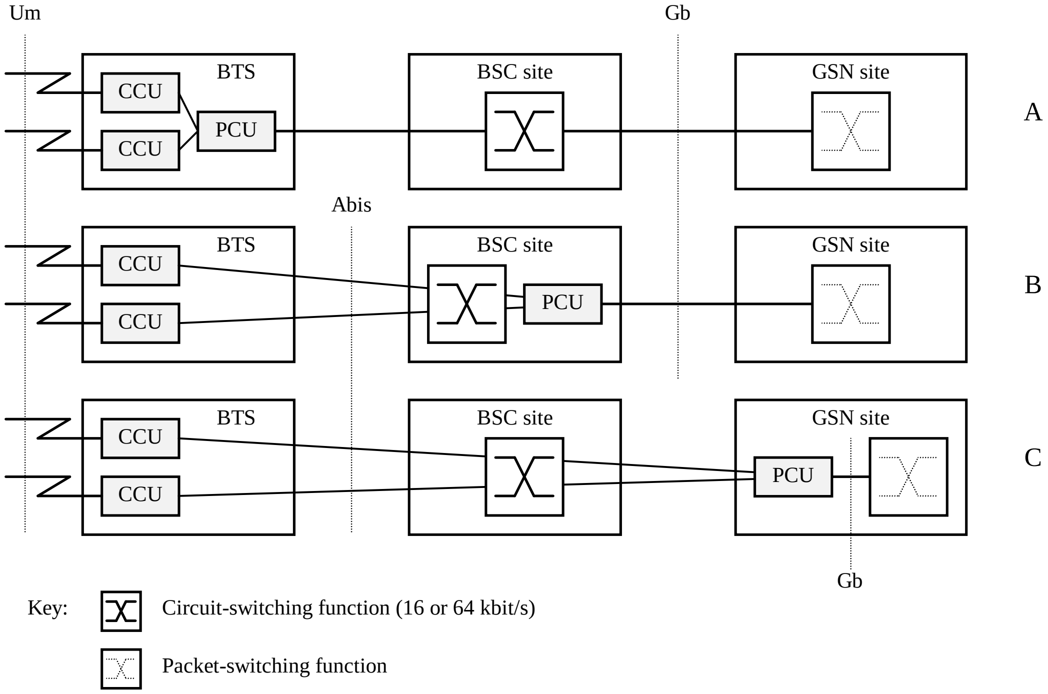


Figure 14: Remote Packet Control Unit (PCU) Positions

The PCU is responsible for the following GPRS MAC and RLC layer functions as defined in GSM 03.64:

- LLC layer PDU segmentation into RLC blocks for downlink transmission;
- LLC layer PDU reassembly from RLC blocks for uplink transmissions;
- PDCH scheduling functions for the uplink and downlink data transfers;
- PDCH uplink ARQ functions, including RLC block ack / nak;
- PDCH downlink ARQ function, including buffering and retransmission of RLC blocks;
- channel access control functions, e.g., access requests and grants; and
- radio channel management functions, e.g., power control, congestion control, broadcast control information, etc.

The functions inside the Channel Codec Unit (CCU) are:

- the channel coding functions, including FEC and interleaving;
- radio channel measurement functions, including received quality level, received signal level and information related to timing advance measurements; and
- for EGPRS, in case of incremental redundancy mode of operation, enhanced channel coding functions.

The BSS is responsible for allocation and de-allocation of radio resources. A PCU frame shall be transferred between the PCU and the CCU every 20 ms.

12.~~8~~9.1 Remote Packet Control Unit

When the Packet Control Unit (PCU) is remote to the BTS, the Channel Codec Unit (CCU) in the BTS may control some of the functions in the remote PCU in the BSC. As well, the PCU may control some of the functions of the CCU. This remote control is performed by inband signalling carried by the control bits (C-bits) in each PCU frame.

3GPP TSG SA2 *Document* ***S2G99047***

Helsinki, Finland, 5-7 October 1999

3G CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060 CR 045r1 Current Version: 3.1.0

3G specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by 3G support team*

For submision to TSG SA# for approval **X** *(only one box should be marked with an X)*

list TSG meeting no. here ↑ for information

Form: 3G CR cover sheet, version 1.0 The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/3GCRF-xx.rtf

Proposed change affects: USIM [ ] ME [ ] UTRAN [X] Core Network [X]

(at least one should be marked with an X)

Source: Ericsson **Date:** Sept 29, 1999

Subject: Consistent Sequence Numbering of GTP-PDUs on Iu and Gn interfaces

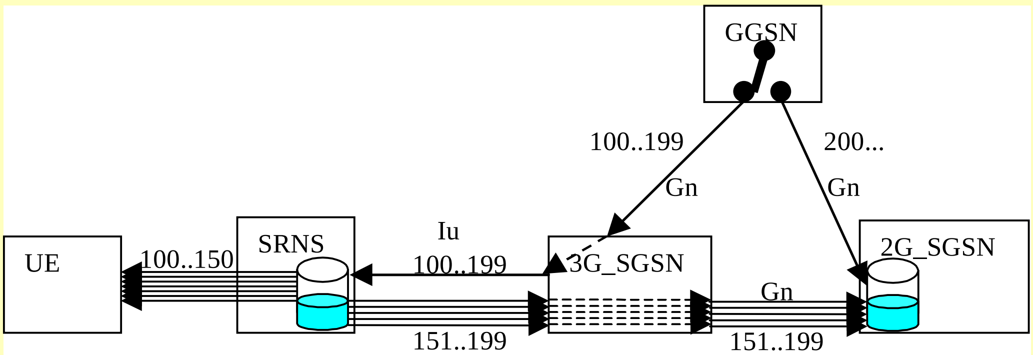
3G Work item: Release '99 Stage 2

Category:

(only one category shall be marked with an X)

F	Correction	
A	Corresponds to a correction in a 2G specification	
B	Addition of feature	
C	Functional modification of feature	X
D	Editorial modification	

Reason for change: In order to support UMTS-GPRS intersystem handover with in-sequence delivery of PDUs, this CR states that GTP-U sequence numbers are not changed once assigned to a PDU either by the SRSN or the GGSN.



Clauses affected:

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
Other 2G core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:	

Other comments:

12.8 Iu Interface

12.8.2 Higher Layer protocols

12.8.2.1 Higher Layer protocols for user data transport

12.8.2.1.1 Consistent Sequence Numbering of PDUs on Iu and Gn interfaces

The GTP-U sequence numbers of PDUs allocated by the GGSN (downlink) and SRNS (uplink) are kept unchanged irrespective of the number of GTP tunnels the PDU is transferred over. Therefore SGSN shall use on the Iu interface for downlink PDUs the GTP-U sequence number received from the GGSN and shall use on the Gn interface for uplink PDUs the GTP-U sequence number received from the SRNS. The SRNS and SGSN, in case of SRNS relocation and intersystem handover, shall tunnel PDU with unchanged GTP-U seqeuence numbers.

3GPP TSG-SA WG2 23.060 drafting meeting ***Document*** ***S2G99028***
Helsinki, Finland, 5- 7 October 1999

3G CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060 CR 018r1 Current Version: 3.0.0

3G specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by 3G support team*

For submision to TSG	SA	for approval	X	*(only one box should be marked with an X)*
list TSG meeting no. here ↑		for information		

Form: 3G CR cover sheet, version 1.0 *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/3GCRF-xx.rtf*

Proposed change affects: USIM [ ] ME [ ] UTRAN [X] Core Network [X]
(at least one should be marked with an X)

Source:	NTT DoCoMo
Date:	1999-09-29
Subject:	23.060 Section 1, 4
3G Work item:	

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	
A	Corresponds to a correction in a 2G specification	
B	Addition of feature	X
C	Functional modification of feature	
D	Editorial modification	

Reason for change: This CR based on 23.060 ver3.1.0 DRAFT2. This CR proposes text for section 1(Scope) and 4 (MainConcepts).

Clauses affected: 1, 4

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
Other 2G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

1 Scope

The present document defines the stage-2 service description for the ~~UMTS~~ packet domain, which includes the General Packet Radio Service (GPRS) in GSM, and the packet side of UMTS. CCITT I.130 [29] describes a three-stage method for characterisation of telecommunication services, and CCITT Q.65 [31] defines stage 2 of the method.

This document does not cover the Access Network functionality. GSM 03.64 [11] contains an overall description of the GSM GPRS Access Network. UMTS 25.301 contains an overall description of the UMTS Terrestrial Radio Access Network.

4 Main Concepts

~~GPRS~~ Packet Domain uses a packet-mode technique to transfer high-speed and low-speed data and signalling in an efficient manner. Packet Domain~~GPRS~~ optimises the use of network and radio resources. Strict separation between the radio subsystem and network subsystem is maintained, allowing the network subsystem to be reused with other radio access technologies. ~~GPRS does not mandate changes to an installed MSC base.~~

A common packet domain Core Network is used for both GPRS and UMTS. This common Core Network provides packet-switched (PS) services and is designed to support several quality of services level in order to allow efficient transfer of non real-time traffic (e.g., intermittent and bursty data transfers, occasional transmission of large volumes of data) and real-time traffic (e.g., voice, video). Applications based on standard data protocols and SMS are supported, and interworking is defined with IP networks and X.25 networks. Charging should be flexible and allow to bill according to the amount of data transferred, the QoS supported, and the time of connection.

The Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN) keeps track of the individual MSs' location and performs security functions and access control. The SGSN is connected to the GPRS base station system through the Gb interface and/or to the UMTS Radio Access Network through the Iu interface.

The Gateway GPRS Support Node (GGSN) provides interworking with external packet-switched networks, and is connected with SGSNs via an IP-based packet domain PLMN backbone network.

The Charging Gateway Functionality (CGF) collects charging records from SGSNs and GGSNs.

The HLR is enhanced with GPRS and UMTS subscriber information.

The SMS-GMSCs and SMS-IWMSCs ~~are upgraded to~~ support SMS transmission via the SGSN.

Optionally, the MSC/VLR can be enhanced for more-efficient co-ordination of packet-switched and circuit-switched services and functionality: e.g., combined GPRS and non-GPRS location updates.

In order to access the PS services, an MS shall first make its presence known to the network by performing a PS attach. This operation establishes a ~~logical link~~relationship between the MS and the SGSN, and makes the MS available for SMS over PS, paging via the SGSN, and notification of incoming PS data.

In order to send and receive PS data, the MS shall activate the Packet Data Protocol context that it wants to use. This operation makes the MS known in the corresponding GGSN, and interworking with external data networks can commence.

User data is transferred transparently between the MS and the external data networks with a method known as encapsulation and tunnelling: data packets are equipped with PS-specific protocol information and transferred between the MS and GGSN. This transparent transfer method lessens the requirement for the PLMN to interpret external data protocols, and it enables easy introduction of additional interworking protocols in the future. ~~User data can be compressed and protected with retransmission protocols for efficiency and reliability.~~

4.1 Main GPRS Concepts

~~GPRS uses a packet-mode technique to transfer high-speed and low-speed data and signalling in an efficient manner. GPRS optimises the use of network and radio resources. Strict separation between the radio subsystem and network subsystem is maintained, allowing the network subsystem to be reused with other radio access technologies. GPRS does not mandate changes to an installed MSC base.~~

New GPRS radio channels are defined, and the allocation of these channels is flexible: from 1 to 8 radio interface timeslots can be allocated per TDMA frame, timeslots are shared by the active users, and up and downlink are allocated separately. The radio interface resources can be shared dynamically between speech and data services as a function of service load and operator preference. Various radio channel coding schemes are specified to allow bitrates from 9 to more than 150 kbit/s per user. EGPRS is an enhancement of GPRS allowing higher bitrates on the radio interface. The higher bitrates are achieved by using a new modulation and new coding schemes in the MS and the BSS.

~~GPRS is designed to support from intermittent and bursty data transfers through to occasional transmission of large volumes of data. Several quality of service profiles are supported. GPRS is designed for fast reservation to begin transmission of packets, typically 0,5 to 1 second.~~

Three GPRS MS modes of operation are supported: An MS in class-A mode of operation operates GPRS and other GSM services simultaneously. An MS in class-B mode of operation monitors control channels for GPRS and other GSM services simultaneously, but can only operate one set of services at one time. An MS in class-C mode of operation exclusively operates GPRS services.

GPRS security functionality is equivalent to the existing GSM security. The SGSN performs authentication and cipher setting procedures based on the same algorithms, keys, and criteria as in existing GSM. GPRS uses a ciphering algorithm optimised for packet data transmission. A GPRS ME can access the GPRS services with SIMs that are not GPRS-aware, and with GPRS-aware SIMs.

Cell selection may be performed autonomously by an MS, or the base station system instructs the MS to select a certain cell. The MS informs the network when it re-selects another cell or group of cells known as a routeing area.

4.2 Main UMTS Concepts

~~[Text to be added.]~~

In UMTS, radio resources are allocated to UE:s in a very flexible manner. Depending on the level of activity, UE:s are allocated shared, contention-based radio resources, dedicated radio resources, for user packet transmission.

Three UMTS MS modes of operation are supported in UMTS: An PS/CS mode of operation corresponds to class-A mode operation in GPRS. An PS mode of operation corresponds to class-C mode operation in GPRS. An CS mode of operation is the out of scope in this specification.

UMTS security functionality is equivalent or higher functionality than the existing GSM/GPRS security. UMTS may use a security algorithm different from GSM/GPRS. The SGSN performs authentication procedure and the RNC performs ciphering procedure based on the algorithm for UMTS.

In UMTS, different levels of mobility procedures are executed depending upon the state of UE. When a UE has an active RRC connection to UTRAN, the UE performs either UTRAN Registration Area (URA) updating procedures or handover/cell update procedures depending on the level that the UTRAN is tracking the position of the UE. When a UE does not have an active RRC connection (i.e., idle mode), it performs RA updating procedures. In all the procedures, the cell selection is controlled by the network by setting cell selection parameters and/or restriction information

3GPP TSG-SA meeting ad-hoc meeting ***Document*** ***S2G99049***
Helsinki, 5-7 October 1999

3G CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	**CR**	**A041 r2**	Current Version:	3.1.0 draft 2

3G specification number ↑ ↑ *CR number as allocated by 3G support team*

For submision to TSG	SA#5	for approval	X	*(only one box should*
list TSG meeting no. here ↑		for information		*be marked with an X)*

Form: 3G CR cover sheet, version 1.0 *The latest version of this form is available from:* ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/3GCRF-xx.rtf

Proposed change affects: USIM [X] ME [X] UTRAN [ ] Core Network [X]
(at least one should be marked with an X)

Source: Nokia **Date:** 4.10.1999

Subject: Mobility Management states and state transitions for UMTS

3G Work item:

Category:
(only one category shall be marked with an X)

F	Correction	
A	Corresponds to a correction in a 2G specification	
B	Addition of feature	
C	Functional modification of feature	X
D	Editorial modification	

Reason for change: The CR proposes text for MM state transitions for UMTS. The service request procedure is presented in more detail.

Clauses affected: Chapters 6.1 and 6.2.5 are modified.

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
Other 2G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

6 Mobility Management Functionality

The Mobility Management (MM) activities related to a subscriber~~ or a UMTS subscriber~~ are characterised by one of three different MM states. The MM states for a GPRS subscriber are IDLE, STANDBY and READY, while the MM states for a UMTS subscriber are PMM-DETACHED, PMM-IDLE and PMM-CONNECTED. Each state describes a certain level of functionality and information allocated. The information sets held at the MS and SGSN are denoted as the MM context.

In the non-anonymous access case, the MM state relates only to ~~GPRS/UMTS~~the packet domain MM activities of a subscriber. The MM state is independent of the number and state of PDP contexts for that subscriber.

In the anonymous access case, the MM state relates to GPRS MM activities of an MS represented only by an Auxiliary TLLI.

6.1 Definition of Mobility Management States for GPRS

6.1.1 IDLE (GPRS) State

In GPRS IDLE state, the subscriber is not attached to the GPRS mobility management. The MS and SGSN context hold no valid location or routeing information for the subscriber. The subscriber-related mobility management procedures are not performed.

PLMN selection and GPRS cell selection and re-selection processes are performed by the MS.

Data transmission to and from the mobile subscriber as well as the paging of the subscriber are not possible. The GPRS MS is seen as not reachable in this case.

In order to establish MM contexts in the MS and the SGSN, the MS shall perform the GPRS Attach procedure.

6.1.2 STANDBY State

In STANDBY state, the subscriber is attached to GPRS mobility management. The MS and SGSN have established MM contexts for the subscriber's IMSI as described in clause "Information Storage".

Pages for data or signalling information transfers may be received. It is also possible to receive pages for the CS services via the SGSN. Data reception and transmission are not possible in this state.

The MS performs GPRS Routeing Area (RA) and GPRS cell selection and re-selection locally. The MS executes mobility management procedures to inform the SGSN when it has entered a new RA. The MS does not inform the SGSN on a change of cell in the same RA. Therefore, the location information in the SGSN MM context contains only the GPRS RAI for MSs in STANDBY state.

The MS may initiate activation or deactivation of PDP contexts while in STANDBY state. A PDP context shall be activated before data can be transmitted or received for this PDP context.

The SGSN may have to send data or signalling information to an MS in STANDBY state. The SGSN then sends a Paging Request in the routeing area where the MS is located if PPF is set. If PPF is cleared, then paging is not done. The MM state in the MS is changed to READY when the MS responds to the page, and in the SGSN when the page response is received. Also, the MM state in the MS is changed to READY when data or signalling information is sent from the MS and, accordingly, the MM state in the SGSN is changed to READY when data or signalling information is received from the MS.

The MS or the network may initiate the GPRS Detach procedure to move to the IDLE state. After expiry of the mobile reachable timer the SGSN may perform an implicit detach in order to return the MM contexts in the SGSN to IDLE state. The MM and PDP contexts may then be deleted.

6.1.3 READY State

In READY state, the SGSN MM context corresponds to the STANDBY MM context extended by location information for the subscriber on cell level. The MS performs mobility management procedures to provide the network with the actual selected cell. GPRS cell selection and re-selection is done locally by the MS, or may optionally be controlled by the network.

An identifier of the cell, the Cell Global Identity including RAC and LAC, is included in the BSSGP header of the data packet from the MS, see GSM 08.18.

The MS may send and receive PDP PDUs in this state. The network initiates no GPRS pages for an MS in READY state, pages for other services may be done via the SGSN. The SGSN transfers downlink data to the BSS responsible for the subscriber's actual GPRS cell.

The MS may activate or deactivate PDP contexts while in READY state.

Regardless if a radio resource is allocated to the subscriber or not, the MM context remains in the READY state even when there is no data being communicated. The READY state is supervised by a timer. An MM context moves from READY state to STANDBY state when the READY timer expires. In order to move from READY state to IDLE state, the MS initiates the GPRS Detach procedure.

6.1.4 State Transitions and Functions

The movement from one state to the next is dependent on the current state (IDLE, STANDBY, or READY) and the event occurred (e.g., GPRS attach).

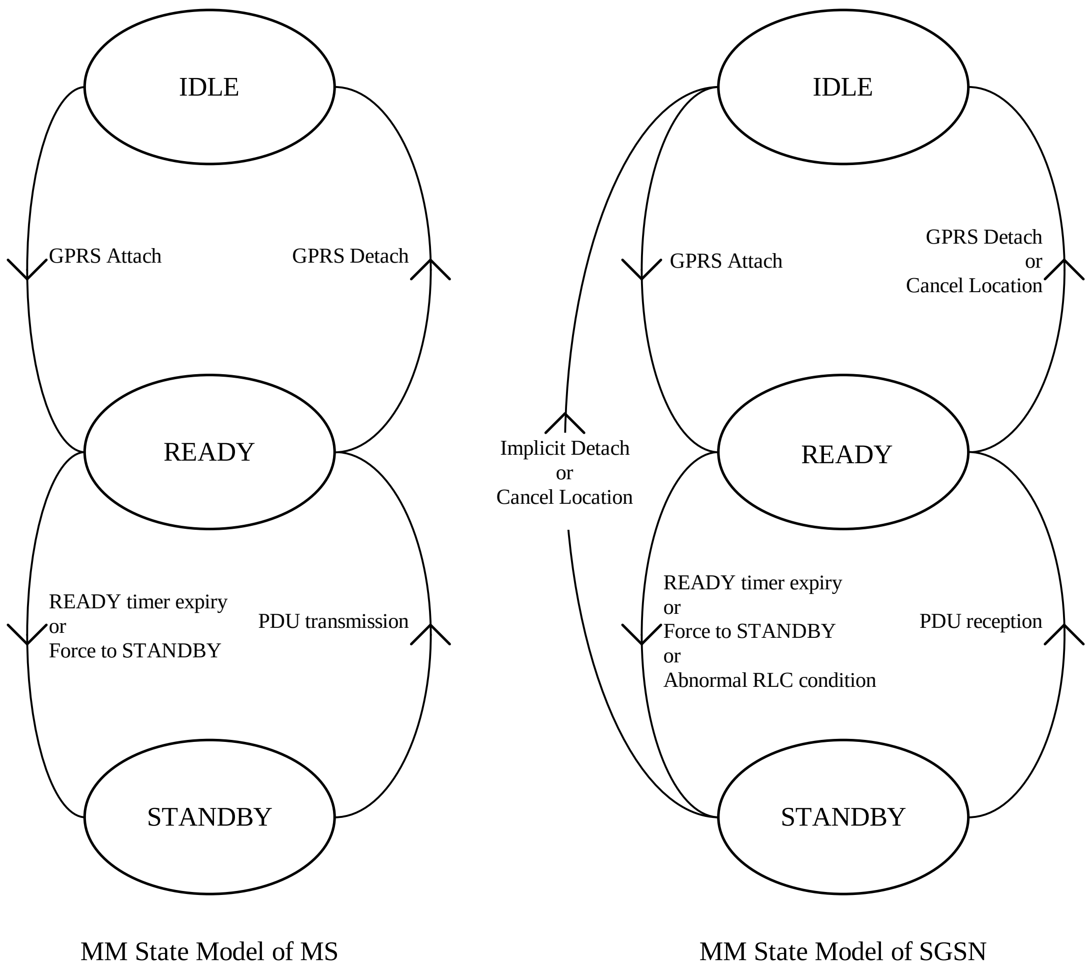


Figure 1: Functional Mobility Management State Model

Figure 1 describes the following state transitions:

Moving from IDLE to READY:

- GPRS Attach: The MS requests access and a logical link to an SGSN is initiated. MM contexts are established at the MS and SGSN.

Moving from STANDBY to IDLE:

- Implicit Detach: The MM and PDP contexts in the SGSN shall return to IDLE and INACTIVE state. The MM and PDP contexts in the SGSN may be deleted. The GGSN PDP contexts shall be deleted.

- Cancel Location: The SGSN receives a MAP Cancel Location message from the HLR, and removes the MM and PDP contexts.

Moving from STANDBY to READY:

- PDU transmission: The MS sends an LLC PDU to the SGSN, possibly in response to a page.

- PDU reception: The SGSN receives an LLC PDU from the MS.

Moving from READY to STANDBY:

- READY timer expiry: The MS and the SGSN MM contexts return to STANDBY state.

- Force to STANDBY: The SGSN indicates an immediate return to STANDBY state before the READY timer expires.

- Abnormal RLC condition: The SGSN MM context returns to STANDBY state in case of delivery problems on the radio interface or in case of irrecoverable disruption of a radio transmission.

Moving from READY to IDLE:

- GPRS Detach: The MS or the network requests that the MM contexts return to IDLE state and that the PDP contexts return to INACTIVE state. The SGSN may delete the MM and PDP contexts. The PDP contexts in the GGSN shall be deleted.

- Cancel Location: The SGSN receives a MAP Cancel Location message from the HLR, and removes the MM and PDP contexts.

For anonymous access, a reduced Mobility Management State Model consisting of IDLE and READY states is used. The AA MM state machine is independently handled by the MS and the network and may coexist with an IMSI-based MM state machine. Several AA MM state machines may coexist in the same MS and SGSN simultaneously.

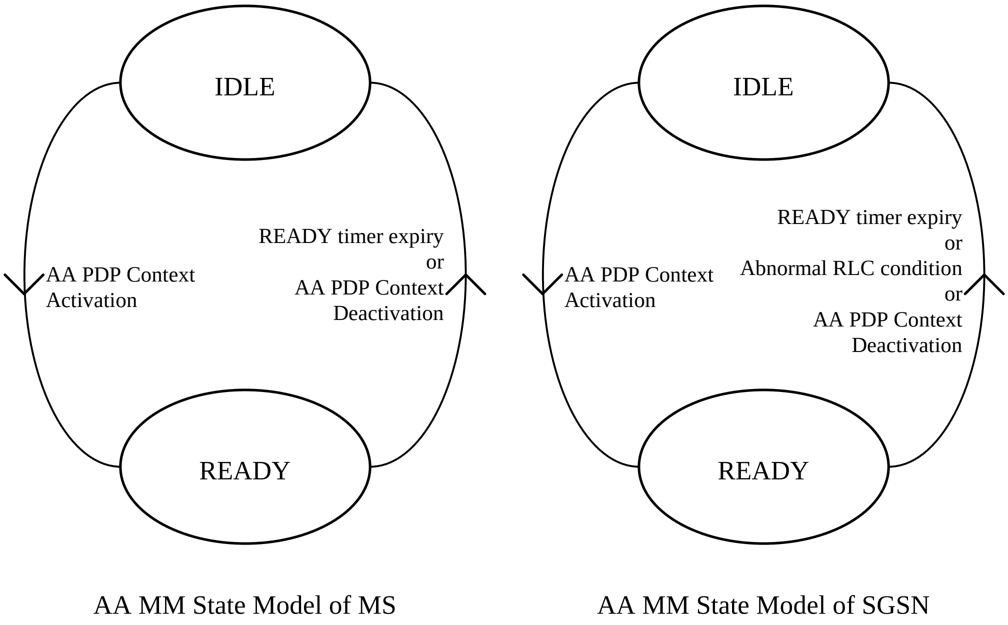


Figure 2: Functional Anonymous Access Mobility Management State Model

Figure 2 describes the following state transitions for anonymous access:

Moving from IDLE to READY:

- AA PDP Context Activation: The MS requests an anonymous access and a logical link to an SGSN is initiated. MM contexts are established at the MS and SGSN, and PDP contexts are established at the MS, the SGSN, and a GGSN.

Moving from READY to IDLE:

- READY timer expiry: The MM and PDP contexts in the MS, the SGSN, and the GGSN are deleted.
- Abnormal RLC condition: The SGSN MM context shall be deleted in case of delivery problems on the radio interface or in case of irrecoverable disruption of a radio transmission.

- AA PDP Context Deactivation: The network (either the SGSN or the GGSN) initiates the AA PDP Context Deactivation procedure, e.g., due to malicious usage of the anonymous service. The MM and PDP contexts in the MS, the SGSN, and the GGSN shall be deleted.

6.2 Definition of Mobility Management States for UMTS

6.1.4 PMM-DETACHED State

In the PMM-DETACHED state there is no communication between the ~~UE~~MS and the 3G-SGSN.~~-~~The MS and SGSN context hold no valid location or routeing information for the MS. The ~~UE~~MS MM state machine does not react on system information related to the 3G-SGSN. ~~UE~~MS is not reachable by 3G-SGSN, as the location of ~~UE~~MS is not known.

In order to establish MM contexts in the MS and the SGSN, the MS shall perform the PS Attach procedure. When the PS signaling connection is established between the MS and 3G~~-After~~ SGSN for performing a PS~~packet data~~ attach, the state changes to PMM-CONNECTED, in the 3G-SGSN and in MS.~~when receiving the request, and in the UE when receiving an indication that the request was successfully received by 3G-SGSN~~. The PS signaling connection is made of two parts, an RRC connection and an Iu connection.

6.1.5 PMM-IDLE State

The ~~UE~~MS location is known in 3G-SGSN with an accuracy of a routeing area. Paging is needed in order to reach ~~UE~~MS, e.g., for signalling. The MS and SGSN have established MM contexts for the subscriber's IMSI as described in clause "Information Storage".

The ~~UE~~MS shall perform a routeing area update if the RA changes. Signalling towards the HLR is needed if the 3G-SGSN does not have an MM context for this ~~UE~~MS.

The 3G-SGSN and MS shall enter the PMM-CONNECTED state when the PS signaling connection is established between 3G-SGSN and ~~receiving an uplink signalling message from the~~ ~~UE~~MS.

~~The UE shall enter the PMM-CONNECTED state when receiving an indication that a signalling message was successfully received by 3G-SGSN.~~

~~NOTE: In practice a response message (or delivery of packet after a paging response) proves that the uplink packet was successful.~~

~~Packet data~~PS detach changes the state to PMM-DETACHED. The 3G-SGSN may perform an implicit PS detach any time after the MS reachable timer expiry. The MM context of ~~UE~~MS is deleted preferably after a certain (implementation dependent) time. HLR may be informed about the deletion (see the Purge procedure).

6.1.6 PMM-CONNECTED State

The ~~UE~~MS location is known to the 3G-SGSN with an accuracy of a serving RNC. In the PMM-CONNECTED state, the location of the ~~UE~~MS is tracked by the serving RNC.

-The ~~UE~~MS ~~is not anymore~~ performs~~ing~~ the routeing area update procedure- when RAI in the MM system information changes. ~~(except maybe triggered by RNC in SRNC relocation procedure FFS).~~

When a ~~UE~~MS~~n MS~~ and 3G-SGSN ~~is~~ are in the PMM-CONNECTED state, a PS signalling connection is established between the ~~UE~~MS~~MS~~ and the 3G-SGSN. This connection is made of two parts, an RRC connection and an Iu connection.

~~NOTE: The SGSN does not know the real routeing area where the UE is located, but only the last routeing area where the UE is registered. Serving RNC relocation is performed if SRNC changes.~~

In the 3G-SGSN, ~~Iu~~ PS signaling connection release or failed downlink transfer with cause "IMSI unknown in RNC" changes the state to PMM-IDLE.

The ~~UE~~MS shall enter the PMM-IDLE state when ~~its~~PS signaling connection to the 3G-SGSN has been released or broken. This release or failure is explicitly indicated by RNC~~S~~ to the ~~UE~~MS or detected by the ~~UE~~MS (RRC connection failure). The radio connection shall also be released if a URA update fails because of "RRC connection not established" or if the URA update timer expires while the ~~UE~~MS is out of coverage.

~~NOTE:~~ After a signalling procedure (e.g., routeing area update), the 3G-SGSN may decide to release the ~~Iu~~ PS signaling connection, ~~that~~after which -the PMM state is changed~~s~~ ~~the state~~ from PMM-CONNECTED to PMM-IDLE ~~(FFS)~~.

~~Packet data~~PS detach changes the state to PMM-DETACHED.

6.2.5 State Transitions and Functions for UMTS

The figure below introduces the ~~P~~MM states for a UMTS subscriber (PMM). The states and activations are further described below~~in subsections (FFS)~~.

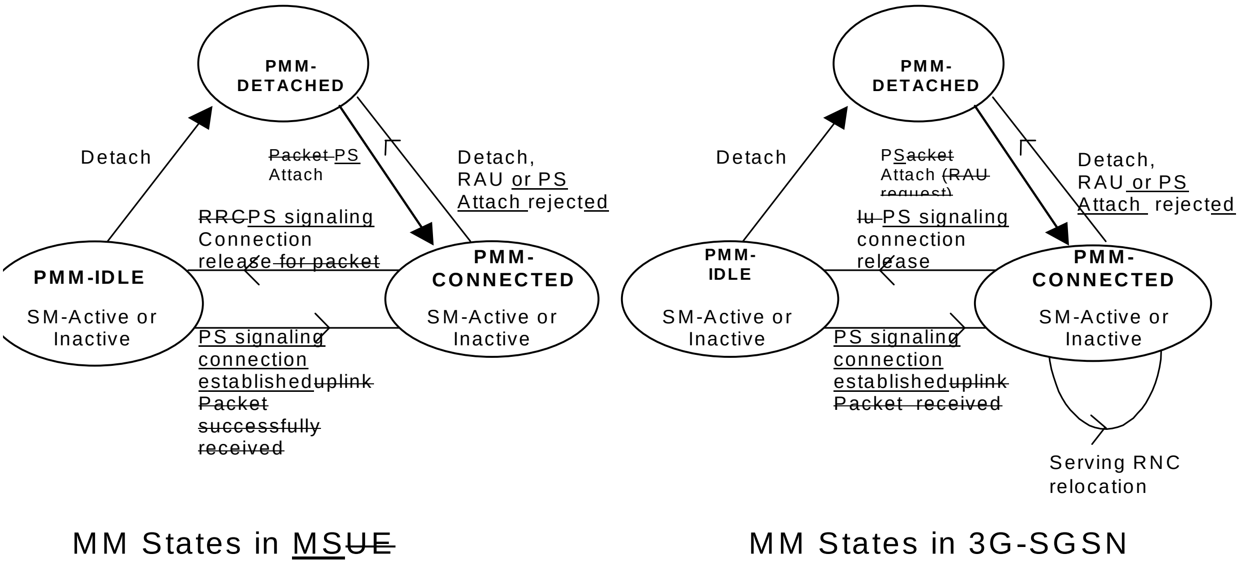


Figure 3: PMM State Model

NOTE: In both the PMM-IDLE and the PMM-CONNECTED states, session management may or may not have activated a PDP context. The consequence is that in PMM-CONNECTED state, only a signalling connection may be established. In PMM-IDLE state, a PDP context may be established, but no corresponding connection over the Iu interface nor the radio are established.

Moving from PMM-DETACHED to PMM-CONNECTED in ~~UE~~MS

- PS attach: The state transition is performed when a PS signalling connection is established between MS and SGSN for performing the~~UE initiated~~ PS attach~~ is accepted by 3G-SGSN~~. If the PS attach is accepted ~~A~~an MM context is created in ~~UE~~MS.

Moving from PMM-CONNECTED to PMM-DETACHED in ~~UE~~MS

- PS detach: The MM context in UE shall move to PMM-DETACHED state when the PS signalling connection is released between MS and SGSN after ~~UE~~MS ~~initiates~~ has performed PS detach or the network initiated PS detach ~~request~~ is ~~received from 3G-SGSN~~performed. The MM context in UE may be ~~is~~ deleted.

- –RAU reject: The MM context in UE shall move to PMM-DETACHED state when the PS signalling connection is released between MS and SGSN after RAU is rejected by 3G-SGSN. The MM context may be deleted.~~The MM context in UE is deleted.~~

- PS Attach reject: The MM context in UE shall move to PMM-DETACHED state when the PS signalling connection is released between MS and SGSN after PS Attach is rejected by 3G-SGSN. The MM context may be deleted.

Moving from PMM-CONNECTED to PMM-IDLE in ~~UE~~MS

- ~~RRC~~PS signaling connection release: The MM context shall move to PMM-IDLE state when the PS signaling~~RRC~~ connection is released.~~ RNC deletes all information on UE.~~

Moving from PMM-IDLE to PMM-CONNECTED in ~~UE~~MS

- PS signaling~~RRC~~ connection establishment: The MM context shall move to PMM-CONNECTED state when the PS signaling connection is established between MS and SGSN. ~~SM Service Request or Routing Area Update is accepted by 3G-SGSN.~~

Moving from PMM-IDLE to PMM-DETACHED in ~~UE~~MS

- ~~- PS detach: UE initiates PS detach or PS detach request is received from 3G-SGSN. The MM context in UE is deleted.~~

- Implicit PS detach: The MM context shall locally move from PMM-IDLE to PMM-DETACHED state, e.g. in the case of the removal of the battery, USIM or GSM SIM card from the terminal.

Moving from PMM-DETACHED to PMM-CONNECTED in 3G-SGSN

- PS attach: The MM context shall move to PMM-CONNECTED state when a PS signalling connection is established between MS and SGSN for performing the PS attach.~~ request is received from UE~~. ~~When~~If the PS attach is accepted, an MM context is created in 3G-SGSN.

Moving from PMM-CONNECTED to PMM-DETACHED in 3G-SGSN

- PS detach: The MM context shall move to PMM-DETACHED state when the PS signalling connection is released between MS and SGSN after MS has performed PS detach or the network initiated PS detach is performed.~~PS detach request is received from UE or PS detach initiated by the network is accepted.~~ The MM context in 3G-SGSN may be~~is~~ deleted~~ preferably after an implementation dependent time~~.

- ~~–~~RAU reject: The MM context shall move to PMM-DETACHED state when the PS signalling connection is released between MS and SGSN after ~~UE initiated~~ RAU is rejected. ~~The MM context in 3G-SGSN is deleted preferably after an implementation dependent time.~~

- PS Attach reject: The MM context shall move to PMM-DETACHED state when a PS signalling connection is released between MS and SGSN after PS Attach is rejected by 3G-SGSN.

Moving from PMM-CONNECTED to PMM-IDLE in 3G-SGSN

- ~~Iu~~PS signaling connection release: The MM context shall move to PMM-IDLE state when the PS signaling connection is released.~~A request to release Iu connection is accepted by RNC. RNC deletes all information on UE~~.

Moving from PMM-IDLE to PMM-CONNECTED in 3G-SGSN

- ~~Iu~~ PS signaling connection establishment: The MM context shall move to PMM-CONNECTED state when the PS signaling connection is established.~~SM Service Request or Routing Area Update is received from UE.~~

Moving from PMM-IDLE to PMM-DETACHED in 3G-SGSN

- ~~- PS detach: PS detach request is received from UE or PS detach initiated by the network is accepted. The MM context in 3G-SGSN is deleted preferably after an implementation dependent time.~~

- Implicit PS detach: After MS reachable timer expiry 3G-SGSN may change the state locally. The MM and PDP context(s) in 3G-SGSN may be deleted preferably after an implementation dependent time.

6.2.5.1 Error Cases

In case of an error, the PMM state of the ~~UE~~MS and the 3G-SGSN may lose synchronisation. In this case the ~~UE~~MS may be in the PMM-IDLE state while the 3G-SGSN is in the PMM-CONNECTED state.

NOTE: The opposite (~~UE~~MS in the PMM-CONNECTED state and SGSN in the PMM-IDLE state) shall never happen because the 3G-SGSN may not have the RAI where the ~~UE~~MS is really located, so downlink transfer is impossible until the periodic URA update timer expires.

This situation is recovered by a successful RAU moving the ~~UE~~MS to the PMM-CONNECTED state, or by a failed downlink transfer with cause "IMSI unknown in RNC"~~,~~ triggering a paging procedure from the 3G-SGSN.

NOTE: An RNC~~S~~ shall not release the Iu connection if it could not inform the ~~UE~~MS that the radio connection was released.

6.X~~6.2.5.2~~ Service Request Procedure~~s~~

The Service Request procedure is used by a MS in PMM-IDLE state to request the establishment of a secure connection to a 3G-SGSN. The MS in PMM-IDLE state initiates this procedure in order to send uplink signaling message (e.g.

Activate PDP Context Request) or user data. This procedure is also used by a MS in PMM-CONNECTED state to request the resource reservation for the active PDP contexts.

6.X.1~~6.2.5.2.1~~ Service Request Procedure Initiated by MS~~Uplink Transmission Procedure~~

The~~is procedure is used by a~~ ~~e~~~~UE~~MS in PMM-IDLE state sends the Service Request message to the 3G-SGSN in order to establish the PS signaling connection for the upper layer signaling or for the resource reservation for the active PDP contexts. After the Service Request message 3G-SGSN may perform authentication and it shall perform the security mode procedure. After the establishment of the secure PS signaling connection to a 3G-SGSN the MS may send signaling message e.g. Activate PDP context Request to the 3G-SGSN or the 3G-SGSN may start the resource reservation for the active PDP contexts depending on the requested service in the Service Request message.~~request the establishment of a secure connection to a 3G-SGSN. The UE in PMM-IDLE state initiates this procedure if it needs to send an uplink message (e.g., Activate PDP Context Request, MO SMS, or user data).~~ This procedure is also used by a ~~UE~~MS in PMM-CONNECTED state ~~(only signalling connection exists)~~ to request the resource reservation for the active ~~reactivation of~~ PDP contexts. ~~The service request procedure is a PMM procedure.~~

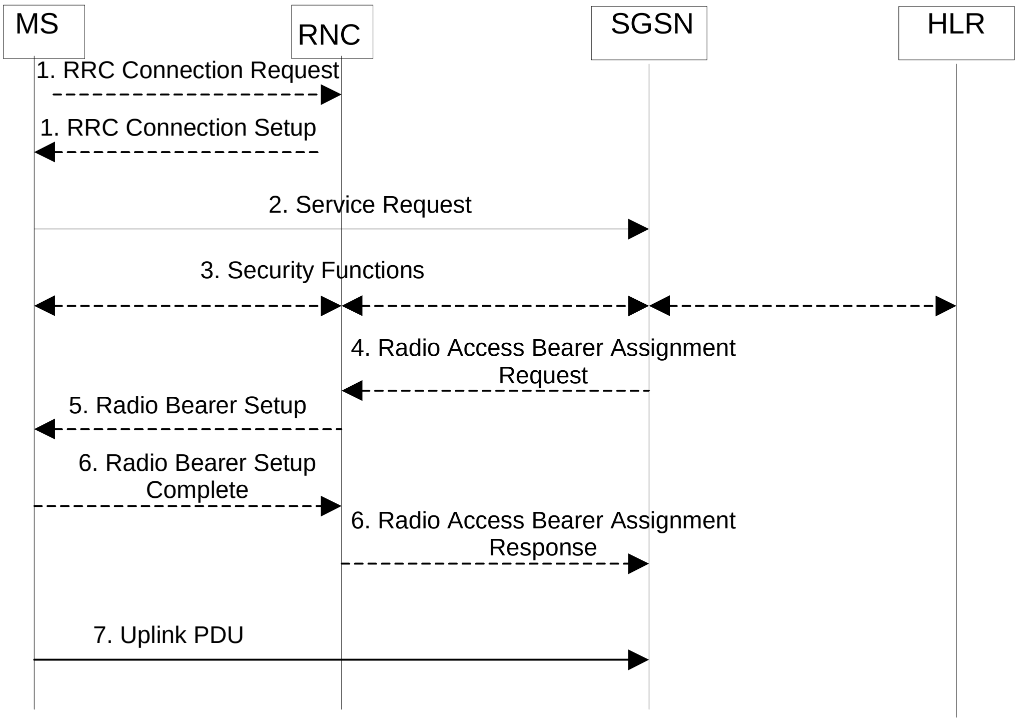


Figure 4: ~~Uplink Transmission Procedure~~Service Request procedure initiated by MS

~~Editor's Note: Messages 3-6 are dashed.~~

1) The ~~UE~~MS establishes an RRC connection, if none exists for CS traffic.

2) The ~~UE~~MS sends a~~n MM~~ Service Request (PTMSI, PTMSI Signature, RAI, CKSN, Service Type) message to the SGSN. Service Type specifies the requested service. Service Type shall indicate one of the following: data or signaling. At this point, the SGSN may perform the authentication procedure.

   If the Service Type indicates data then the signaling connection is requested be established between the MS and SGSN and the resources for the active PDP Context(s) are requested to be allocated ~~Reactivation to request~~ i.e. RAB establishment for the ~~previously~~ activated PDP context(s).

   If the Service Type indicates signaling then the signaling connection is requested be established between the MS and SGSN for sending upper layer signaling messages, e.g. Activate PDP Context Request. The resources for the active PDP Context(s) are not requested to be allocated.~~, SM signaling to indicate that SM signaling, e.g.~~

~~Activate PDP Context Request, follows, or SMS to indicate only MO SMS transfer and no need to request RAB establishment for the previously activated PDP context(s). indicate to the SGSN that a radio bearer needs to be established for this UE, and that a cipher command procedure needs to be performed. At this point, the SGSN may perform the authentication procedure.~~

3) The SGSN ~~may~~ shall perform the security~~cipher~~ ~~mode procedure~~functions if the Service Request was initiated by the MS is in PMM-IDLE state.

4) In case Service Type indicates ~~PDP Context Reactivation~~data ~~resources for PDP contexts are re-established~~, the SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Request (NSAPI(s), Tunnel Identity(ies), QoS Profile(s), SGSN IP Address(es)) message to re-establish radio access bearer for every activated PDP context. ~~(FFS). The inclusion of the RRC-Connection-Release timer value sent from the Core Network to the RNC (within the Radio Access Bearer Assignment Request message or by a different message) is FFS.~~

5) The RNC indicates to the ~~UE~~MS the new Radio Bearer Identity~~D~~ established and the corresponding NSAPI with the RRC radio bearer set-up procedure. ~~(FFS)~~

6) SRNC replies with the Radio Access Bearer Assignment Response~~Complete~~ (NSAPI(s), Tunnel Identity(ies), QoS Profile(s), RNC IP Address(es)) message. The GTP tunnel(s) are established on the Iu interface.

7) The ~~UE~~MS sends the uplink packet.

~~NOTE:~~ The ~~UE~~MS knows that the Service Request message was successfully received in the SGSN when the ~~UE~~MS receives the RRC Security~~Cipher~~ Mode Control Command message. It is, however, possible that the security mode procedure is not performed, e.g. the Service Request message indicating the Service Type data is sent after RAU procedure via the same PS signaling connection. For such cases, Service Accept message may ~~is~~be needed and it ~~shall~~should be treated as a service acceptance indication by the ~~UE~~MS.

If the service request cannot be accepted, the network returns a Service Reject message to the mobile station.

6.X.2~~2.5.2.1~~ Service Request Procedure Initiated by the Network~~Downlink Transmission Procedure~~

When the 3G-SGSN receives a downlink packet (e.g., Request PDP Context Activation, MT SMS, user data) for a ~~UE~~MS in PMM-IDLE state, the 3G-SGSN sends a paging request to UTRAN. The paging request triggers the Service Request procedure in the ~~UE~~MS.

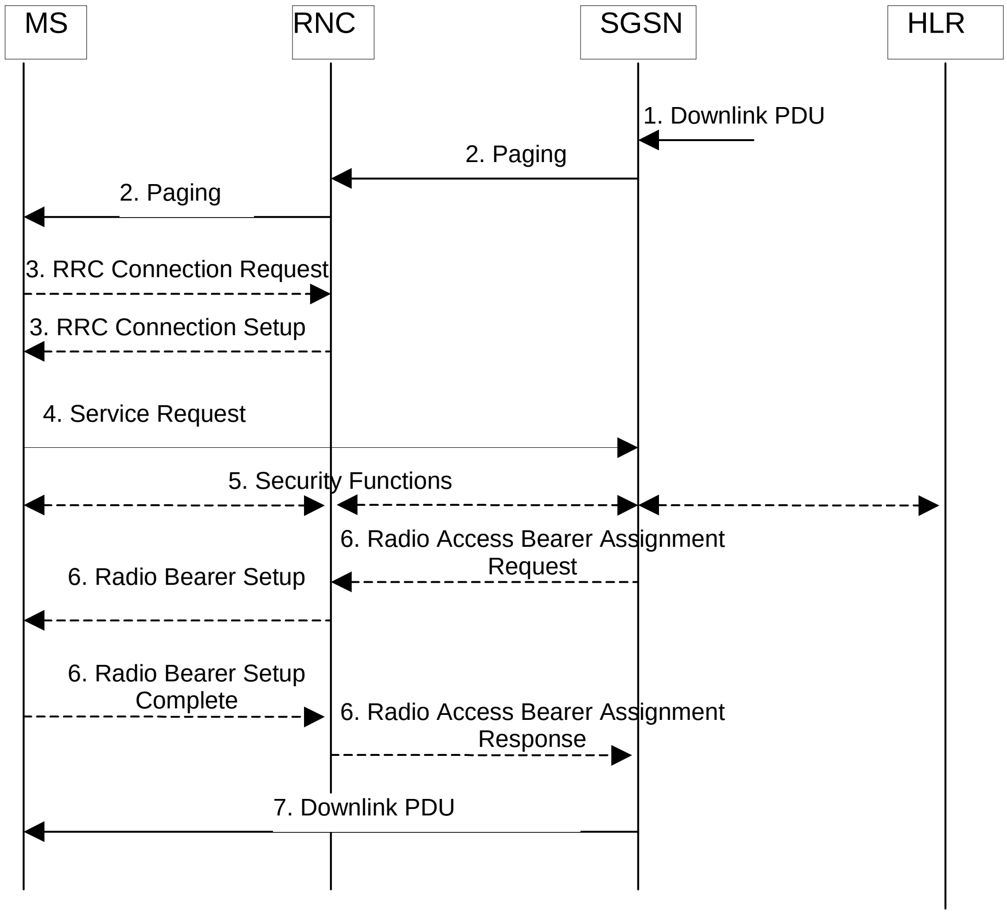


Figure 5: Service Request procedure initiated by network~~Downlink Transmission Procedure~~

1) The SGSN receives a downlink packet for a ~~UE~~MS in PMM-IDLE state.

2) The SGSN sends a Paging (IMSI, P-TMSI, RAI, Paging Cause) message to the RNC. The RNC pages the ~~UE~~MS by sending a Paging (P-TMSI or IMSI, Paging Cause) message to the ~~UE~~MS.

3) The ~~UE~~MS establishes an RRC connection if none exists for CS traffic.

4) The ~~UE~~MS sends a Service Request (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, RAI, CKSN, Service Type) message to the SGSN. Service Type specifies Paging Response. The Service Request~~that~~ is carried over the radio in an RRC Direct Transfer message and~~. The Service Request message is carried~~ over the Iu interface in the RANAP Initial ~~UE~~MS message. At this point, the SGSN may perform the authentication procedure. The SGSN knows whether the downlink packet requires RAB establishment (e.g., downlink PDU) or not (e.g., Request PDP Context Activation, or MT SMS).~~The message requests setting up all radio access bearers for the UE and to perform the cipher mode procedure.~~

5) The SGSN ~~may~~ shall perform the security~~cipher~~ mode procedure.

6) If resources for the PDP contexts are re-established, the SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Request (NSAPI(s), Tunnel Identity(ies), QoS Profile(s), SGSN IP Address(es)) message to the RNC. The RNC sends a Radio Access Bearer Setup (RAB Identity, NSAPI) to the ~~UE~~MS. The ~~UE~~MS responds by returning a Radio Access Bearer Complete message to the RNC. The RNC sends a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Response (NSAPI(s), Tunnel Identity(ies), QoS Profile(s), RNC IP Address(es)) message to the SGSN in order to indicate that GTP tunnels are established on the Iu interface and radio access bearers are established between the RNC and the ~~UE~~MS.

7) The SGSN sends the downlink packet.

3GPP TSG-SA meeting ad-hoc meeting ***Document* S2G99050**

Helsinki, 5-7 October 1999

3G CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060 CR A038 rev.3 Current Version: 3.1.0 Draft2

3G specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by 3G support team*

For submision to TSG	SA#5	for approval	X	*(only one box should*
list TSG meeting no. here ↑		for information		*be marked with an X)*

Form: 3G CR cover sheet, version 1.0 The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/3GCRF-xx.rtf

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	USIM	X	ME	X	UTRAN	X	Core Network	X

Source: Nokia **Date:** 30.09.99

Subject: Location Management and attach procedure for UMTS

3G Work item:

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	
A	Corresponds to a correction in a 2G specification	
B	Addition of feature	X
C	Functional modification of feature	
D	Editorial modification	

Reason for change: The CR proposes text to add Location Management and attach procedure for UMTS.

Clauses affected: Chapter 6.5 and 6.9 are modified.

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
Other 2G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

6.5.2 UMTS PS Attach Function

~~[FFS. Preferably this should be based on the GPRS RA Update procedure.]~~[Editor note: It is an outstanding task to merge this section with "GPRS Attach Function"section]

A PS-attached MS makes CS attach via the SGSN with the combined RA / LA update procedure if the network operation mode is I. In network operation modes II, or if the MS is not PS-attached, then the MS makes CS-attach normally. An CS-attached MS engaged in a CS connection shall use the (non-combined) PS Attach procedure when it performs a PS attach.

In the attach procedure, the MS shall provide its identity and an indication of which type of attach that is to be executed. The identity provided to the network shall be the MS's Packet TMSI (P-TMSI) or IMSI. P-TMSI and the RAI associated with the P-TMSI shall be provided if the MS has a valid P-TMSI. If the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI, then the MS shall provide its IMSI. The different types of attach are PS attach and combined PS / CS attach.

After having executed the PS attach, the MS is in PMM-Connected state and MM contexts are established in the MS and the SGSN. The MS may then activate PDP contexts as described in subclause "Activation Procedures".

An CS-attached MS that cannot operate in CS/PS mode of operation shall follow the normal CS detach procedure before it makes a PS attach. A PS-attached MS that cannot operate in CS/PS mode of operation shall perform a PS detach before it makes an CS attach.

The Combined PS / CS Attach procedure is illustrated in Figure 1. Each step is explained in the following list.

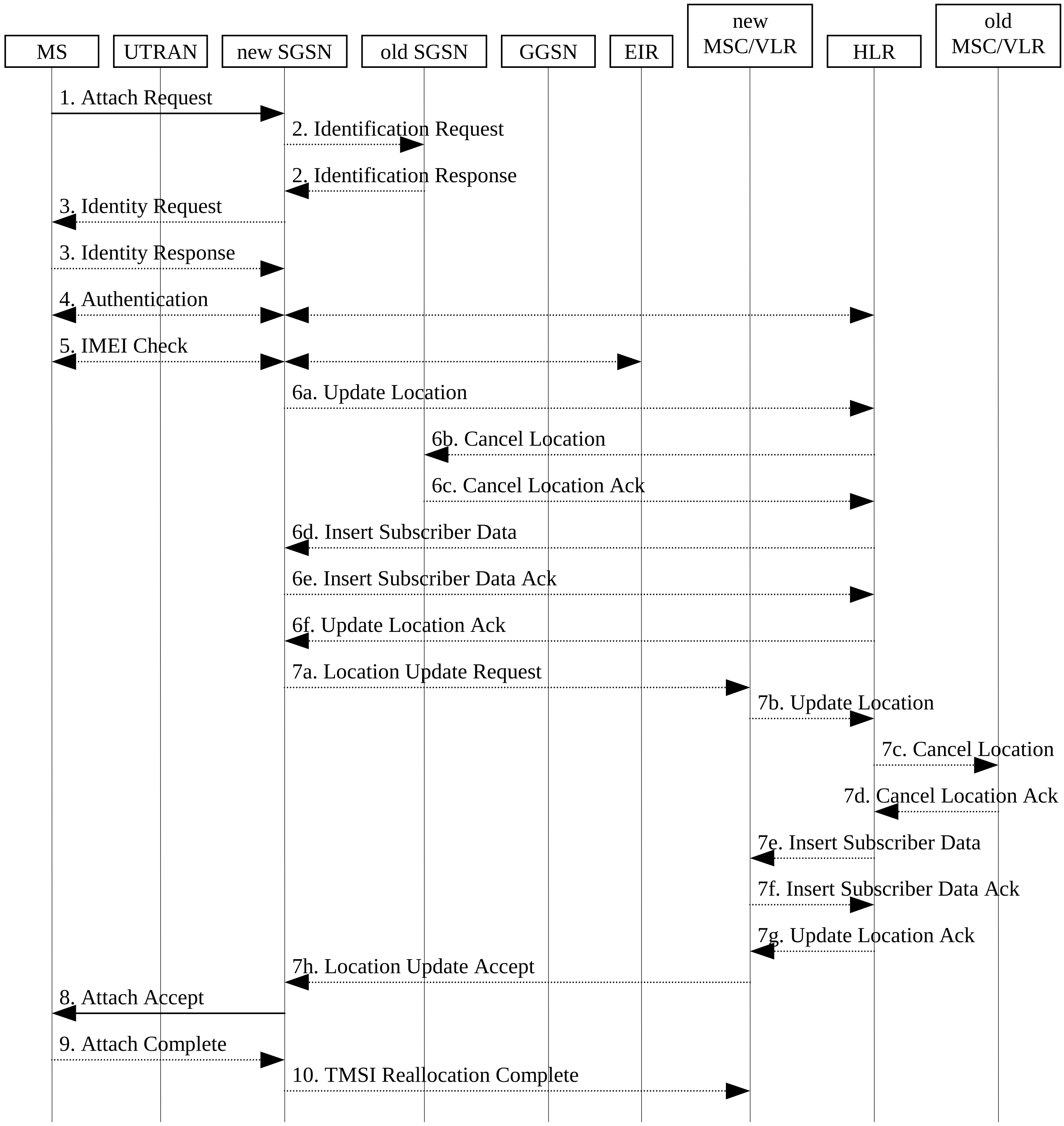


Figure 1: Combined PS / CS Attach Procedure

- 1) The MS initiates the attach procedure by the transmission of an Attach Request (IMSI or P-TMSI and old RAI, Core Network Classmark, KSI, Attach Type, old P-TMSI Signature, Follow on request) message to the SGSN. IMSI shall be included if the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI available. If the MS uses P-TMSI for identifying itself and if it has also stored its old P-TMSI Signature, then the MS shall include the old P-TMSI Signature in the Attach Request message. If the MS has a valid P-TMSI, then P-TMSI and the old RAI associated with P-TMSI shall be included. KSI shall be included if the MS has valid security parameters. Core Network Classmark is describe in section " Core Network Classmark". Follow on request shall be set by MS if there is pending uplink traffic (signaling or user data). The SGSN may use, as an implementation option, the follow on request indication to release or keep the Iu connection after the completion of the PS Attach procedure.Attach Type indicates which type of attach that is to be performed, i.e., PS attach only, PS Attach while already CS attached, or combined PS / CS attach.

2) If the MS identifies itself with P-TMSI and the SGSN has changed since detach, the new SGSN sends an Identification Request (P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature) to the old SGSN to request the IMSI. The old SGSN responds with Identification Response (IMSI, Authentication vector). If the MS is not known in the old SGSN, the old SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause. The old SGSN also validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old SGSN.

3) If the MS is unknown in both the old and new SGSN, the SGSN sends an Identity Request (Identity Type = IMSI) to the MS. The MS responds with Identity Response (IMSI).

4) The authentication functions are defined in the subclause "Security Function". If no MM context for the MS exists anywhere in the network, then authentication is mandatory. Ciphering procedures are described in subclause "Security Function". If P-TMSI allocation is going to be done, and if ciphering is supported by the network, ciphering mode shall be set.

5) The equipment checking functions are defined in the subclause "Identity Check Procedures". Equipment checking is optional.

6) If the SGSN number has changed since the GPRS detach, or if it is the very first attach, then the SGSN informs the HLR:

   a) The SGSN sends an Update Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) to the HLR.

   b) The HLR sends Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) to the old SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Update Procedure.

   c) The old SGSN acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI). If there are any ongoing procedures for that MS, the old SGSN shall wait until these procedures are finished before removing the MM and PDP contexts.

   d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS subscription data) to the new SGSN.

   e) The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the (new) RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to attach in the RA, the SGSN rejects the Attach Request with an appropriate cause, and may return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, SGSN Area Restricted) message to the HLR. If subscription checking fails for other reasons, the SGSN rejects the Attach Request with an appropriate cause and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, Cause) message to the HLR. If all checks are successful then the SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

   f) The HLR acknowledges the Update Location message by sending an Update Location Ack to the SGSN after the cancelling of old MM context and insertion of new MM context are finished. If the Update Location is rejected by the HLR, the SGSN rejects the Attach Request from the MS with an appropriate cause.

7) If Attach Type in step 1 indicated PS Attach while already CS attached, or combined PS / CS attach, then the VLR shall be updated if the Gs interface is installed. The VLR number is derived from the RA information. The SGSN starts the location update procedure towards the new MSC/VLR upon receipt of the first Insert Subscriber Data message from the HLR in step 6 d). This operation marks the MS as GPRS-attached in the VLR.

   a) The SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) message to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate CS attach if Attach Type indicated combined PS / CS attach. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR creates an association with the SGSN by storing SGSN Number.

   b) If the LA update is inter-MSC, the new VLR sends Update Location (IMSI, new VLR) to the HLR.

   c) If the LA update is inter-MSC, the HLR sends a Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.

   d) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

   e) If the LA update is inter-MSC, the HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.

   f) The VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).

   g) After finishing the inter-MSC location update procedures, the HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.

h) The VLR responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the SGSN.

8) The SGSN selects Radio Priority SMS, and sends an Attach Accept (P-TMSI, VLR TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Radio Priority SMS) message to the MS. P-TMSI is included if the SGSN allocates a new P-TMSI.

9) If P-TMSI or VLR TMSI was changed, the MS acknowledges the received TMSI(s) with Attach Complete (P-TMSI, VLR TMSI).

10) If VLR TMSI was changed, the SGSN confirms the VLR TMSI re-allocation by sending TMSI Reallocation Complete (VLR TMSI) to the VLR.

If the Attach Request cannot be accepted, the SGSN returns an Attach Reject (IMSI, Cause) message to the MS.

[…]

6.9 Location Management Function

The Location Management function:

- provides mechanisms for cell and PLMN selection;
- provides a mechanism for the network to know the Routeing Area for MSs in STANDBY, PMM-IDLE, PMM-CONNECTED and READY states;
- provides a mechanism for the 2G-SGSN to know the cell identity for MSs in READY state; and
- provides a mechanism for the UTRAN to know the URA identity or cell identity for MSs in PMM-CONNECTED state.
- provides a mechanism for the UTRAN to indicate to an MS in RRC Connected mode when a Routing Area Update procedure shall be perform by providing the RAI.
- provides a mechanism for the network to know the address of the Serving RNC handling a UMTS MS in PMM-CONNECTED state. This mechanism is the Serving RNC relocation procedure.

Note: The SGSN may not know the Routing Area where the UMTS MS is physically located for MS is in RRC Connected mode. An MS in PMM CONNECTED state is necessarly in RRC Connected mode. An MS in PMM-IDLE state is in RRC Connected mode only if the MS is in CS MM CONNECTED state.

In UMTS, the tracking of the location of the MS is on three levels (cell, URA, or RA) [see 3GPP TS23.121 for details].

In GPRS, the tracking of the location of the MS is on two levels (cell or RA).

Routeing Area (RA) is defined in subclause "Routeing Area Identity".

6.9.1 Location Management Procedures for GPRS

The PLMN shall provide information for the MS to be able to:

- detect when it has entered a new cell or a new RA; and
- determine when to perform periodic RA updates.

The MS detects that a new cell has been entered by comparing the cell's identity with the cell identity stored in the MS's MM context. The MS detects that a new RA has been entered by periodically comparing the RAI stored in its MM context with that received from the new cell. The MS shall consider hysteresis in signal strength measurements.

When the MS camps on a new cell, possibly in a new RA, this indicates one of three possible scenarios:

- a cell update is required;
- a routeing area update is required; or

- a combined routeing area and location area update is required.

In all three scenarios the MS stores the cell identity in its MM context.

If the MS enters a new PLMN, the MS shall either perform a routeing area update, or enter IDLE state.

In network mode of operation II and III, whenever an MS determines that it shall perform both an LA update and an RA update, the MS shall perform the LA update first.

Routeing Area Update Request messages shall be sent unciphered, since in the inter SGSN routeing area update case the new SGSN shall be able to process the request.

6.9.1.1 Cell Update Procedure

A cell update takes place when the MS enters a new cell inside the current RA and the MS is in READY state. If the RA has changed, a routeing area update is executed instead of a cell update.

The MS performs the cell update procedure by sending an uplink LLC frame of any type containing the MS's identity to the SGSN. In the direction towards the SGSN, the BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including RAC and LAC to all BSSGP frames, see GSM 08.18. A cell update is any correctly received and valid LLC PDU carried inside a BSSGP PDU containing a new identifier of the cell.

The SGSN records this MS's change of cell, and further traffic directed towards the MS is conveyed over the new cell.

~~6.9.2 Location Management Procedures for UMTS~~

~~Refer to UMTS 25.301 for further information on the location management procedures for the UMTS radio.~~

6.9.1.2~~3~~ Routeing Area Update Procedure

A routeing area update takes place when ~~an MS wants to attach to the SGSN-based services, or when~~ a PS-attached MS detects that it has entered a new RA, when the periodic RA update timer has expired, or, for GPRS, when a suspended MS is not resumed by the BSS (see subclause "Suspension of GPRS Services"). The SGSN detects that it is an intra SGSN routeing area update by noticing that it also handles the old RA. In this case, the SGSN has the necessary information about the MS and there is no need to inform the GGSNs or the HLR about the new MS location. A periodic RA update is always an intra SGSN routeing area update.

An MS in READY state due to anonymous access shall not perform routeing area updates for the AA MM context. If the MS has entered a new routeing area, a new Anonymous Access PDP Context Activation procedure shall be initiated. The old context is implicitly deleted upon expiry of the READY timer.

6.9.1.2.1 Intra SGSN Routeing Area Update

The Intra SGSN Routeing Area Update procedure is illustrated in Figure 2. Each step is explained in the following list.

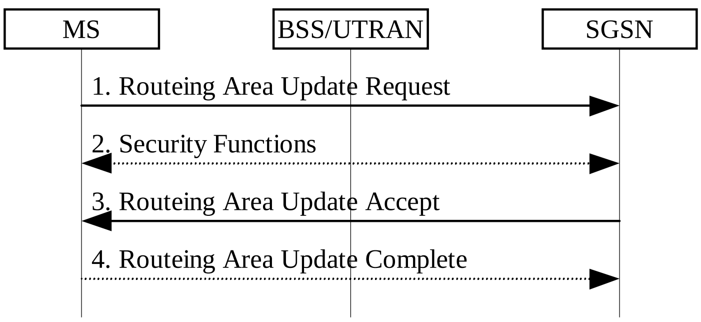


Figure 2: Intra SGSN Routeing Area Update Procedure

1) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (~~IMSI or~~ P-TMSI, ~~and~~ old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature~~,~~ ~~Classmark~~, Update Type) to the SGSN. Update Type shall indicate RA update or~~,~~ periodic RA update~~, or PS attach~~. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message

was received before passing the message to the SGSN, see GSM 08.18.~~[UTRAN shall add the RAC and LAC of the cell where the MS is registered (FFS).]~~

2) Security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) The SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, or if subscription checking fails, then the SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the SGSN updates the MM context for the MS. A new P-TMSI may be allocated. A Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature) is returned to the MS.

4) If P-TMSI was reallocated, the MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI with Routeing Area Update Complete (P-TMSI).

If the routeing area update procedure fails a maximum allowable number of times, or if the SGSN returns a Routeing Area Update Reject (Cause) message, the MS shall enter IDLE state.

~~[The following RAU procedures are not yet updated. It could save paper to have a single description of all RAU procedures]~~

6.9.1.2.2 Inter SGSN Routeing Area Update

The Inter SGSN Routeing Area Update procedure is illustrated in Figure 3. Each step is explained in the following list.

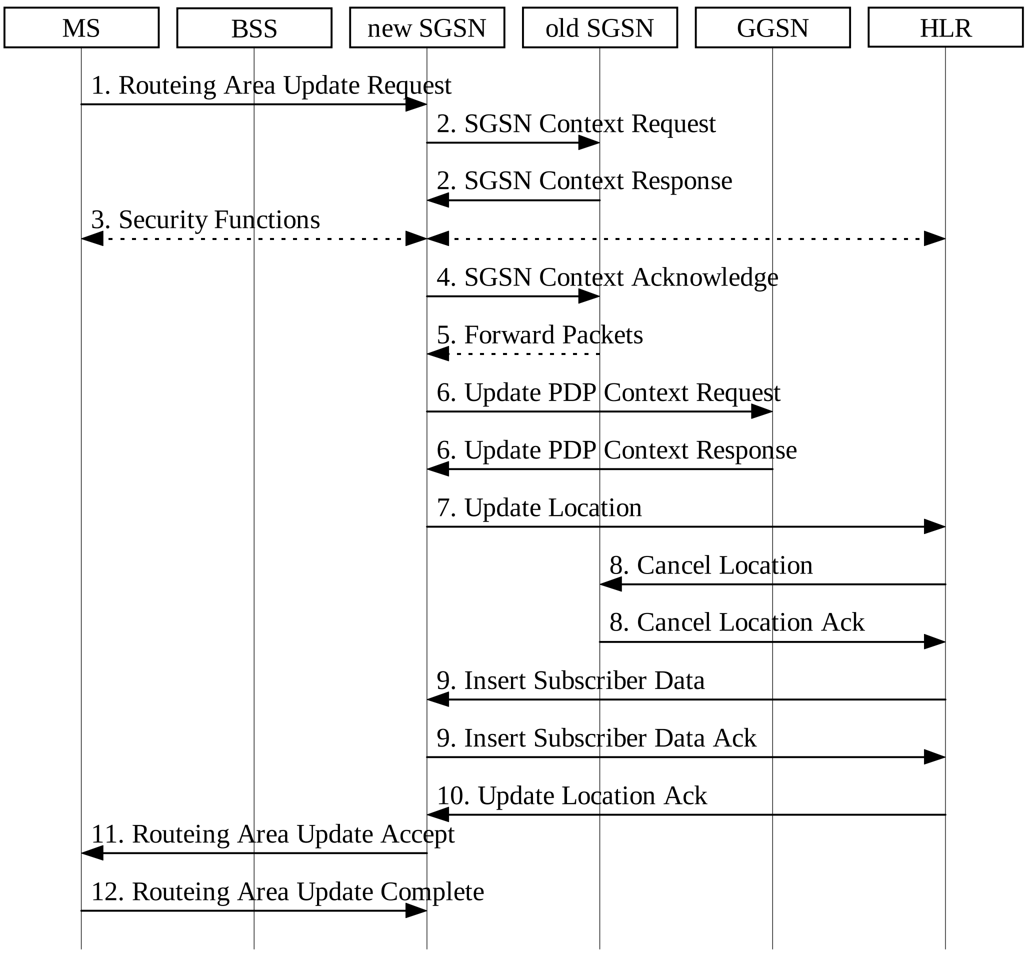


Figure 3: Inter SGSN Routeing Area Update Procedure

1) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) to the new SGSN. Update Type shall indicate RA update or periodic RA update. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the SGSN.

2) The new SGSN sends SGSN Context Request (old RAI, TLLI, old P-TMSI Signature, New SGSN Address) to the old SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old SGSN validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old SGSN. This should initiate the security functions in the new SGSN. If the security functions authenticate the MS correctly, the new SGSN shall send an SGSN Context Request (old RAI, TLLI, MS Validated, New SGSN Address) message to the old SGSN. MS Validated indicates that the new SGSN has authenticated the MS. If the old P-TMSI Signature was valid or if the new SGSN indicates that it has authenticated the MS, the old SGSN stops assigning SNDCP N-PDU numbers to downlink N-PDUs received, and responds with SGSN Context Response (MM Context, PDP Contexts). If the MS is not known in the old SGSN, the old SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause. The old SGSN stores New SGSN Address, to allow the old SGSN to forward data packets to the new SGSN. Each PDP Context includes the SNDCP Send N-PDU Number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent in acknowledged mode to the MS, the SNDCP Receive N-PDU Number for the next uplink N-PDU to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS, the GTP sequence number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS and the GTP sequence number for the next uplink N-PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. The old SGSN starts a timer and stops the transmission of N-PDUs to the MS.

3) Security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function". Ciphering mode shall be set if ciphering is supported.

4) The new SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old SGSN. This informs the old SGSN that the new SGSN is ready to receive data packets belonging to the activated PDP contexts. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a routeing area update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing routeing area update procedure. If the security functions do not authenticate the MS correctly, then the routeing area update shall be rejected, and the new SGSN shall send a reject indication to the old SGSN. The old SGSN shall continue as if the SGSN Context Request was never received.

5) The old SGSN duplicates the buffered N-PDUs and starts tunnelling them to the new SGSN. Additional N-PDUs received from the GGSN before the timer described in step 2 expires are also duplicated and tunnelled to the new SGSN. N-PDUs that were already sent to the MS in acknowledged mode and that are not yet acknowledged by the MS are tunnelled together with the SNDCP N-PDU number. No N-PDUs shall be forwarded to the new SGSN after expiry of the timer described in step 2.

6) The new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, TID, QoS Negotiated) to the GGSNs concerned. The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return Update PDP Context Response (TID).

7) The new SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending Update Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) to the HLR.

8) The HLR sends Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) to the old SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Update Procedure. If the timer described in step 2 is not running, then the old SGSN removes the MM and PDP contexts. Otherwise, the contexts are removed only when the timer expires. This allows the old SGSN to complete the forwarding of N-PDUs. It also ensures that the MM and PDP contexts are kept in the old SGSN in case the MS initiates another inter SGSN routeing area update before completing the ongoing routeing area update to the new SGSN. The old SGSN acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

9) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS subscription data) to the new SGSN. The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the (new) RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, the SGSN rejects the Routeing Area Update Request with an appropriate cause, and may return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, SGSN Area Restricted) message to the HLR. If all checks are successful then the SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

10) The HLR acknowledges the Update Location by sending Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new SGSN.

11) The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the new SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new SGSN constructs MM and PDP contexts for the MS. A logical link is established between the new SGSN and the MS. The new SGSN responds to the MS with Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Receive N-PDU Number). Receive N-PDU

Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-originated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure.

12) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI with a Routeing Area Update Complete (P-TMSI, Receive N-PDU Number). Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-terminated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure. If Receive N-PDU Number confirms reception of N-PDUs that were forwarded from the old SGSN, then these N-PDUs shall be discarded by the new SGSN. LLC and SNDCP in the MS are reset.

In the case of a rejected routeing area update operation, due to regional subscription or roaming restrictions, the new SGSN shall not construct an MM context. A reject shall be returned to the MS with an appropriate cause. The MS shall not re-attempt a routeing area update to that RA. The RAI value shall be deleted when the MS is powered-up.

If the SGSN is unable to update the PDP context in one or more GGSNs, then the SGSN shall deactivate the corresponding PDP contexts as described in subclause "PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure". This shall not cause the SGSN to reject the routeing area update.

If the timer described in step 2 expires and no Cancel Location (IMSI) was received from the HLR, then the old SGSN shall stop forwarding N-PDUs to the new SGSN.

If the routeing area update procedure fails a maximum allowable number of times, or if the SGSN returns a Routeing Area Update Reject (Cause) message, the MS shall enter IDLE state.

6.9.1.3 Combined RA / LA Update Procedure

A combined RA / LA update takes place in network operation mode I when the MS enters a new RA or when a GPRS-attached MS performs IMSI attach. The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request indicating that an LA update may also need to be performed, in which case the SGSN forwards the LA update to the VLR. This concerns only idle mode (see GSM 03.22), as no combined RA / LA updates are performed during a CS connection.

6.9.1.3.1 Combined Intra SGSN RA / LA Update

The Combined RA / LA Update (intra SGSN) procedure is illustrated in **Error! Reference source not found.**. Each step is explained in the following list.

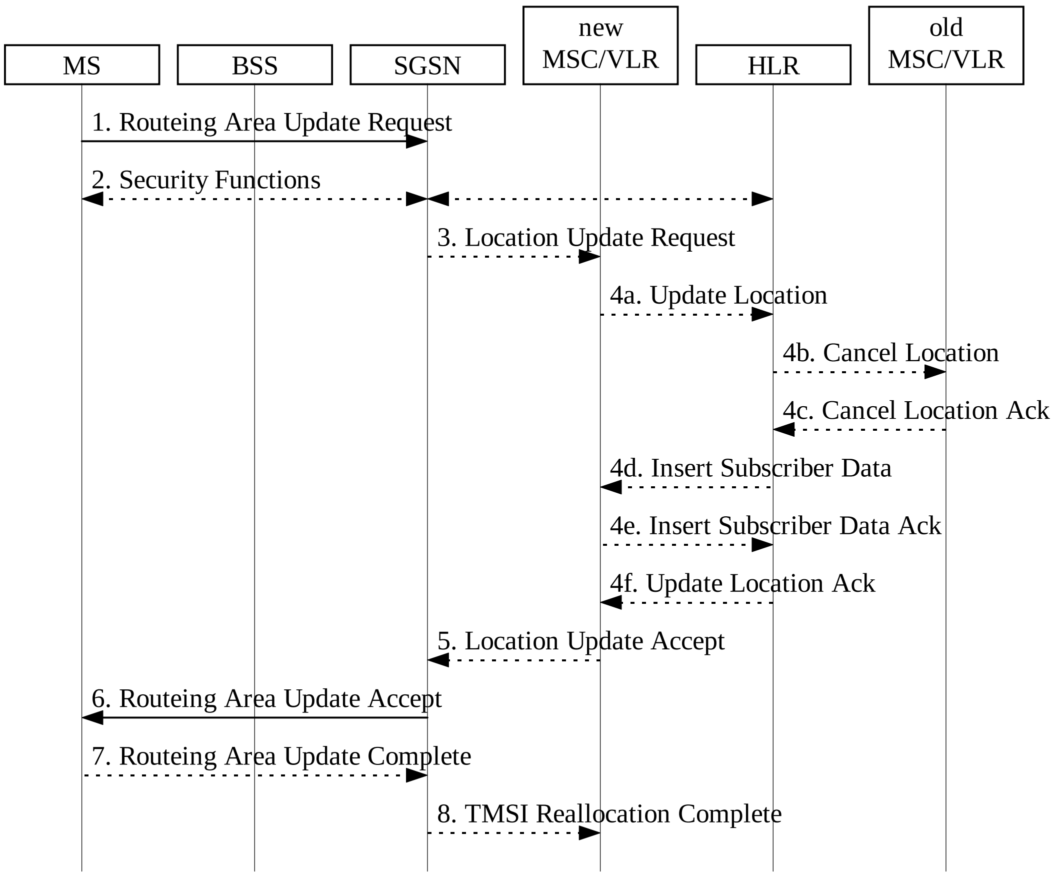


Figure 4: Combined RA / LA Update in the Case of Intra SGSN RA Update Procedure

1) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) to the SGSN. Update Type shall indicate combined RA / LA update, or, if the MS wants to perform an IMSI attach, combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the SGSN.

2) Security functions may be executed. This procedure is defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) If the association has to be established, if Update Type indicates combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested, or if the LA changed with the routeing area update, then the SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate IMSI attach if Update Type in step 1 indicated combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR number is translated from the RAI via a table in the SGSN. The VLR creates or updates the association with the SGSN by storing SGSN Number.

4) If the subscriber data in the VLR is marked as not confirmed by the HLR, then the new VLR informs the HLR. The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR and inserts subscriber data in the new VLR (this signalling is not modified from existing GSM signalling and is included here for illustrative purposes):

   a) The new VLR sends an Update Location (new VLR) to the HLR.

   b) The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR by sending Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.

   c) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

   d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.

   e) The new VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).

   f) The HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.

5) The new VLR allocates a new VLR TMSI and responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the SGSN. VLR TMSI is optional if the VLR has not changed.

6) The SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, or if subscription checking fails, then the SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the SGSN updates the MM context for the MS. A new P-TMSI may be allocated. The SGSN responds to the MS with Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, VLR TMSI, P-TMSI Signature).

7) If a new P-TMSI or VLR TMSI was received, then the MS confirms the reallocation of the TMSIs by sending Routeing Area Update Complete (P-TMSI, VLR TMSI) message to the SGSN.

8) The SGSN sends TMSI Reallocation Complete (VLR TMSI) to the VLR if the VLR TMSI is confirmed by the MS.

If the routeing area update procedure fails a maximum allowable number of times, or if the SGSN returns a Routeing Area Update Reject (Cause) message, the MS shall enter IDLE state.

If the Location Update Accept message indicates a reject, then this should be indicated to the MS, and the MS shall not access non-GPRS services until a successful Location Update is performed.

6.9.1.3.2 Combined Inter SGSN RA / LA Update

The Combined RA / LA Update (inter SGSN) procedure is illustrated in Error! Reference source not found.. Each step is explained in the following list.

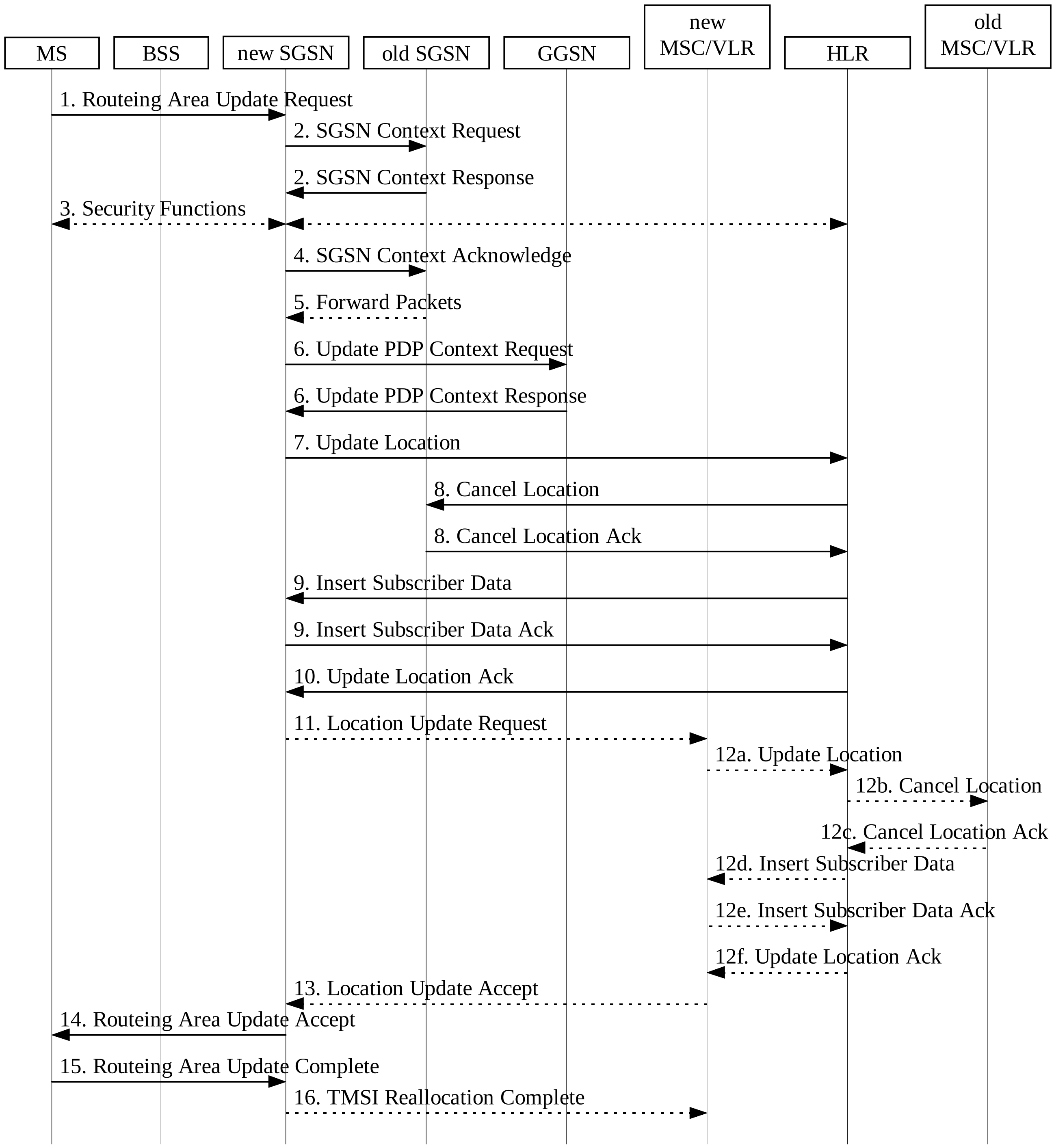


Figure 5: Combined RA / LA Update in the Case of Inter SGSN RA Update Procedure

1) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) to the new SGSN. Update Type shall indicate combined RA / LA update, or, if the MS wants to perform an IMSI attach, combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the SGSN.

2) The new SGSN sends SGSN Context Request (old RAI, TLLI, old P-TMSI Signature, New SGSN Address) to the old SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old SGSN validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old SGSN. This should initiate the security functions in the new SGSN. If the security functions authenticate the MS correctly, the new SGSN shall send an SGSN Context Request (old RAI, TLLI, MS Validated, New SGSN Address) message to the old SGSN. MS Validated indicates that the new SGSN has authenticated the MS. If the old P-TMSI Signature was valid or if the new SGSN indicates that it has authenticated the MS, the old SGSN stops assigning SNDCP N-PDU numbers to downlink N-PDUs received, and responds with SGSN Context Response (MM Context, PDP Contexts). If the MS is not known in the old SGSN, the old SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause. The old SGSN stores New SGSN Address until the old MM context is cancelled, to allow the old SGSN to forward data packets to the new SGSN. Each PDP Context includes the SNDCP Send N-PDU Number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent in acknowledged mode to the MS, the SNDCP Receive N-PDU Number for the next uplink N-PDU to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS, the GTP sequence number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS and the GTP sequence number for the next uplink N-PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. The old SGSN starts a timer and stops the downlink transfer.

3) Security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function". Ciphering mode shall be set if ciphering is supported.

4) The new SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old SGSN. This informs the old SGSN that the new SGSN is ready to receive data packets belonging to the activated PDP contexts. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a routeing area update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing routeing area update procedure. If the security functions do not authenticate the MS correctly, then the routeing area update shall be rejected, and the new SGSN shall send a reject indication to the old SGSN. The old SGSN shall continue as if the SGSN Context Request was never received.

5) The old SGSN duplicates the buffered N-PDUs and starts tunnelling them to the new SGSN. Additional N-PDUs received from the GGSN before the timer described in step 2 expires are also duplicated and tunnelled to the new SGSN. N-PDUs that were already sent to the MS in acknowledged mode and that are not yet acknowledged by the MS are tunnelled together with the SNDCP N-PDU number. No N-PDUs shall be forwarded to the new SGSN after expiry of the timer described in step 2.

6) The new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, TID, QoS Negotiated) to the GGSNs concerned. The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (TID).

7) The new SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending Update Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) to the HLR.

8) The HLR sends Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) to the old SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Update Procedure. If the timer described in step 2 is not running, then the old SGSN removes the MM and PDP contexts. Otherwise, the contexts are removed only when the timer expires. This allows the old SGSN to complete the forwarding of N-PDUs. It also ensures that the MM and PDP contexts are kept in the old SGSN in case the MS initiates another inter SGSN routeing area update before completing the ongoing routeing area update to the new SGSN. The old SGSN acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

9) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS subscription data) to the new SGSN. The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the (new) RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, the SGSN rejects the Routeing Area Update Request with an appropriate cause, and may return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, SGSN Area Restricted) message to the HLR. If all checks are successful then the SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

10) The HLR acknowledges the Update Location by sending Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new SGSN.

11) If the association has to be established, if Update Type indicates combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested, or if the LA changed with the routeing area update, then the new SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate IMSI attach if Update Type in step 1 indicated combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR number is translated from the RAI via a table in the SGSN. The SGSN starts the location update procedure towards the new MSC/VLR upon

receipt of the first Insert Subscriber Data message from the HLR in step 9). The VLR creates or updates the association with the SGSN by storing SGSN Number.

12) If the subscriber data in the VLR is marked as not confirmed by the HLR, the new VLR informs the HLR. The HLR cancels the old VLR and inserts subscriber data in the new VLR (this signalling is not modified from existing GSM signalling and is included here for illustrative purposes):

    a) The new VLR sends an Update Location (new VLR) to the HLR.

    b) The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR by sending Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.

    c) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

    d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.

    e) The new VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).

    f) The HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.

13) The new VLR allocates a new TMSI and responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the SGSN. VLR TMSI is optional if the VLR has not changed.

14) The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new SGSN establishes MM and PDP contexts for the MS. A logical link is established between the new SGSN and the MS. The new SGSN responds to the MS with Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, VLR TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Receive N-PDU Number). Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-originated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure.

15) The MS confirms the reallocation of the TMSIs by sending Routeing Area Update Complete (P-TMSI, VLR TMSI, Receive N-PDU Number) to the SGSN. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-terminated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure. If Receive N-PDU Number confirms reception of N-PDUs that were forwarded from the old SGSN, then these N-PDUs shall be discarded by the new SGSN. LLC and SNDCP in the MS are reset.

16) The new SGSN sends TMSI Reallocation Complete (VLR TMSI) to the new VLR if the VLR TMSI is confirmed by the MS.

In the case of a rejected routeing area update operation, due to regional subscription or roaming restrictions, the new SGSN shall not construct an MM context. A reject shall be returned to the MS with an appropriate cause. The MS shall not re-attempt a routeing area update to that RA. The RAI value shall be deleted when the MS is powered-up.

If the SGSN is unable to update the PDP context in one or more GGSNs, then the SGSN shall deactivate the corresponding PDP contexts as described in subclause "PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure". This shall not cause the SGSN to reject the routeing area update.

If the routeing area update procedure fails a maximum allowable number of times, or if the SGSN returns a Routeing Area Update Reject (Cause) message, the MS shall enter IDLE state.

If the timer described in step 2 expires and no Cancel Location (IMSI) was received from the HLR, then the old SGSN shall stop forwarding N-PDUs to the new SGSN.

If the Location Update Accept message indicates a reject, then this should be indicated to the MS, and the MS shall not access non-GPRS services until a successful location update is performed.

6.9.2 Location Management Procedures for UMTS

Refer to UMTS 25.301 for further information on the location management procedures for the UMTS radio.

The PLMN shall provide information for the MS to be able to:

- detect when it has entered a new cell or a new RA; and

- determine when to perform periodic RA updates.

In this specification, only the Location Management procedures related to the CN are described. These procedures are:

- a routeing area update procedure; and
- SERVING RNC relocation procedure.

An MS detects that a new cell has been entered by comparing the cell's identity with the cell identity stored in the MS. The MS detects that a RA Update shall be performed by comparing the RAI stored in its MM context with the RAI received from the network. In RRC-CONNECTED mode (PMM-CONNECTED state or CS MM CONNECTED state), the MS is informed of RAI and Cell Identity by the Serving RNC via an "MM information" message at the RRC layer. In RRC-IDLE state, the MS is informed of RAI and Cell Identity by the broadcasted system information at the RRC layer.

In network mode of operation II, whenever an MS determines that it shall perform both an LA update and an RA update, the MS shall start the LA update first. The MS should start RA Update procedure before the LA update is completed.

6.9.2.1 Routeing Area Update Procedure

A routeing area update takes place when an attached MS detects that it has entered a new RA or when the periodic RA update timer has expired. The SGSN detects that it is an intra SGSN routeing area update by noticing that it also handles the old RA. In this case, the SGSN has the necessary information about the MS and there is no need to inform the GGSNs or the HLR about the new MS location. A periodic RA update is always an intra SGSN routeing area update. If the network operates in mode I, then an MS that is both PS-attached and CS-attached shall perform the Combined RA / LA Update procedures.

In UMTS, a RA Update is either intra-SGSN or inter-SGSN RA Update, either combined RA/LA update or only RA update, either initiated by an MS in PMM_CONNECTED or in PMM-IDLE state. All the case of RA Update are described in the procedure illustrated in Figure 33. Each step is explained in the following list.

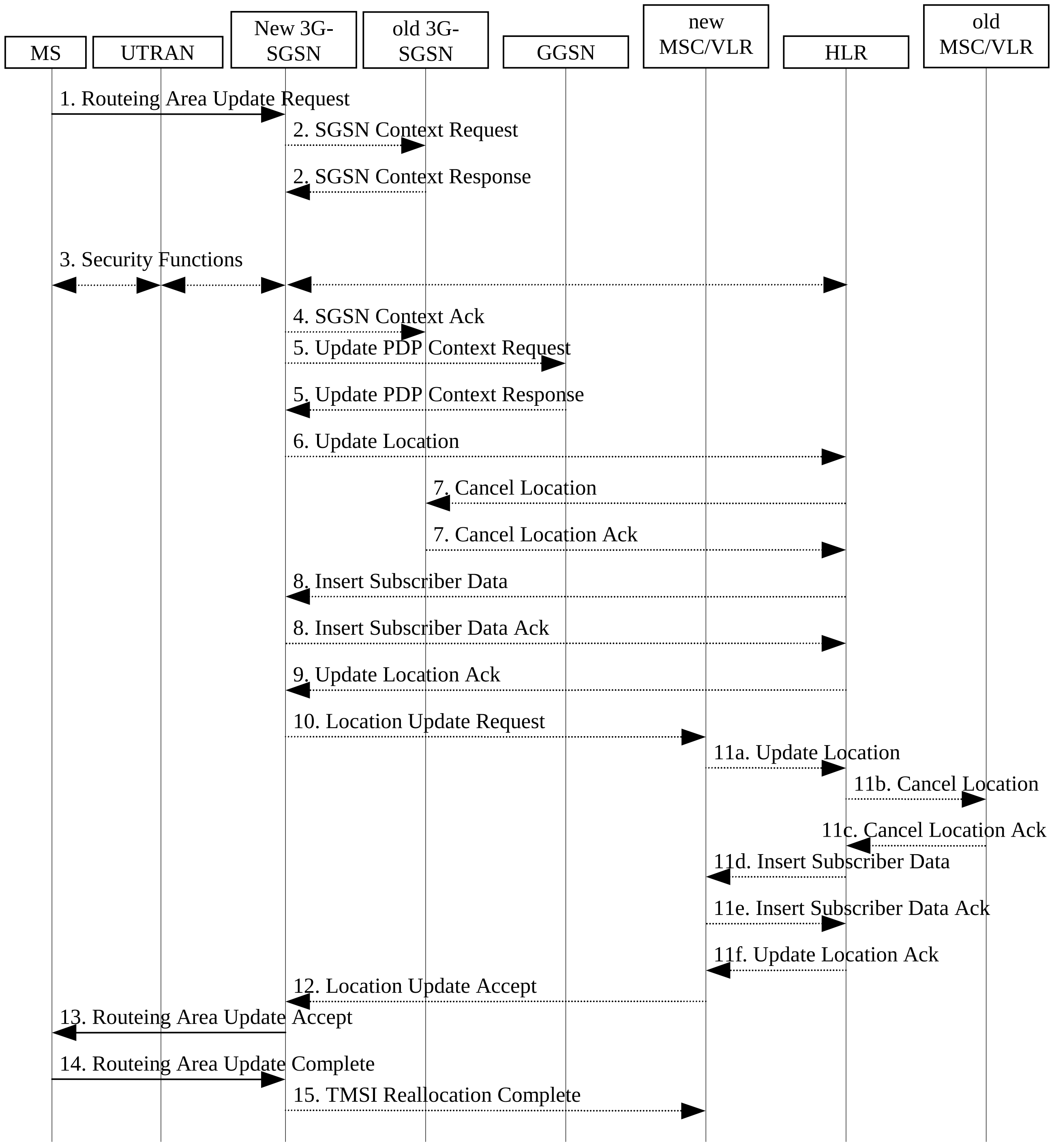


Figure 33: RA Update Procedure in UMTS

1. The RRC connection is established, if not already done. The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request message (P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type, follow on request) to the new SGSN. Follow on request shall be set by MS if there is pending uplink traffic (signaling or user data). The SGSN may use, as an implementation option, the follow on request indication to release or keep the Iu connection after the completion of the RA update procedure. Update Type shall indicate:

   - RA update if the RA Update is triggered by a change of RA, or,

- periodic RA update, if the RA Update is triggered by the expiry of the periodic RA Update timer
- combined RA / LA update, if the MS is also CS attached and the LA Update shall be performed in network operation mode I (see section Interactions Between SGSN and MSC/VLR), or,
- combined RA / LA update with CS attach requested if the MS wants to perform an CS attach in network operation mode I, or,

The UTRAN shall add the Routing Area Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the SGSN. (FFS)

Note: Sending the Routeing Area Update Request message to SGSN triggers the establishment of a signalling connection between UTRAN and SGSN for the concerned MS.

2) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN Routing area update and if the MS was in PMM-IDLE state, the new SGSN sends SGSN Context Request message (old PTMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature) to the old SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old SGSN validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old SGSN. This should initiate the security functions in the new SGSN. If the security functions authenticate the MS correctly, the new SGSN shall send an SGSN Context Request (IMSI, old RAI, MS Validated) message to the old SGSN. MS Validated indicates that the new SGSN has authenticated the MS. If the old P-TMSI Signature was valid or if the new SGSN indicates that it has authenticated the MS, the old SGSN responds with SGSN Context Response (Cause, IMSI, MM Context, PDP contexts). If the MS is not known in the old SGSN, the old SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause. The old SGSN starts a timer.

3) Security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function". If the security functions do not authenticate the MS correctly, then the routeing area update shall be rejected, and the new SGSN shall send a reject indication to the old SGSN. The old SGSN shall continue as if the SGSN Context Request was never received.

4) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN Routing area update, the new SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old SGSN. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a routeing area update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing routeing area update procedure.

5) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN RA Update and if the MS was in PMM-IDLE state, the new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, QoS Negotiated, SGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier, GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier) to the GGSNs concerned. GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier is used by GGSN to identify the PDP context. The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier). Note: If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN Routing area update initiated by an MS is in PMM-CONNECTED state, the update PDP Context Request is sent as described in sub-clause "SRNC relocation".

6) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN RA Update, the new SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending Update Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) to the HLR.

7) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN RA Update, the HLR sends Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) to the old SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Update Procedure. If the timer described in step 2 is not running, then the old SGSN removes the MM context. Otherwise, the contexts are removed only when the timer expires. It also ensures that the MM context is kept in the old SGSN in case the MS initiates another inter SGSN routeing area update before completing the ongoing routeing area update to the new SGSN. The old SGSN acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

8) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN RA Update, the HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, subscription data) to the new SGSN. The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the (new) RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, the SGSN rejects the Routeing Area Update Request with an appropriate cause, and may return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, SGSN Area Restricted) message to the HLR. If all checks are successful then the SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

9) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN RA Update, the HLR acknowledges the Update Location by sending Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new SGSN.

10) If Update Type indicates combined RA / LA update with CS attach requested, or if the LA changed with the routeing area update, then the association has to be established, and the new SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate CS attach if Update Type in step 1 indicated combined RA / LA update with CS attach requested. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR number is translated from the RAI via a table in the SGSN. The SGSN starts the location update procedure towards the new MSC/VLR upon receipt of the first Insert Subscriber Data message from the HLR in step 8). The VLR creates or updates the association with the SGSN by storing SGSN Number.

11) If the subscriber data in the VLR is marked as not confirmed by the HLR, the new VLR informs the HLR. The HLR cancels the old VLR and inserts subscriber data in the new VLR (this signalling is not modified from existing GSM signalling and is included here for illustrative purposes):

   a) The new VLR sends an Update Location (new VLR) to the HLR.

   b) The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR by sending Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.

   c) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

   d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.

   e) The new VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).

   f) The HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.

12) The new VLR allocates a new TMSI and responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the SGSN. VLR TMSI is optional if the VLR has not changed.

13) The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new SGSN establishes MM context for the MS. The new SGSN responds to the MS with Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, VLR TMSI, P-TMSI Signature).

14) The MS confirms the reallocation of the TMSIs by sending Routeing Area Update Complete (P-TMSI, VLR TMSI) to the SGSN.

15) The new SGSN sends TMSI Reallocation Complete (VLR TMSI) to the new VLR if the VLR TMSI is confirmed by the MS.

Note: Step 11, 12 and 15, are performed only if step 9 is performed.

In the case of a rejected routeing area update operation, due to regional subscription or roaming restrictions, the new SGSN shall not construct an MM context. A reject shall be returned to the MS with an appropriate cause. The MS shall not re-attempt a routeing area update to that RA. The RAI value shall be deleted when the MS is powered-up.

If the routeing area update procedure fails a maximum allowable number of times, or if the SGSN returns a Routeing Area Update Reject (Cause) message, the MS shall enter PMM-Detached state.

If the Location Update Accept message indicates a reject, then this should be indicated to the MS, and the MS shall not access non-PS services until a successful location update is performed.

6.9.2.2. SERVING RNC Relocation procedure.

This procedure is only perform for MS in PMM-CONNECTED state.

The Serving RNC relocation procedure is used to move the UTRAN-CORE NETWORK connection point at UTRAN side from the Serving RNC to the target RNC. In the procedure, the Iu links are relocated. If the Target RNC is connected to the same SGSN as the Serving RNC, an intra-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation procedure is performed. This procedure is followed by an Intra-SGSN RA Update procedure. If the Target RNC is connected to a different SGSN than the Serving RNC, an inter-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation procedure is performed. This procedure is followed by an Inter-SGSN RA Update procedure.

Figure 32 shows SRNS relocation when source RNC and target RNC are connected to different 3G_SGSN. Figure 33 shows the situation after the procedure has been completed.

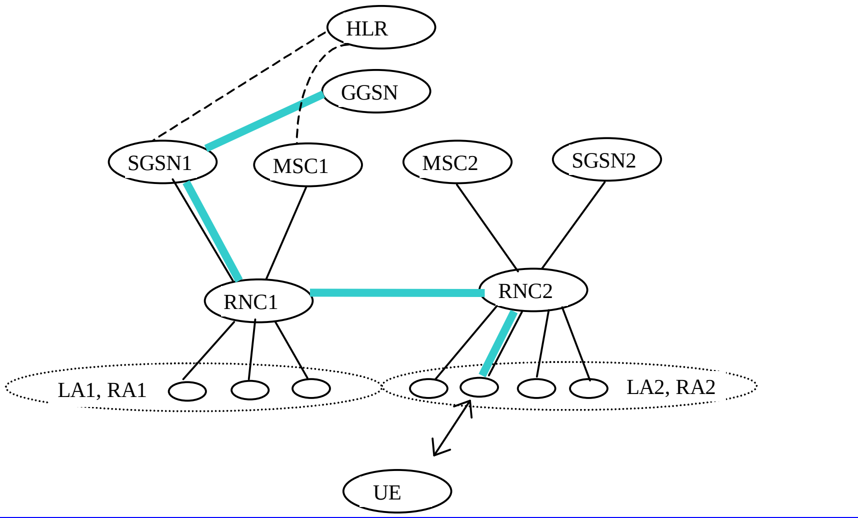


Figure 33 Before the SRNS relocation and location registration

Before the SRNS relocation and location registration the MS is registered in SGSN1 and in MSC1. The RNC1 is acting as SERVING RNC and the RNC2 is acting as Drift RNC.

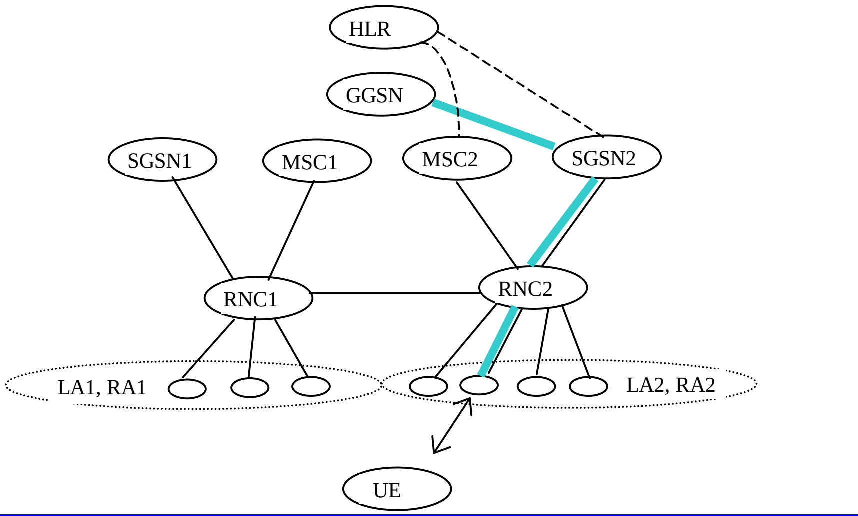


Figure 34 After the SRNS relocation and RA Update

After the SRNS relocation and RA Update, the MS is registered in MSC2 and in SGSN2. The MS is in state PMM-CONNECTED towards the SGSN2 and in state CMM-IDLE towards the MSC2. The RNC2 is acting as SERVING RNC.

The SRNS relocation procedure can be divided into 3 stages:

1. Resource Reservation: The path of the data traffic is not changed.
2. Actual handover of Serving RNC Phase: The UTRAN connection point is moved to the target RNC (new Serving RNS) and downlink traffic is forwarded from (old) Serving RNC to the Target RNC
3. Routing Area Update initiated by an MS is in PMM-CONNECTED state, which is described in RA update section.

The SRNS relocation procedure is described in the procedure illustrated in Figure 33. Each step is explained in the following list.

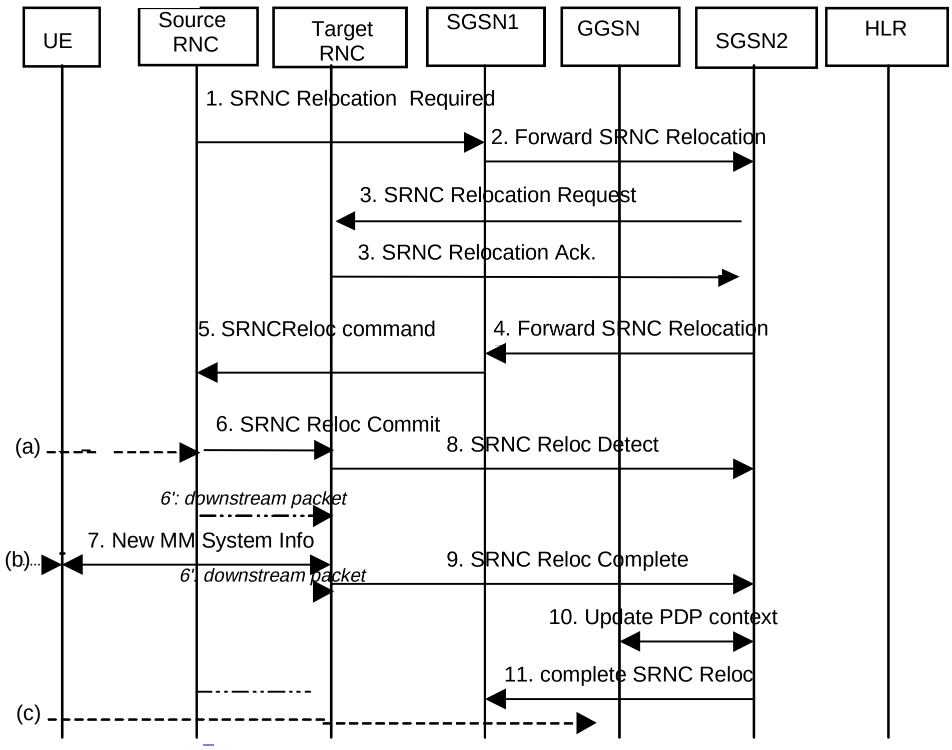


Figure 34 Phases 1 & 2 of the Serving RNC Relocation.

1. "Resource reservation" Phase

During this phase, the transmission of packets between GGSN and UE through the source SRNC goes on.

1) UTRAN (source SRNC) makes the decision to perform the Serving RNC relocation procedure. This includes decision on into which RNC (Target RNC) the Serving RNC functionality is to be relocated. The source SRNC sends SRNC Relocation required message (target RNC identifier, transparent information field) to the SGSN1. Transparent information field shall be passed transparently to the target RNC.

2) If the SGSN1 determines from target RNC Identifier that the SRNC relocation is an inter-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation, then SGSN1 sends a Forward SRNC relocation request to SGSN2 (target RNC identifier, transparent information field, IMSI, MM context, PDP contexts).

Note: Forward SRNC relocation request does not contain any information linked with packet transmission (sequence numbers) because such information is under the responsibility of the UTRAN

3) The SGSN2 sends a SRNC Relocation Request message (target RNC identifier, transparent information field, IMSI) to the target RNC. When the Iu user plane transport bearers have been established, and target RNC completed its preparation phase, SRNC Relocation Acknowledge message (RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s)) is sent to the SGSN2. The RNC IP address(es) (possibly one address per PDP context) on which the target RNC is willing to receive these packets. Tunnel End Point Identifier(s) are the Identifiers to be used in GTP level when sending packets to this RNC.

4) When the traffic resources between target RNC and SGSN2 has been allocated and the SGSN2 is ready for the SRNC move, then the Forward SRNC Relocation Response message (RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel

End Point Identifier(s)) is sent from SGSN2 to SGSN1. This message indicates that SGSN2 / target RNC are ready to receive from source SRNC the downstream packets not yet acknowledged by UE.

5) When the Forward SRNC Relocation Response has been received in the SGSN1, the SGSN1 indicates the completion of preparation phase at the CN PS domain side for the SRNC relocation by sending the SRNC Relocation Command message (RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s)) to the Source RNC. The RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s) are used by SRNC to send the downstream packets not yet acknowledged by UE to the target RNC.

2. "Actual hand-over of Serving RNC" Phase

6) When the source RNC has received the SRNC Relocation Proceeding 2 message, the source RNC sends a SRNC Relocation Commit message to the target RNC(list of (SNU, UP_RLC_ack, SND)). SND is the GTP sequence number for the next downlink packet received from the GGSN. SNU is the GTP sequence number for the next uplink packet to be tunnelled to the GGSN. UP_RLC_Ack contains the acknowledgements for upstream PDU received by the source SRNC on each RLC connection used by the UE (i.e. the Receive State Variable V(R) for all RLC SAPI in acknowledged mode). The source SRNC starts a timer T3-TUNNEL , stops the exchange of the packets with the UE (point (a)), and starts tunnelling the buffered and incoming downstream packets towards the target SRNC using RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s). The target RNC executes switch for all bearers at the earliest suitable time instance.

7) The target RNC starts acting as SRNC. The target SRNC :

- Restarts the RLC connections. This includes the exchange between the target SRNC and the UE of the UP_RLC_Ack and DOWN_RLC_ACK. DOWN_RLC_ACK confirms all mobile-terminated packets successfully transferred before the start of the relocation procedure. If DOWN_RLC_ACK confirms reception of packets that were forwarded from the source SRNC, then these packets shall be discarded by the target SRNC. UP_RLC Ack confirms all mobile-originated packets successfully transferred before the start of the relocation procedure. From now on the exchange of the packets with the UE can restart (point (b)).

- Sends New MM System Information to the UE indicating e.g. relevant Routing Area and Location Area. Additional RRC information may then also be sent to the UE, e.g. new RNTI identity. The new RAI triggers a RA Update procedure (case initiated by MS in PMM-CONNECTED state). This is point (c). The uplink traffic shall not be stopped due to the new MM System Information or the RA Update procedure.

Note: The new SGSN may send uplink packet to the GGSN before the update PDP context is performed.

8) Immediately after a successful switch at RNC, target RNC (=SRNC) sends SRNC Relocation Detect message to the SGSN2.

9) After sending out the New MM System Information, the target RNC sends an SRNC relocation complete to SGSN2. In case of intra-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation, the SGSN use this indication to send an Iu release message to old SRNC.

10) If the SRNC relocation is an Inter-SGSN SRNC relocation, the new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, QoS Negotiated, SGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier, GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier) to the GGSNs concerned. GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier is used by GGSN to identify the PDP context. The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier).

11) If the SRNC relocation is an Inter-SGSN SRNC relocation, the new SGSN sends Complete SERVING RNC relocation message (IMSI) to the old SGSN when all GGSNs have been updated.

6.9.3~~1.4~~ Periodic RA and LA Updates

~~[This section needs to be aligned with the UMTS Network Operation Modes.]~~

All PS-attached MSs, except GPRS MSs in class-B mode of operation engaged in CS communication, shall perform periodic RA updates. MSs that are ~~IMSI~~CS-attached and not PS-attached shall perform periodic LA updates. Periodic RA updates are equivalent to intra SGSN routeing area updates as described in subclause "Intra SGSN Routeing Area

Update", with Update Type indicating periodic RA update. For MSs that are both CS~~IMSI~~-attached and ~~G~~P~~R~~S-attached, the periodic updates depend on the mode of operation of the network:

- If the network operates in mode I, periodic RA updates shall be performed, and periodic LA updates shall not be performed. In this case, the MSC/VLR shall disable implicit detach for PS-attached MSs and instead rely on the SGSN to receive periodic RA updates. If periodic RA updates are not received in the SGSN and the SGSN detaches the MS, the SGSN shall notify the MSC/VLR by sending an IMSI Detach Indication message.

- If the network operates in mode II or mode III, both periodic RA updates and periodic LA updates shall be performed independently. RA updates are performed towards the SGSN, and LA updates are performed towards the MSC/VLR.

For GPRS, the periodic RA update timer in the MS is stopped when an LLC PDU is sent since all sent LLC PDUs set the MM context state to READY. The periodic RA update timer is reset and started when the state returns to STANDBY.

For UMTS, the periodic RA update timer in the MS is stopped when the MM context enters the PMM-CONNECTED state. The periodic RA update timer is reset and started when the state returns to PMM-IDLE state.

If the MS could not successfully complete the periodic RA update procedure after a retry scheme while the MS was in PS coverage, then the MS shall wait a backoff time equal to the periodic LA update timer broadcast by the network before re-starting the periodic RA update procedure.

3GPP TSG SA2 ***Document S2G99052***

Helsinki, Suomi, 5th – 7th Oct. 1999

3G CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060 CR 044r2 Current Version: 3.1.0

3G specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by 3G support team*

For submision to TSG SA# for approval **X** *(only one box should be marked with an X)*
list TSG meeting no. here ↑ for information

Form: 3G CR cover sheet, version 1.0 *The latest version of this form is available from:* ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/3GCRF-xx.rtf

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	USIM		ME	**X**	UTRAN	**X**	Core Network	**X**

Source: Ericsson **Date:** Oct. 7th, 1999

Subject: UMTS-GPRS Intersystem Handover

3G Work item: Release '99 Stage 2

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	
A	Corresponds to a correction in a 2G specification	
B	Addition of feature	**X**
C	Functional modification of feature	
D	Editorial modification	

Reason for change:

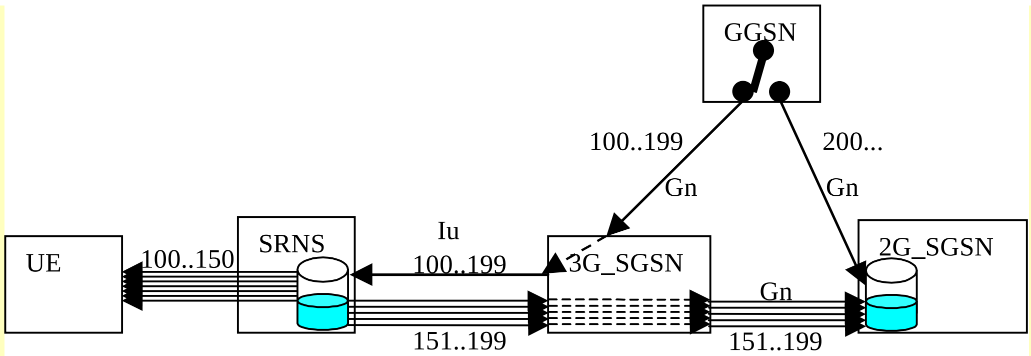
This CR contains the UMTS-GPRS intersystem handover cases for dual-mode MSs.
Two possible cases are described:
1) Handover between UMTS and GPRS RAs
2) Handover between UMTS and GPRS cells belonging to the same RA.

When intersystem handover is performed at change of RA:
At UMTS to GSM/GPRS inter system handover the SRNS will forward GTP-PDUs not yet transmitted to the MS from the SRNS to the 2G_SGSN via the 3G_SGSN.
At GSM/GPRS to UMTS inter system handover the 2G_SGSN will forward GTP-PDUs to the 3G_SGSN as specified today already for GSM GPRS.

When Inter System handover from UMTS to GPRS is performed at change of cell:
At UMTS to GSM/GPRS inter system handover the SRNS will forward GTP-PDUs not yet transmitted to the MS to the 2G/3G_SGSN.

This behaviour enables handover between release '97, release '99 GPRS and release '99 UMTS nodes with in-sequence delivery of packets but not necessarily with reliable data transmission due to the different nature of GPRS' SNDCP and UMTS' PDCP (L3CE).

The following figure illustrates the GTP sequence number handling for the above described handover cases.



Clauses affected:	.

Other specs affected:	Other 3G core specifications	→ List of CRs:	
	Other 2G core specifications	→ List of CRs:	
	MS test specifications	→ List of CRs:	
	BSS test specifications	→ List of CRs:	
	O&M specifications	→ List of CRs:	

Other comments:	

6.13 UMTS-GPRS Intersystem Handover

The UMTS-GPRS inter system handover procedures may be supported for network elements supporting GSM Release ’97, ‘99 and UMTS Release ‘99. At intersystem handover the release ’99 network elements shall use on the Gn interface the GTP version ’97 when interworking with release ’97 network elements.

An intersystem handover from UMTS to GPRS or GPRS to UMTS takes place when a MS supporting both UMTS and GPRS moves to a cell where the radio technology which the MS was using is not any longer supported. Prerequisite for an inter system handover is that the MS is PS-attached in the UMTS PS-domain or PS-attached for GPRS. The transition of the mobility management states is as specified for the corresponding mobility management procedures.

There is no transition of the session management states at an intersystem handover.

6.13.1 Intersystem Handover within a RA between cells belonging to different systems

Inter system handover without performing a RA update is supported only in case the SGSN is a combined 2G/3G-SGSN supporting both the Gb and Iu-Ps interfaces within the same physical node.

6.13.1.1 UMTS to GPRS handover

An Inter System handover from UMTS to GPRS takes place when the MS in PMM-Connected state enters a new GSM/GPRS cell inside the current RA. In this case the MS shall perform a Routing Area Update procedure with the Update Type set to ‘Inter System Cell Change’.

The SGSN records this UE's change of cell, and further traffic directed towards the MS is conveyed over the Gb interface to the new cell.

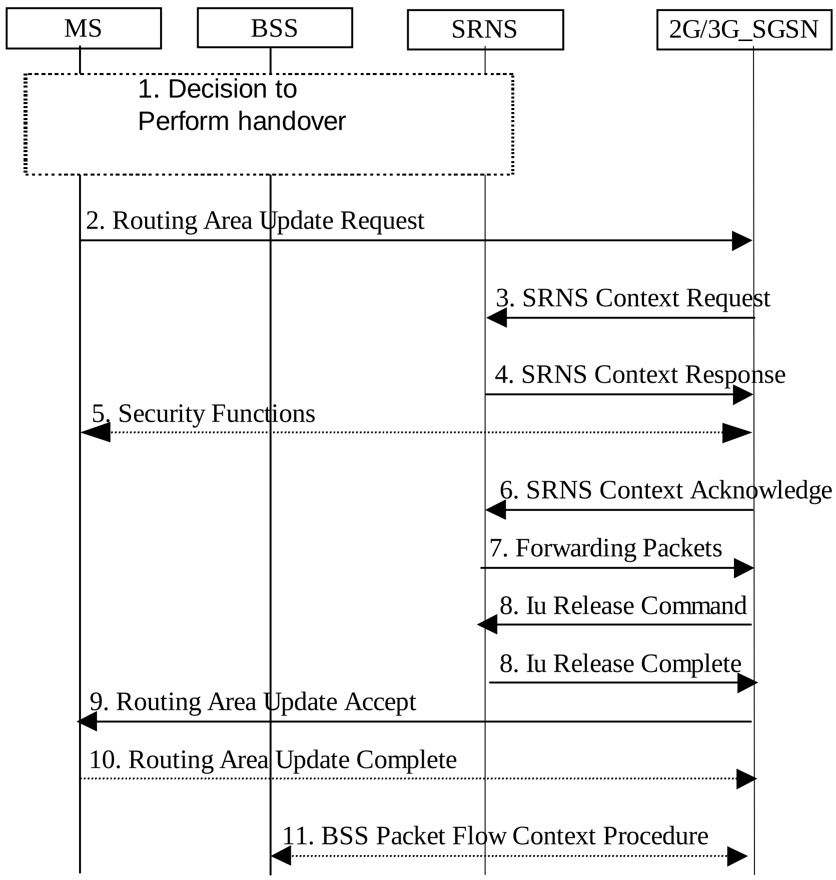


Figure ZZD: UMTS to GSM GPRS handover between cells belonging to the same RA

1) The MS and/or BSS/UTRAN decides to perform handover which leads to that the MS switches to the new cell supporting GPRS radio technology and suspends PDU transmission to the network

2) The MS sends a Routing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update type) to the 2G/3G_SGSN. Update Type shall indicate 'Inter system cell change'. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the 2G/3G_SGSN.

3) The 2G/3G_SGSN sends SRNS Context Request (IMSI) to the SRNS, starts a timer on the MM and PDP Context and stops the transmission of GTP-PDUs to the SRNS.

4) The SRNS responds with SRNS Context Response (IMSI, GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, RLC counters). The GTP sequence numbers are included for each PDP context indicating the next downlink PDU to be sent to the MS (i.e. the last GTP PDU in the buffer of the SRNS, which is not sent to the MS) and the next GTP-PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. For each active PDP context the SRNS also includes the uplink and downlink RLC counters for PDP contexts using acknowledged mode.

5) Security functions may be executed.

6) The 2G/3G_SGSN sends SRNS Context Acknowledge to the SRNS. This informs the SRNS that the 2G/3G_SGSN is ready to receive data packets.

7) The buffered downlink GTP-PDUs are tunnelled back to the 2G/3G_SGSN.

8) When the timer described under 3 has expired, the 2G/3G_SGSN sends an Iu Release Command to the SRNS. The SRNS responds with Iu Release Complete.

9) The 2G/3G_SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, or if subscription checking fails, then the 2G/3G_SGSN rejects the routing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the 2G/3G_SGSN updates MM and PDP contexts for the MS. A new P-TMSI may be allocated. A Routing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Receive N-PDU Number) is returned to the MS. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-originated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure.
   The 2G/3G_SGSN deduces the N-PDU Numbers from the RLC numbers received from the SRNS (FFS).

10) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI with a Routing Area Update Complete (P-TMSI, Receive N-PDU Number). Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-terminated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure.

11) The 2G/3G_SGSN and the BSS may execute the BSS Packet Flow Context Procedure.

6.13.1.2 GPRS to UMTS handover

An Inter System handover from GPRS to UMTS takes place when a PS-attached MS enters a new UMTS cell inside the current RA. In this case the MS shall perform a UMTS Inter System Cell Change procedure by performing a RRC connection establishment and an Intra SGSN Routing Area Update procedure with the Update Type set to 'Inter System Cell Change'.

The SGSN records this MS's change of cell, and further traffic directed towards the MS is conveyed over the Iu interface to the new cell.

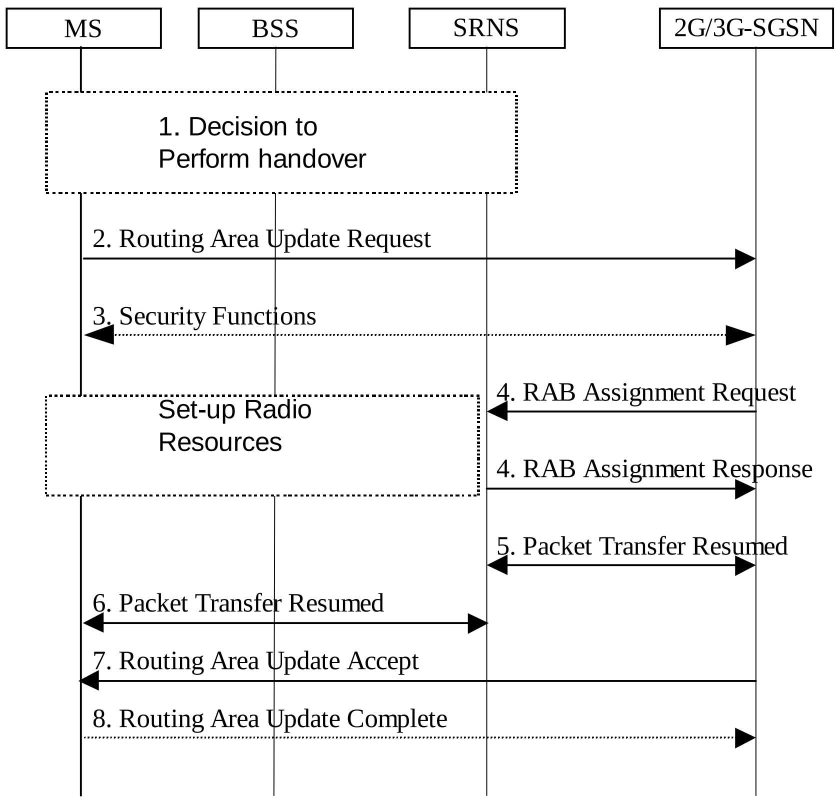


Figure ZZD: GSM GPRS to UMTS handover beween cells belonging to the same RA

1) The MS and/or BSS/UTRAN decides to perform handover which leads to that the MS switches to the new cell supporting UMTS radio technology and Suspend PDU Transmission to the Network.

2) The MS initiate a RRC connection establishment and sends Routing Area Update Request (Old RA, Old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type, CM) to the combined 2G/3G_SGSN. The SRNS shall add an identifier of the area where the message was received before passing the message to the 2G/3G_SGSN. The 2G/3G_SGSN stops the transmission of N-PDUs to the MS.

3) Security functions may be executed.

4) The 2G/3G_SGSN request the SRNS to establish of a radio access bearer by sending RAB Assignment Request to the SRNS. The SRNS responds with RAB Assignment Response.

5) The traffic flow is resumed between the 2G/3G_SGSN and the SRNS

6) The traffic flow is resumed between the SRNS and the MS.

7) The 2G/3G_SGSN updates the MM context for the MS. A new P-TMSI may be allocated. A Routing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Receive N-PDU Number (FFS)) is returned to the MS.

8) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI with a Routing Area Update Complete (P-TMSI, Receive N-PDU Number (FFS)).

6.13.2 Intersystem Handover at RA change

6.13.2.1 UMTS to GPRS handover

An inter system handover from UMTS to GPRS takes place when the MS in PMM-Idle or PMM-Connected state moves to a new GSM/GPRS cell in a new RA. In this case the MS shall initiate a

GPRS RA update procedure. The sequence applied for the inter SGSN RA update case is shown in the following figure:

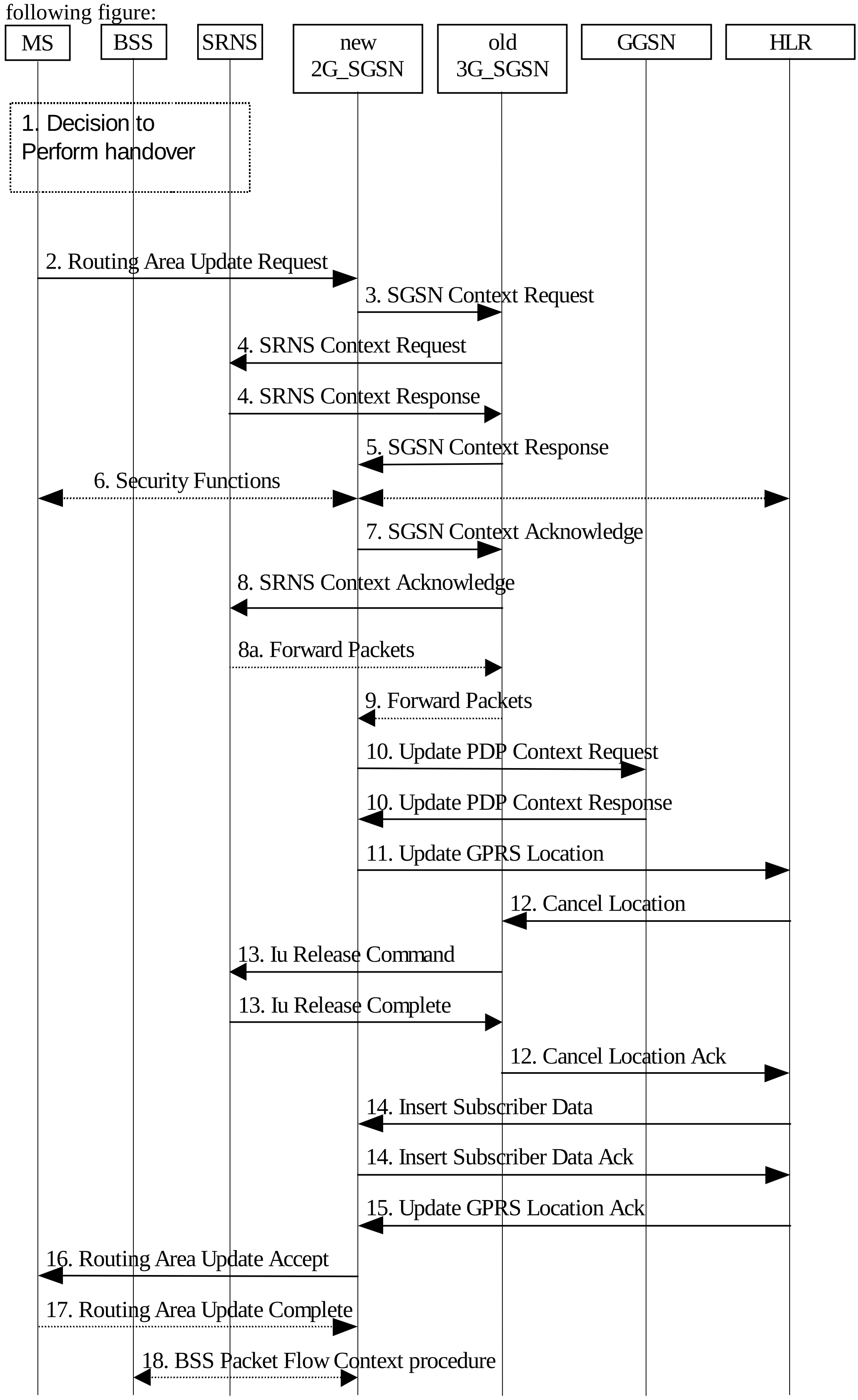


Figure ZZD: UMTS to GSM GPRS, Inter SGSN Routing Area Update Procedure

1) The MS and/or BSS/UTRAN decides to perform handover, which leads to that the MS switch to the new cell supporting GPRS radio technology and that the PDU transmission is suspended.

2) The MS sends a Routing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update type) to the new 2G_SGSN. Update Type shall indicate RA update or periodic RA update. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the new 2G_SGSN.

3) The new 2G_SGSN sends SGSN Context Request (old RAI, TLLI, old P-TMSI Signature, New SGSN Address) to the old 3G_SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old SGSN validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old 3G_SGSN. The old 3G_SGSN starts a timer for supervision of the MS's context. If the MS is not known in the old 3G_SGSN, the old 3G_SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause.

4) The old 3G_SGSN sends SRNS Context Request (IMSI) to the SRNS. Upon reception of this message the SRNS buffers and stops sending downlink PDUs to the MS and answers with SRNS Context Response (IMSI, GTP SNDs, GTP SNUs, RLC counters). The SRNS shall include for each PDP context the GTP sequence number of the next GTP sequence number to be sent in downlink to the MS (i.e. the last not yet transferred N-PDU) and the GTP sequence number of the next uplink PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN.
For each active PDP context the SRNS also includes the uplink and downlink RLC transmission counters for PDP contexts using acknowledged mode (FFS).

5) The old 3G_SGSN responds with SGSN Context Response (MM Context, e.g. IMSI, PDP Contexts, e.g. APN). For each PDP context the old 3G_SGSN shall include the GTP sequence number for the next uplink T-PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN and the next donwlink GTP sequence number for the next N-PDU to be sent to the MS. Each PDP Context also includes the SNDCP Send N-PDU Number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent in acknowledged mode to the MS, the SNDCP Receive N-PDU Number for the next uplink N-PDU to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS.
The SNDCP N-PDU numbers are derived from the RLC counters received from the SRNS (FFS).

6) Security functions may be executed.

7) The new 2G_SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old 3G_SGSN. This informs the old 3G_SGSN that the new 2G_SGSN is ready to receive data packets belonging to the activated PDP contexts. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a RA update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing RA update procedure.

8) The old 3G_SGSN sends SRNS Context Acknowledge (IMSI) to the SRNS.
8a) The SRNS shall start duplicating and tunnelling the buffered T-PDUs to the old 3G_SGSN.

9) The old 3G_SGSN tunnels the T-PDUs to the new 2G_SGSN. No SNDCP sequence numbers shall be included in the GTP header of the tunnelled PDUs.

10) The new 2G_SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, TID, QoS Negotiated) to the GGSN(s) concerned. The GGSN (s) updates its PDP context fields and returns Update PDP Context Response (TID).

11) The new 2G_SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending Update GPRS Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) to the HLR.

12) The HLR sends Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old 3G_SGSN. The old 3G_SGSN acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).
The old 3G_SGSN removes the MM and PDP contexts if the timer described in step 3 is not running. When the timer is running the MM and PDP contexts are removed when the timer expires.

13) When the timer described in step 3 expires the old 3G_SGSN sends an Iu Release Command to the SRNS. The SRNS responds with Iu Release Complete.

14) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS subscription data) to the new 2G_SGSN. The 2G_SGSN construct a MM context for the MS and return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

15) The HLR acknowledges the Update Location by sending Update GPRS Location Ack (IMSI) to the new 2G_SGSN.

16) The new 2G_SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the 2G_SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the new 2G_SGSN rejects the routing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new 2G_SGSN constructs MM and PDP contexts for the MS. A logical link is established between the new 2G_SGSN and the MS. The new 2G_SGSN responds to the MS with Routing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature Receive N-PDU Number). Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-originated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure.

17) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI with a Routing Area Update Complete (P-TMSI, Receive N-PDU Number). Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-terminated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure.

18) The 2G_SGSN and the BSS may execute the BSS Packet Flow Context Procedure

The sequence applied for the intra SGSN RA update case is identical to the cell change case whithin the same RA as shown in section 6.13.1.1 used with a different update type.

6.13.2.2 GPRS to UMTS handover

An intersystem handover from GPRS to UMTS takes place when the PS-attached MS moves to a new UMTS cell of a new RA. In this case the MS shall initiate a UMTS RA update procedure by establishing a RRC connection and initiating the RA update procedure. The sequence applied for the inter SGSN RA update case is shown in the following figure:

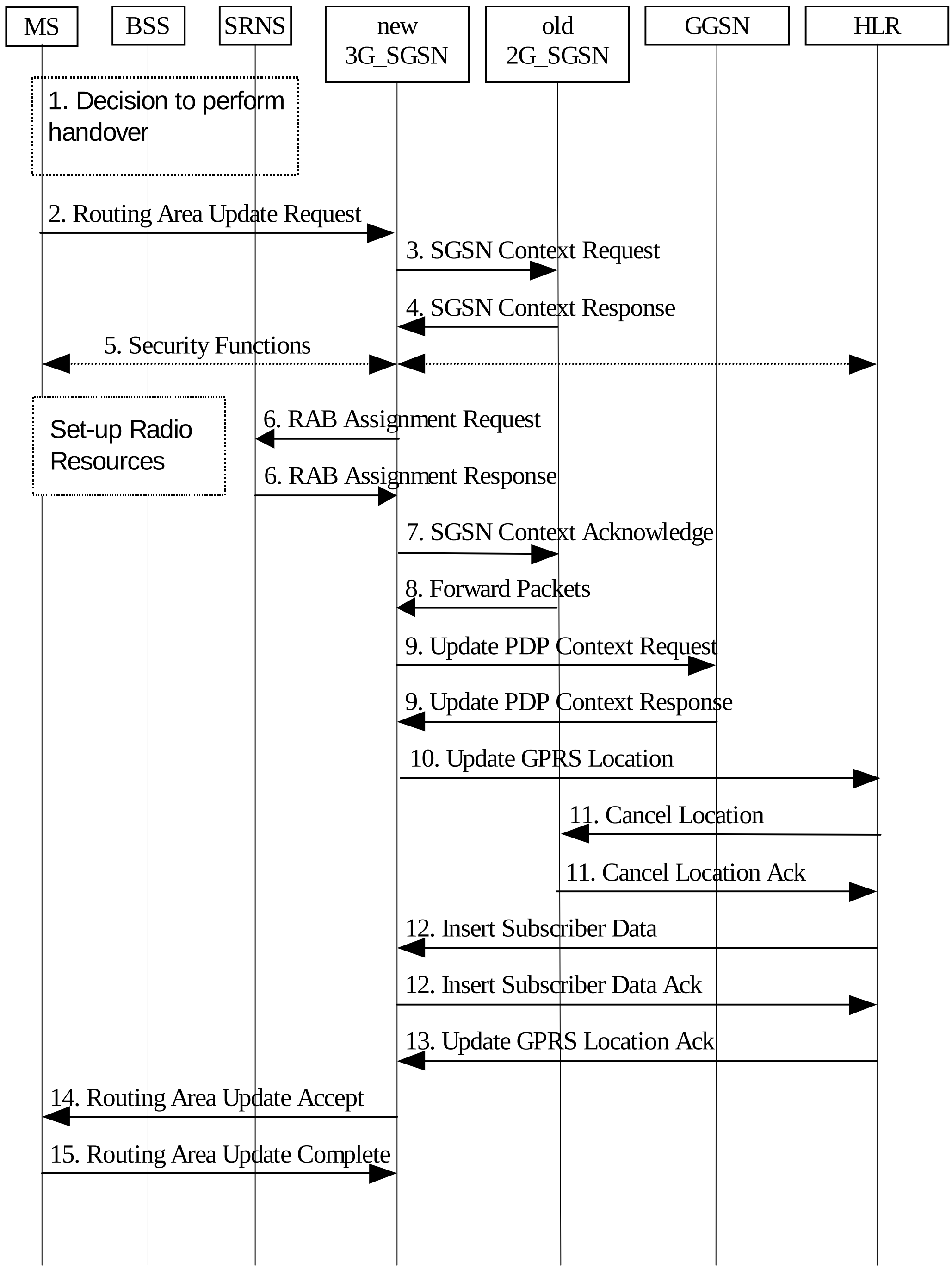


Figure ZZE: GSM GPRS to UMTS, Inter SGSN Routing Area Update Procedure

1) The MS and/or BSS/UTRAN decides to perform handover which leads to that the MS switches to the new cell supporting UMTS radio technology

2) The MS sends a Routing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type, CM) to the new 3G_SGSN. The SRNS shall add an identifier of the area where the message was received before passing the message to the 3G_SGSN.

3) The new 3G_SGSN sends SGSN Context Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI, New SGSN Address) to the old 2G_SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS (The old RAI received from the MS is used to derive the old 2G_SGSN address). The old 2G_SGSN starts a timer for supervision of the MS’s context and stops the transmission of N-PDUs to the MS.

4) The old 2G_SGSN responds with SGSN Context Response (MM Context, e.g. IMSI, PDP Contexts, e.g. APN). Each PDP Context includes the GTP sequence number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS and the GTP sequence number for the next uplink N-PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. Each PDP Context also includes the SNDCP Send N-PDU Number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent in acknowledged mode to the MS, the SNDCP Receive N-PDU Number for the next uplink N-PDU to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS. The new 3G_SGSN shall use the GTP sequence numbers for in-sequence delivery over the Iu interface.
   The new 3G_SGSN uses the received SNDCP N-PDU sequence number for reliable data transmission (FFS).

5) Security functions may be executed.

6) The new 3G_SGSN request the SRNS to establish of a radio access bearer by sending RAB Assignment Request to the SRNS. The SRNS responds with RAB Assignment Response.

7) The new 3G_SGSN sends a SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old 2G_SGSN. This informs the old 2G_SGSN that the new 3G_SGSN is ready to receive data packets belonging to the activated PDP contexts. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a routing area update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing routing area update procedure.

8) The old 2G_SGSN duplicates the buffered N-PDUs and starts tunnelling them to the new 3G_SGSN. The 3G_SGSN shall ignore any SNDCP sequence numbers received with the tunnelled N-PDUs Additional N-PDUs received from the GGSN before the timer described in step 3 expires are also duplicated and tunnelled to the new 3G_SGSN. No N-PDUs shall be forwarded to the new 3G_SGSN after expiry of the timer described in step 3.

9) The new 3G_SGSN sends a Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, TID, QoS Negotiated) to the GGSN (s) concerned. The GGSN (s) updates its PDP context fields and returns Update PDP Context Response (TID).

10) The new 3G_SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending Update GPRS Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) to the HLR.

11) The HLR sends Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) to the old 2G_SGSN. The old 2G_SGSN removes the MM and PDP contexts if the timer described in step 3 is not running. When the timer is running the MM and PDP contexts are removed when the timer expires. The old 2G_SGSN acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

12) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS subscription data) to the new 3G_SGSN. The 3G_SGSN constructs a MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

13) The HLR acknowledges the Update GPRS Location by sending Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new 3G_SGSN.

14) The new 3G_SGSN validate the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the 3G_SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the new 3G_SGSN rejects the routing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new 3G_SGSN constructs MM and PDP contexts for the MS. A logical link is established between the new 3G_SGSN and the MS. The new 3G_SGSN responds to the MS with Routing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI signature Receive N-PDU Number (FFS)).

15) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI with a Routing Area Update Complete (P-TMSI, Receive N-PDU Number (FFS)).

The sequence applied for the intra SGSN RA update case is identical to the cell change whithin the same RA case as shown in section 6.13.1.2 used with a different update type.

ETSI STC SMG12 QoS Ad-hoc
Stockholm, Schweden
July 6th-8th, 1999

Tdoc SMG12 C-99-551
(QoS Ad-hoc Tdoc 29)

PROPOSED CHANGE REQUEST No :	**A164r1**	*Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.*			
Technical Specification GSM / UMTS:	03.60	Version	7.1.0		
Submitted to SMG #30 *List plenary meeting or STC here ↑*	for approval	X	Without presentation ("non-strategic")	X	
	for information		with presentation ("strategic")		

PT SMG CR cover form. Filename: crf26_3.doc

Proposed change affects: SIM [ ] ME [X] Network [X]
(at least one should be marked with an X)

Work item:	Enhanced QoS Support in GPRS.
Source:	Ericsson, Rapporteur
Date:	July 16th, 1999
Subject:	Parallel handling of multiple user application flows

Category:
(one category And one release Only shall be Marked with an X)

F	Correction		Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release		Release 96	
B	Addition of feature	X	Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature		Release 98	
D	Editorial modification		Release 99	X
			UMTS	

Release: see table above

Reason for change:
With GPRS release '97 to each PDP context one PDP address is assigned and all payload traffic associated to that PDP address experiences the same QoS treatment.

This CR introduces the concept of treating different data flows from end user applications associated to the same PDP address differently with respect to QoS. For that purpose the concept of multiple PDP contexts sharing the same PDP address is introduced, and a new additional activation procedure is proposed for creating PDP contexts which reuse a PDP address of an existing PDP context of an MS. The existing procedures for PDP context modification and deactivation are modified to reflect the changes necessary to uniquely identify a PDP context.

If more than one PDP context is activated for one PDP address, each context but the first also includes a Traffic Flow Template (TFT). The TFTs specify IP header filters which are used at the GPRS network edge nodes to decide what PDP context to forward the incoming data packets to.

Clauses affected:

Other specs Affected:

Other releases of same spec		→ List of CRs:	
Other core specifications	X	→ List of CRs:	
MS test specifications / TBRs		→ List of CRs:	
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:	

Other comments:

3.2 Abbreviations

For the purposes of the present document the following abbreviations apply. Additional applicable abbreviations can be found in GSM 01.04 [1].

TFT Traffic Flow Template

9.1 Definition of Packet Data Protocol States

A PTP GPRS subscription contains the subscription of one or more PDP addresses. Each PDP address is described by one or more~~an individual~~ PDP contexts in the MS, the SGSN, and the GGSN. Each PDP context may be associated with a TFT. At most one PDP context associated with the same PDP address may exist at any time with no TFT assigned to it. Every PDP context exists independently in one of two PDP states. The PDP state indicates whether ~~the PDP address is activated for~~ data transfer is enabled for that PDP address and TFT or not. In case all PDP contexts associated with the same PDP address are deactivated, data transfer for that PDP address is disabled. Activation and deactivation are described in subclause "PDP Context Activation, Modification, and Deactivation Functions". All PDP contexts of a subscriber are associated with the same MM context for the IMSI of that subscriber.

9.2 PDP Context Activation, Modification, and Deactivation Functions

These functions are only meaningful at the NSS level and in the MS, and do not directly involve the BSS. An MS in STANDBY or READY state can initiate these functions at any time to activate or deactivate a PDP context in the MS, the SGSN, and the GGSN. A GGSN may request the activation of a PDP context to a GPRS-attached subscriber. A GGSN may initiate the deactivation of a PDP context.

Upon receiving an Activate PDP Context Request message or an Activate Secondary PDP Context Request message, the SGSN shall initiate procedures to set up PDP contexts. The first procedure includes subscription checking, APN selection, and host configuration, while the the latter procedure excludes these functions and reuses PDP context parameters including the PDP address but except the QoS parameters. Once activated, all PDP contexts are managed equally. At least one PDP context shall be activated for a PDP address before a Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure may be initiated.

Upon receiving a Deactivate PDP Context Request message, the SGSN shall initiate procedures to deactivate the PDP context~~s~~. When the last PDP context associated with a PDP address is deactivated, then N-PDU transfer for this PDP address is disabled.

An MS does not have to receive the (De-)Activate PDP Context Accept message before issuing another (De-)Activate PDP Context Request. However, only one request can be outstanding for every NSAPI.

9.2.2.1.1 Secondary PDP Context Activation Procedure

The Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure may be used to activate a PDP context while reusing the PDP address and other PDP context infomation from an already active PDP context, but with a different QoS profile. Procedures for APN selection and PDP address negotiation are not executed. All PDP contexts sharing the same PDP address are identified by one and the same TI but a unique NSAPI value.

The Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure associates a Traffic Flow Template (TFT) to the newly activated PDP context. The TFT contains attributes that specify an IP header filter that is used to direct data packets received from the interconnected external packet data network to the newly activated PDP context.

The Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure may only be initiated after a PDP context is already activated for the same PDP address. The procedure is illustrated in Figure 1. Each step is explained in the following list.

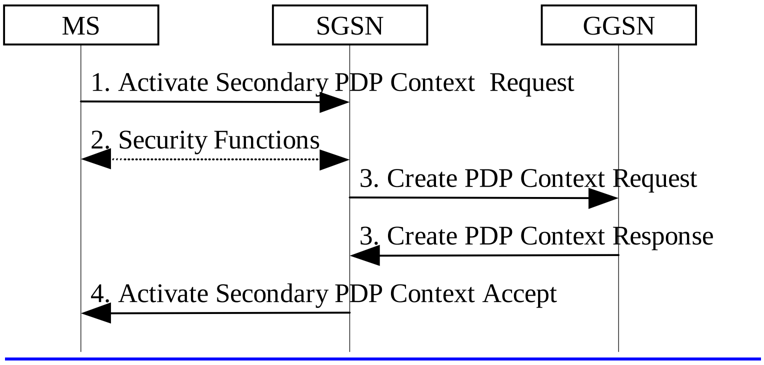


Figure 1: Secondary PDP Context Activation Procedure

1) The MS sends an Activate Secondary PDP Context Request (NSAPI, TI, QoS Requested, TFT) message to the SGSN. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. TFT is sent transparently through the SGSN to the GGSN to enable packet classification for downlink data transfer. TI is the same TI used by the already-activated PDP context(s) for that PDP address, and NSAPI contains a value not used by any other activated PDP context.

2) Security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) The SGSN validates the Activate Secondary PDP Context Request using the TI. The same GGSN address is used by the SGSN as for the already-activated PDP context(s) for that TI and PDP address.

   The SGSN and GGSN may restrict and negotiate the requested QoS as specified in subclause "PDP Context Activation Procedure". The SGSN sends a Create PDP Context Request (QoS Negotiated, TID, TFT) message to the affected GGSN. The GGSN uses the same external network as used by the already-activated PDP context(s) for that PDP address, generates a new entry in its PDP context table, and stores the TFT. The new entry allows the GGSN to route PDP PDUs via different GTP tunnels between the SGSN and the external PDP network. The GGSN returns a Create PDP Context Response (TID, BB Protocol, Reordering Required, QoS Negotiated, Cause) message to the SGSN.

4) The SGSN selects Radio Priority based on QoS Negotiated, and returns an Activate Secondary PDP Context Accept (TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, NSAPI) message to the MS. The SGSN is now able to route PDP PDUs between the GGSN and the MS via different GTP tunnels and possibly different LLC links.

For each additionally activated PDP context a QoS profile and TFT may be requested.

If the secondary PDP context activation procedure fails or if the SGSN returns an Activate Secondary PDP Context Reject (Cause) message, then the MS may attempt another activation with a different TFT, depending on the cause.

9.2.3 Modification Procedures

An SGSN can decide, possibly triggered by the HLR as explained in subclause "Insert Subscriber Data Procedure", to modify parameters that were negotiated during an activation procedure for one or several PDP contexts. The following parameters can be modified:

- QoS Negotiated; and
- Radio Priority.

The SGSN has several means to inform the MS of such a modification:

- send a separate Modify PDP Context Request message to the MS; or

- piggyback the modification information on a mobility management signalling exchange, e.g., routeing area update.

9.2.3.1 PDP Context Modification Procedure

The PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 2. Each step is explained in the following list.

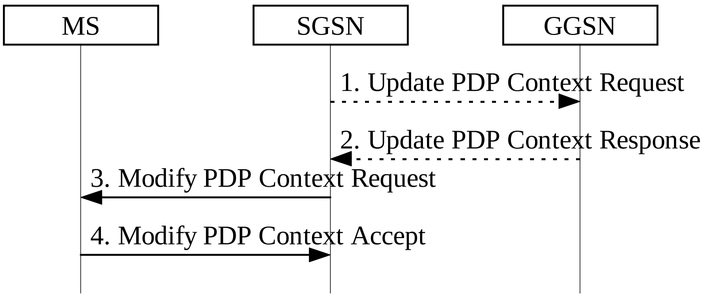


Figure 2: PDP Context Modification Procedure

1) The SGSN may send an Update PDP Context Request (TID, QoS Negotiated) message to the GGSN. If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being modified (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type), then the GGSN rejects the Update PDP Context Request. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.

2) The GGSN may restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN stores QoS Negotiated and returns an Update PDP Context Response (TID, QoS Negotiated) message.

3) The SGSN sends a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, NSAPI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority) message to the MS.

4) The MS acknowledges by returning a Modify PDP Context Accept message. If the MS does not accept the new QoS Negotiated it shall de-activate the PDP context with the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.

9.2.4 Deactivation Procedures

9.2.4.1 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure

The PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure is illustrated in Figure 3. Each step is explained in the following list.

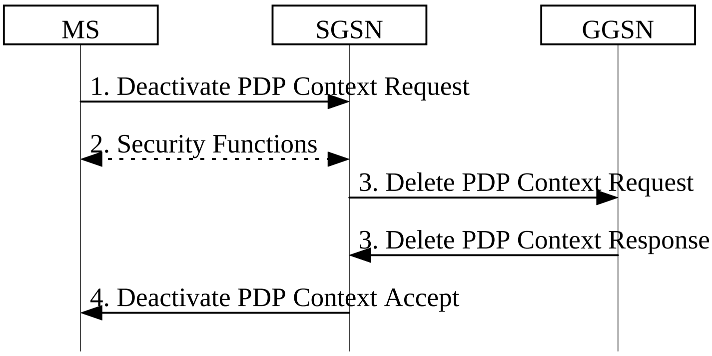


Figure 3: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure

1) The MS sends a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI, NSAPI) message to the SGSN.

2) Security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) The SGSN sends a Delete PDP Context Request (TID, Teardown Ind) message to the GGSN. If NSAPI was not included by the MS in the Deactivate PDP Context Request message, then the SGSN deactivates all PDP contexts associated with this TI and PDP address by including Teardown Ind in the Delete PDP Context Request message. The GGSN removes the PDP context(s) and returns a Delete PDP Context Response (TID) message to the SGSN. If the MS was using a dynamic PDP address, and if the context being deactivated is the last PDP context associated with this PDP address, then the GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete PDP Context messages are sent over the GPRS backbone network.

4) The SGSN returns a Deactivate PDP Context Accept (TI, NSAPI) message to the MS.

At GPRS detach, all PDP contexts for the MS are implicitly deactivated.

9.2.4.2 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure

The PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN procedure is illustrated in Figure 4. Each step is explained in the following list.

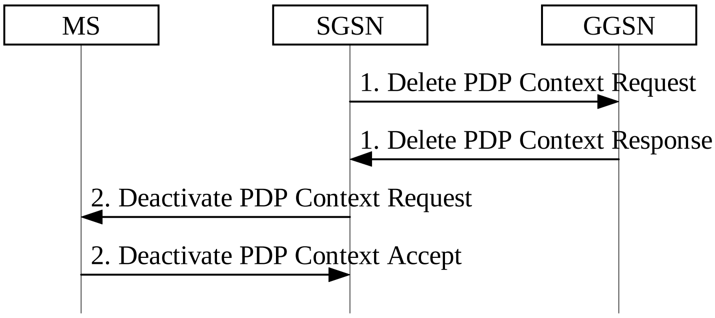


Figure 4: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure

1) The SGSN sends a Delete PDP Context Request (TID, Teardown Ind) message to the GGSN. If Teardown Ind is included by the SGSN, then the GGSN deactivates all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address. The GGSN removes the PDP context and returns a Delete PDP Context Response (TID) message to the SGSN. If the MS was using a dynamic PDP address, and if the context being deactivated is the last PDP context associated with this PDP address, then the GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete PDP Context messages are sent over the GPRS backbone network. The SGSN may not wait for the response from the GGSN before sending the Deactivate PDP Context Request message.

2) The SGSN sends a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI, NSAPI) message to the MS. If NSAPI is not included, then all PDP contexts associated with this TI and PDP address are deactivated. The MS removes the PDP context(s) and returns a Deactivate PDP Context Accept (TI, NSAPI) message to the SGSN. NSAPI is included if received from the SGSN.

9.2.4.3 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure

The PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN procedure is illustrated in Figure 5. Each step is explained in the following list.

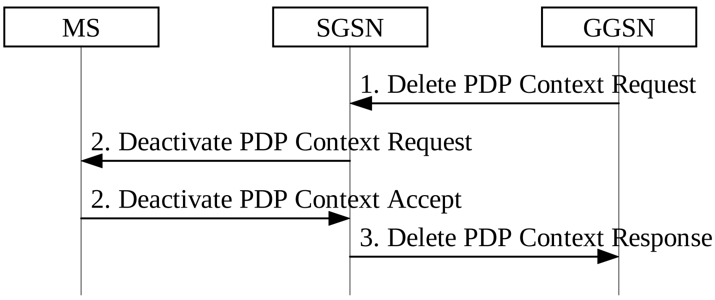


Figure 5: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure

1) The GGSN sends a Delete PDP Context Request (TID, Teardown Ind) message to the SGSN. Teardown Ind indicates whether or not all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address shall be deactivated.

2) The SGSN sends a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI, NSAPI) message to the MS. If NSAPI was not included by the SGSN, then all PDP contexts associated with this TI and PDP address are deactivated. The MS removes the PDP context(s) and returns a Deactivate PDP Context Accept (TI, NSAPI) message to the SGSN. NSAPI is included if received from the SGSN.

3) The SGSN returns a Delete PDP Context Response (TID, Teardown Ind) message to the GGSN. If the MS was using a dynamic PDP address, and if the context being deactivated is the last PDP context associated with this PDP address, then the GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete PDP Context messages are sent over the GPRS backbone network. The SGSN may not wait for the response from the MS before sending the Delete PDP Context Response message.

13.2 SGSN

SGSN maintains MM context and PDP context information for MSs in STANDBY and READY states. Table 1 shows the context fields for one MS.

Table 1: SGSN MM and PDP Contexts

Field	Description
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.
MM State	Mobility management state, IDLE, STANDBY, or READY.
P-TMSI	Packet Temporary Mobile Subscriber Identity.
P-TMSI Signature	A signature used for identification checking purposes.
IMEI	International Mobile Equipment Identity
MSISDN	The basic MSISDN of the MS.
Routeing Area	Current routeing area.
Cell Identity	Current cell in READY state, last known cell in STANDBY or IDLE state.
Cell Identity Age	Time elapsed since the last LLC PDU was received from the MS at the SGSN.
VLR Number	The VLR number of the MSC/VLR currently serving this MS.
New SGSN Address	The IP address of the new SGSN where buffered and not sent N-PDUs should be forwarded to.
Authentication Triplets	Authentication and ciphering parameters.
Kc	Currently used ciphering key.
CKSN	Ciphering key sequence number of Kc.
Ciphering algorithm	Selected ciphering algorithm.
Radio Access Classmark	MS radio access capabilities.
SGSN Classmark	MS network capabilities.
DRX Parameters	Discontinuous reception parameters.
MNRG	Indicates whether activity from the MS shall be reported to the HLR.
NGAF	Indicates whether activity from the MS shall be reported to the MSC/VLR.
PPF	Indicates whether paging for GPRS and non-GPRS services can be initiated.
SMS Parameters	SMS-related parameters, e.g., operator-determined barring.
Recovery	Indicates if HLR or VLR is performing database recovery.
Radio Priority SMS	The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink SMS transmission.
Each MM context contains zero or more of the following PDP contexts:	
PDP Context Identifier	Index of the PDP context.
PDP State	Packet data protocol state, INACTIVE or ACTIVE.
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.
APN Subscribed	The APN received from the HLR.
APN in Use	The APN currently used.
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.
TI	Transaction Identifier.
GGSN Address in Use	The IP address of the GGSN currently used.
VPLMN Address Allowed	Specifies whether the MS is allowed to use the APN in the domain of the HPLMN only, or additionally the APN in the domain of the VPLMN.
QoS Profile Subscribed	The quality of service profile subscribed.
QoS Profile Requested	The quality of service profile requested.
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.
TFT	Traffic flow template.
Radio Priority	The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission.
Send N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.
Receive N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU expected from the MS.
SND	GTP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.
SNU	GTP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the GGSN.
Charging Id	Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN.
Reordering Required	Specifies whether the SGSN shall reorder N-PDUs before delivering the N-PDUs to the MS.

13.3 GGSN

GGSN maintains activated PDP contexts. Table 2 shows the PDP context fields for one PDP Address.

Table 2: GGSN PDP Context

Field	Description
IMSI	International Mobile Subscriber Identity.
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.
MSISDN	The basic MSISDN of the MS.
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.
Dynamic Address	Indicates whether PDP Address is static or dynamic.
APN in Use	The APN Network Identifier currently used.
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.
TFT	Traffic flow template.
SGSN Address	The IP address of the SGSN currently serving this MS.
MNRG	Indicates whether the MS is marked as not reachable for GPRS at the HLR.
Recovery	Indicates if the SGSN is performing database recovery.
SND	GTP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.
SNU	GTP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be received from the SGSN.
Charging Id	Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN.
Reordering Required	Specifies whether the GGSN shall reorder N-PDUs received from the SGSN.

13.4 MS

Each GPRS MS maintains MM and PDP context information in IDLE, STANDBY and READY states. The information may be contained in the MS and the TE. Table 3 shows the MS context fields.

Table 3: MS MM and PDP Contexts

Field	SIM	Description
IMSI	X	International Mobile Subscriber Identity.
MM State		Mobility management state, IDLE, STANDBY, or READY.
P-TMSI	X	Packet Temporary Mobile Subscriber Identity.
P-TMSI Signature	X	A signature used for identification checking purposes.
Routeing Area	X	Current routeing area.
Cell Identity		Current cell.
Kc	X	Currently used ciphering key.
CKSN	X	Ciphering key sequence number of Kc.
Ciphering algorithm		Selected ciphering algorithm.
Classmark		MS classmark.
DRX Parameters		Discontinuous reception parameters.
Radio Priority SMS		The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink SMS transmission.
Each MM context contains zero or more of the following PDP contexts:		
PDP Type		PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.
PDP Address		PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.
PDP State		Packet data protocol state, INACTIVE or ACTIVE.
Dynamic Address Allowed		Specifies whether the MS is allowed to use a dynamic address.
APN Requested		The APN requested.
NSAPI		Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.
TI		Transaction Identifier.
QoS Profile Requested		The quality of service profile requested.
QoS Profile Negotiated		The quality of service profile negotiated.
TFT		Traffic flow template.
Radio Priority		The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission.
Send N-PDU Number		SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the SGSN.
Receive N-PDU Number		SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU expected from the SGSN.